

Manual for Applications

FOMA® P900iV '04.5



# DoCoMo

## W-CDMA system

Thank you for selecting the “FOMA P900iV”.

The instructions for the FOMA P900iV are presented in two manuals,  
“Basics Manual” and “Applications Manual”.

Please read this manual, “Applications Manual” and separate manual,  
“Basics Manual” carefully before and during use  
for the correct and effective operation of the FOMA P900iV.

The FOMA P900iV is designed to be your close partner.

Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

### Before using your FOMA P900iV

Because the FOMA phones use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.

Use the FOMA phone carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public.

Since the FOMA phones use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party.

The FOMA phones change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice heard may sound different from the actual original voice.

It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA phone and keep such notes in a safe place. DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of data stored in the phone.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K. Baltimore Technologies Japan Co., Ltd.

The FOMA phone can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc.,

Copyright © 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.

Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE Inc.

For the Internet function of this product, NetFront v3.0 for FOMA is installed.

NetFront v3.0 is the product of ACCESS Co., Ltd..

Copyright © 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.

Please read the instructions carefully before using the FOMA phone or FOMA card. When using the batteries and adapters (including chargers), read the manual attached to them carefully before use. If you have any questions about the contents of manuals, please contact below.

#### General contact (DoCoMo group companies)

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

(No area code) **151** (in Japanese, toll-free)

• Cannot be called from ordinary phones.

• Some outlets may not offer FOMA products. Please note this.

From ordinary phones



0120-005-250 (in English)

0120-800-000 (in Japanese)

• Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

• Make sure that you dial the correct number.

In this manual, “Applications Manual”, “FOMA P900iV” is referred to as “FOMA phone”. Please note this.

# Copyrights and Trademarks

## Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

By the copyright law, images you have taken with the FOMA phone and data you have downloaded from sites (programs) and the Internet must not be used for purposes other than private enjoyment unless you obtain the express permission of the owner of the copyrights. Unless you own the copyrights of the items or have obtained permission from the copyright holder, you will break the copyright law and could be sued if you reproduce or edit them or use those reproduced or edited items for purposes other than private enjoyment.

Further, if you use the FOMA phone to reproduce or edit image data such as photos, you must avoid breaking the copyright law as above, but also must avoid using and modifying photos of other people without their permission, as this infringes upon their portrait rights.

Similarly, refrain from recording and photographing live performances, entertainment and exhibitions, even when for personal use, as restrictions generally apply.

When making taken or recorded items public over the internet, be careful not to infringe upon copyrights and portrait rights.

## Trademarks and Registered Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "Freedom Of Mobile multimedia Access", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "FirstPass", and the logos of "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "WORLD CALL", "FirstPass", are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Multitask is a trademark of the NEC Corporation.
- The Ir exchange function in this product is employs IrFront<sup>®</sup> made by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright © 1996-2004 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- Java and Java related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- miniSD<sup>™</sup> is a trademark of SD Association.



- NetFront and **NetFront** are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.
- The software of this product contains modules developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- LC FONT<sup>®</sup> and the LC logo are the registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.



- T9 Text Input<sup>®</sup> and the T9 logo are the registered trademarks of Tegic Communications. T9 Text Input<sup>®</sup> is patented or pending patent worldwide.
- QuickTime is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Player is either a registered trademark or a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft, MS, and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;  
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239  
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569  
5,710,784 5,778,338

- Other names of companies and products are the trademarks or registered trademarks of those companies.

## Structure of This Manual

The FOMA manual consists of the following two volumes; “Basics” manual and “Applications” manual. The following are described in the respective manuals:

### Basics

- Names of Parts and Functions
- UIM (FOMA Card)
- Charging Batteries
- Making/Taking Voice Calls/Video-phone Calls
- Using the Phonebook
- Settings for Using FOMA Phone
- Using Schedule/ToDo
- Network Services Available from FOMA Phone
- Troubleshooting
- Warranty and Maintenance

### Applications (this volume)

- Using i-mode
- Downloading/Using i-appli or i-motion
- Using Chara-den
- Sending/Receiving i-mode Mail and Deco Mail (Decoration Mail)
- Sending/Receiving Short Message (SMS)
- Camera
- Image Viewer, i-motion Player, Melody Player
- AV OUT
- Ir Exchange
- Using miniSD Memory Card
- Data Transmission

#### **Use the Index (See page 506)**

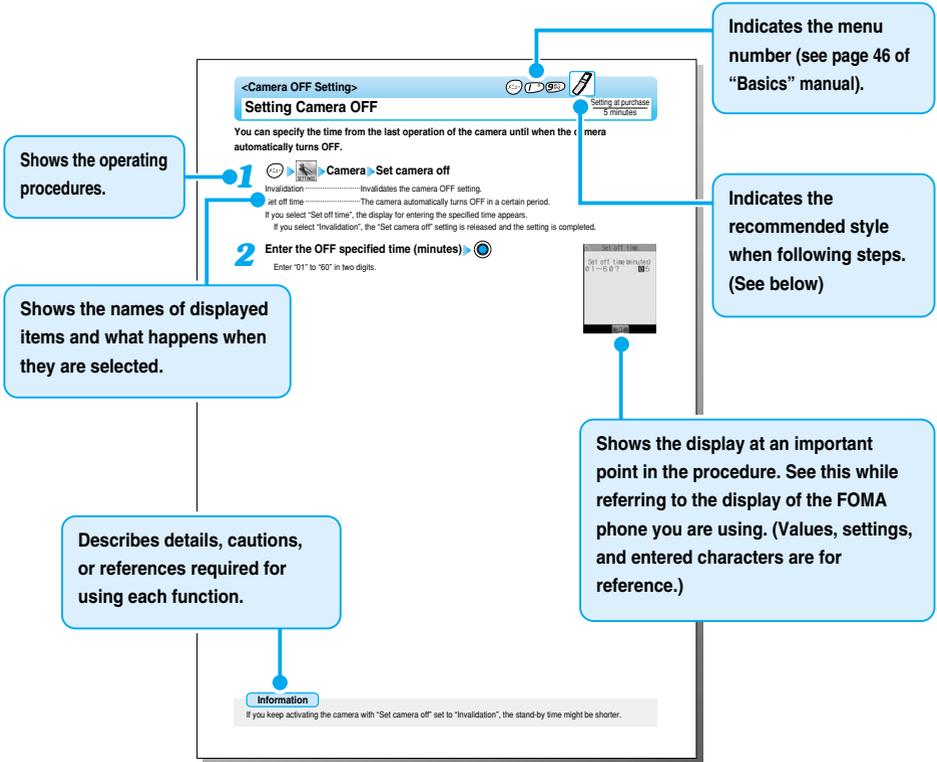
The Index in this manual contains important specific words as well as “Function names”. If you come across with the words or function names you cannot understand, refer to the Index for details.

#### **Making a full use of the Quick Manual (See page 396 of “Basics” manual)**

The Quick Manual summarizing the basic operating procedures is described in the end of “Basics” manual. Cut the sheet alongside the perforations and fold it for use whenever necessary.

# How to Read This Manual

Illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can easily understand how to use the FOMA phone correctly.



## Symbols

	Indicates the recommended operation is in Normal style.	<b>Normal Style</b>	Describes the operation for when a style is specifically recommended. Operate in the style indicated by the symbol.
	Indicates the recommended operation is in Movie style. Operate by referring to the key assignment on page 13.	<b>Movie Style</b>	
	Indicates the recommended operation is in Viewer style. Operate by referring to the key assignment on page 13.	<b>Viewer Style</b>	

This volume describes the key operation mainly for when you operate in Normal style. The symbol is not shown for the style you can work with but not recommendable. You might not be able to do some of the described operation even when the symbol is shown. (The Movie style and Viewer style symbols are not described for the procedures you need to enter characters or password into.)

# Contents

Copyrights and Trademarks .....	1
Structure of This Manual .....	2
How to Read This Manual .....	3
Contents .....	4

## Introduction

### Introduction

Styles and Cameras .....	12
Switching the Style .....	14
Display .....	16
Navigation Displays .....	18
Private Window .....	19
Camera Shortcut Menu .....	20
Multiaccess/Multitask .....	22
Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone .....	24
UIM (FOMA Card) .....	25

## i-mode

### What is i-mode?

What is i-mode? .....	28
-----------------------	----

### Site (Program) Access

Accessing Sites .....	<iMenu>	38
Entering/Selecting Information on Sites .....		46
Using My Menu .....	<My Menu>	50
Changing i-mode Password .....	<Change i-mode Password>	51
Accessing Internet Web Pages .....	<Enter URL>	52
Displaying Web Pages from URL History .....	<URL History>	53
Displaying Site Set as Home URL .....	<Display Home>	55
Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site .....	<Last URL>	57
Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access .....	<Bookmark>	58
Saving Site Contents .....	<Screen Memo>	64
Saving Images .....	<Save Image>	69
Downloading Melodies from Sites .....	<i-melody>	70
Downloading Dictionaries from Sites .....	<Download Dictionary>	71

Operations from Highlighted Information . . . . .	72
Setting Detailed Functions . . . . .	74
Setting Connection Timeout . . . . . <Connection Timeout>	77
Changing a Host . . . . . <Host Selection>	78
Operating SSL Certificates . . . . . <Certificate>	80
Operating User Certificates . . . . . <User Certification>	81
Changing a Certificate Host . . . . . <CA Center Selection>	86

### **i-appli**

What is i-appli? . . . . .	88
Downloading i-appli . . . . . <i-appli Download>	90
Starting i-appli . . . . . <i-appli Launch>	94
Starting i-appli Automatically . . . . .	102
Operating i-appli Stand-by Display . . . . . <i-appli Stand-by Display>	104
Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-appli . . . . .	107

### **Chara-den**

What is Chara-den? . . . . . <Chara-den>	108
Downloading Chara-den . . . . . <Download Chara-den>	108
Displaying Chara-den . . . . . <Chara-den Player>	109
Operating Chara-den . . . . .	110
Making a Video-phone Call Using Chara-den . . . . .	112
Recording Chara-den . . . . . <Record Chara-den>	113
Displaying Chara-den List . . . . .	115
Deleting Chara-den . . . . .	117

### **i-motion**

Downloading i-motion . . . . . <Download i-motion>	118
Setting whether to Play i-motion Automatically . . . . . <i-motion Auto Play>	121
Setting Download Type for i-motion . . . . . <i-motion Type>	121

### **Message Service**

Receiving Messages R/F Automatically . . . . . <Message R/F Receiving>	122
Reading Received Messages R/F . . . . . <Display Message R/F>	125

## **Mail**

### **Mail Functions**

Mail Functions of FOMA Phone . . . . .	136
--	-----

# Contents

## i-mode Mail

Composing i-mode Mail to Send . . . . .	<Compose i-mode Mail>	150
Composing Deco Mail (Decoration Mail) to Send . . . . .		158
Sending Mail with a Still Image, Melody, Moving Image or i-motion Attached . . .	<Attachments>	172
Displaying Sent/Unsent i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Outbox>	175
Saving Composed i-mode Mail to Send Later . . . . .	<Draft Mail>	177
Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically . . . . .	<Mail Auto-receive>	178
Receiving after Selecting i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Mail Receive Option>	180
Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Check New Messages>	182
Reading Received i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Inbox>	184
Replying to Received i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Reply><Reply with Quote>	187
Forwarding Received i-mode Mail . . . . .	<Forward>	188
Displaying/Saving Attached Images . . . . .	<Display Image><Save Image>	189
Playing/Saving Attached Melodies . . . . .	<Play Melody><Save Melody>	190
Downloading i-motion from i-motion Mail . . . . .	<i-motion Mail>	191
Setting whether to Receive Attached Files . . . . .	<Attached File>	196
Setting whether to Play Melodies Automatically . . . . .	<Play Melody Setting>	197
Performing Settings such as Mail Address Change or Mail Rejection . . .	<i-mode Mail Settings>	198

## Short Message (SMS)

Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send . . . . .	<Compose SMS>	212
Displaying Sent/Unsent Short Messages (SMS) . . . . .	<Outbox>	214
Saving Composed Short Messages (SMS) to Send Later . . . . .	<Draft Mail>	217
Receiving Short Messages (SMS) Automatically . . . . .	<Receiving Short Messages (SMS)>	218
Checking whether Center Holds Short Messages (SMS) . . . . .	<Check New SMS>	220
Reading Received Short Messages (SMS) . . . . .	<Inbox>	221
Setting Details for Short Messages (SMS) . . . . .		225
Saving Short Messages (SMS) to UIM . . . . .	<UIM Operation>	227

## Mail Box

Managing Mail Messages . . . . .		228
Deleting Mail Messages . . . . .		238
Useful Functions . . . . .		241

## Setting Mail Functions

Setting Ringing Duration for Mail and Messages R/F . . . . .	<i-mode Ringing Time>	244
Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder . . . . .	<Auto-Sort>	245
Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS) . . . . .	<Mail Settings>	250

Displaying Sent Address Record . . . . .	<Sent Address>	256
Displaying Received Address Record . . . . .	<Received Address>	260
Creating Mail Member . . . . .	<Mail Member>	262

## Multimedia

### Using Camera Functions

Before Using Cameras . . . . .		266
Shooting Still Images . . . . .	<Still Image Shot>	274
Shooting Moving Images . . . . .	<Moving Image Shot>	281
Settings for Shooting Images . . . . .		284
Setting Image Size and Image Quality . . . . .		288
Setting Camera OFF . . . . .	<Camera OFF Setting>	299
Using Photo-sending . . . . .	<Photo-sending>	300
Using Bar Code Reader . . . . .	<Bar Code Reader>	304
Using Text Reader . . . . .	<Text Reader>	312

### Image Viewer

Displaying Images . . . . .	<Image Viewer>	318
Using Images . . . . .		320
Editing Still Images . . . . .	<Edit Image>	329
Displaying Still Image List . . . . .		342
Sorting Images . . . . .	<Sort>	351
Deleting Images . . . . .		352
Creating Animations . . . . .	<Original Animation>	354

### i-motion Player

Playing Moving/i-motion Images . . . . .	<i-motion Player>	356
Setting whether to Display Information for when Playing i-motion . . . . .	<i-motion Play-information>	360
Using Moving/i-motion Images . . . . .		360
Editing Moving/i-motion Images . . . . .	<Edit i-motion>	367
Displaying Moving/i-motion Image List . . . . .		380
Sorting Moving/i-motion Images . . . . .	<Sort>	382
Deleting Moving/i-motion Images . . . . .		382

### AV OUT

Displaying Still Images or Moving/i-motion Images on TV . . . . .	<AV OUT>	384
---	----------	-----

# Contents

## Melody Player

Playing Melodies . . . . . <Melody Player>	388
Using Melodies . . . . .	391
Displaying Melody List . . . . .	391
Deleting Melodies . . . . .	395

## Exchanging FOMA Phone Data

### Using Ir Exchange

Ir Exchange . . . . .	398
Receiving Data Items . . . . .	400
Sending Data Items . . . . .	402
Setting Transmission . . . . . <Forwarding Image>	404

### miniSD Memory Card

Notes for Using miniSD Memory Card . . . . .	405
Inserting/Removing miniSD Memory Card . . . . .	406
Using miniSD Memory Card . . . . . <SD-PIM>	408
Formatting miniSD Memory Card . . . . . <SD Format>	413
Checking miniSD Memory Card . . . . . <SD Check Disk>	414
Displaying Capacity of miniSD Memory Card . . . . . <SD Information>	415
Using a miniSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer . . . . .	416

## Data Transmission

### Before Starting Data Transmission

Data Transmission Available from the FOMA Phone . . . . .	420
Preparation Flow for Data Transmission . . . . .	426

### Installing Transmission Setup Files

Installing into Windows® XP . . . . .	430
Installing into Windows® 2000 Professional . . . . .	431
Installing into Windows® Me . . . . .	433
Installing into Windows® 98 . . . . .	435
Confirming Installed Driver . . . . .	437
Uninstalling Transmission Setup Files . . . . .	439

## Using Software in the CD-ROM

FOMA PC Setup Software .....	440
Installing FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software .....	442
Setting Transmission .....	447
Carrying Out Set Transmission .....	459
Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software .....	461
W-TCP Setup .....	463
APN Setting .....	466

## Setting without Using FOMA PC Setup Software

Setting Dial-up Network .....	468
Connecting Dial-up .....	489

# Appendix

## Appendix

FOMA P900iV Data Link Software .....	494
Links with AV Equipment .....	495
AT Command .....	496
AT Command List .....	497
Index .....	506



The background is a light blue gradient with several overlapping white circular patterns that resemble a helix or a series of interlocking rings. A white rectangular box with a thin blue border is centered horizontally, containing the word "Introduction" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font.

# Introduction

## Styles and Cameras

The P900iV comes with three styles and two cameras. You can select a style suited for the function you want to operate and the camera you want to use.

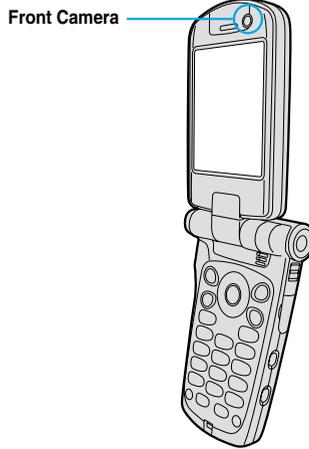
See page 14 for switching the Style.

### Normal Style

This is the basic style with the FOMA phone opened. You can access almost all settings or functions in this style. You can take a shot of your own face using Front camera.



<Normal style display>



### Recommendable functions

- Settings
- Phonebook
- Voice Calls/Video-phone Calls
- i-mode
- i-mode Mail, Short Message (SMS)
- i-appli
- Chara-den
- Schedule/To Do
- Melody Player
- Editing Image

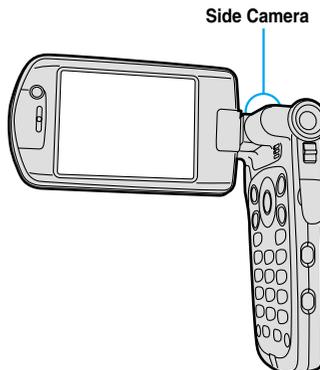
### Movie Style

You can take a shot of people or landscape using Side camera.

Make sure to firmly hold the FOMA phone not to drop it.



<Movie style display>



### Recommendable functions

- Shooting with Camera
- Video-phone Calls
- Bar Code Reader, Text Reader

## Viewer Style

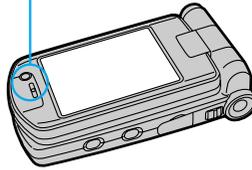
The display faces outside with the FOMA phone closed.

You can play still or moving images with the FOMA phone closed. You can take a shot of your own face using Front camera.



<Viewer style display>

Front Camera



### Recommendable functions

- Image Viewer
- i-motion Player
- AV OUT

## Basic key assignment for each style

This volume explains respective functions by the key operation in Normal style. The key operation for accessing the functions recommendable to operate in Movie style or Viewer style is also described. Unless otherwise described, refer to and follow the key assignment listed below.

For Normal style	For Movie style	For Viewer style
	-	
,	-	,
,	-	,
	-	-
	-	(機能/メニュー)
	-	(機能/メニュー) Press for at least one second
	-	(クリア)
		-
		-
~  ,  ,	-	-
		-
	-	-
,	-	,

### Information

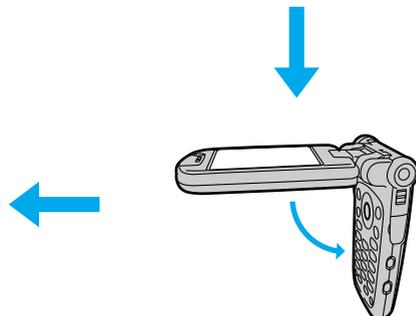
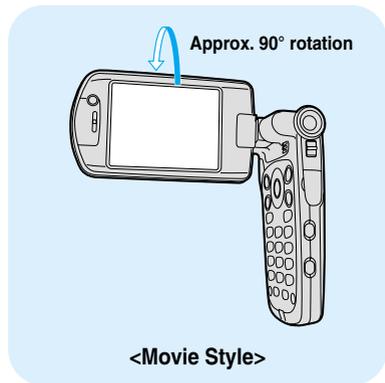
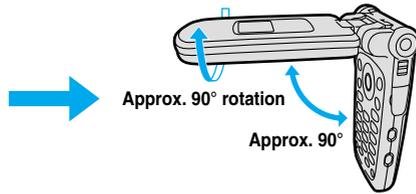
The key assignment in the above table is the basic one. It may differ depending on the function.

You might not access or operate some functions in Movie style or Viewer style owing to available keys. Access or operate those in Normal style.

## Switching the Style

Side camera starts up when you switch to Movie style from the Stand-by display. Image Viewer or i-motion Player starts up when you switch to Viewer style while camera is activated.

You can set the FOMA phone not to start up them by "Work with style".





You can set whether a camera, Image Viewer or i-motion Player starts up automatically for when you switch the style of the FOMA phone.

To shoot images in Movie style immediately, or check the shot image in Viewer style easily, etc., set to “ON”.

To operate other functions in Viewer style, or not to display the image automatically, set to “OFF”.

1



▶ Other settings ▶ Work with style

- ON .....Side camera starts up when you switch to Movie style from the Stand-by display.  
Image Viewer or i-motion Player starts up when you switch to Viewer style while a camera is activated.
- OFF .....Camera, Image Viewer or i-motion Player does not start up when you switch the style.

**Information**

Rotate the LCD unit with the unit opened by approximately 90 degrees. The image turns when the LCD unit is rotated approximately 30 degrees from Normal style to Movie style and folded approximately 90 degrees from Movie style to Viewer style.

Regardless of this setting, Image Viewer or i-motion Player does not start up by switching to Viewer style while camera is activated in the following cases:

- During a video-phone call .....Switches to Front camera.
- Scan Code of Bar Code Reader .....Viewer style is not available.
- Scan Text of Text Reader .....Viewer style is not available.
- While a camera is activated during a video-phone call .....Switches to Front camera.
- While a camera is activated during 64K data transmission .....Switches to Front camera.
- SD Format while a camera is activated .....Switches to Front camera after SD Format ends.
- SD Check Disk while a camera is activated .....Switches to Front camera after SD Check Disk ends.

If you switch to Viewer style while a camera is activated with “Work with style” set to “ON”, the latest still image or moving/i-motion image within the “Camera” folder is displayed.

When a camera has been activated in the Snap shot mode or Continuous shot mode, a still image is displayed, and when the camera has been activated in the Moving image shot mode, the moving /i-motion image is displayed.

When “Store in” is set to “SD card”, the latest still image or moving/i-motion image within the specified folder is displayed.

**Information**

The latest still, moving or i-motion image within the latest folder created in the FOMA phone is displayed, while “Store in” is set for “SD card” in the following cases:

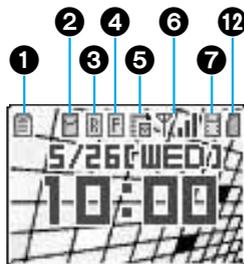
- After the miniSD memory card is inserted.
- After the miniSD memory card is checked.
- After the power is switched on.

The still, moving or i-motion image within the “Camera” folder is displayed, while “Store in” is set for “SD card” in the following cases:

- When the miniSD memory card is not inserted.
- When the miniSD memory card has no file.
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card.

The “Image” or “i-motion” Folder List is displayed, when the “Camera” folder has no file.

# Display



**1**  : Shows the battery level.  
(See page 61 of "Basics" manual)

**2**  (pink) :  
Unread i-mode mail or a Short Message (SMS) exists. (See page 178, 218)

 (gray) :  
The area for i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 178, 219)

 : The area for Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM (FOMA card) is full.

 : Both FOMA phone and UIM (FOMA card) are full.

 : Unread mail exists, and the area for Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM (FOMA card) is full.

**3**  (yellow) :  
Unread Message R (Request) exists.  
(See page 122)

 (gray) :  
The area for Messages R (Request) in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 123)

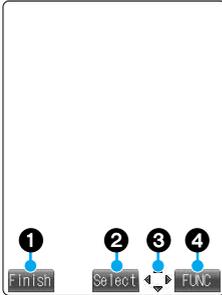
**4**  (yellow) :  
Unread Message F (Free) exists. (See page 122)

 (gray) :  
The area for Messages F (Free) in the FOMA phone is full. (See page 123)

- 5**  **(pink)** :  
i-mode mail remains at the i-mode center.  
(See page 182)
- 6**  **(gray)** :  
The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode center is full. (See page 140)
- 7**  **(yellow)** :  
Messages R (Request) remain at the i-mode center. (See page 123)
- 8**  **(gray)** :  
The box for Messages R (Request) at the i-mode center is full. (See page 123)
- 9**  **(yellow)** :  
Messages F (Free) remain at the i-mode center. (See page 123)
- 10**  **(gray)** :  
The box for Messages F (Free) at the i-mode center is full. (See page 123)
- 11**  : Displayed when i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 179)
- 6**  : Shows strength of the received signal.
-  (Weak)       (Normal)
- "外" is displayed when out of the FOMA phone service area or where signals do not reach.
- 7**  : Blinks while i-mode is activated. "↔" is displayed during data transmission. (See page 39)
-  : Displayed during packet transmission. The icon differs depending on the transmission status. (See page 459, 491)
- 8**  : Displayed during SSL transmission. (See page 39)
- 9**  : FOMA USB Cable (option) is connected to the connector terminal. (See page 428)
- 10**  : Displayed during Ir exchange. (See page 399)
-  : Ir remote-controller is activated. (See page 93)
- 11**  : Displayed during 64K data transmission.
- 12**  : miniSD Memory Card is inserted. (See page 407)
-  : Inserted miniSD Memory Card is write-protected. (See page 407)
-  : Inserted miniSD Memory Card cannot be used. (See page 407)
- 13**  : Displayed during Multitask. When multiple functions are active, "" is displayed. (See page 23)
- 14**  : i-appli is running. (See page 94)
-  : i-appli is being used for Stand-by display. (See page 104)
-  : i-appliDX is running. (See page 94)
-  : i-appliDX is being used for Stand-by display. (See page 104)

# Navigation Displays

When you want to execute an operation on the vertical display, press the corresponding key as below. The navigation is not displayed on the horizontal display.



Main items displayed and basic key assignment

	Example of a display	Vertical display			Horizontal display
		Normal style	Movie style	Viewer style	Movie style Viewer style
①				1	
②					
③					
④					

1 Even when the navigation is displayed, you cannot operate.

2 You may not be able to operate on some displays.

# Private Window

A variety of information is displayed on the Private Window as shown below:



<Receiving mail>



<New mail>

## New mail

When the FOMA phone is closed, the "New mail" icon appears on the Private Window.

Each time you press , you can display the date/time, sender and title of the received mail, for up to three items.

For this function, you need to set "Mail" of "Private window" (see page 197 of "Basics" manual) to "ON".

The date/time, sender and title of the mail in a security-activated box/folder are not displayed.

If you display the date/time the mail was received, sender, and title, the "New mail" icon is deleted.

Only when you receive multiple mail at a time, the second or third mail is displayed.





# Camera Shortcut Menu

You can start the camera with the settings for the required purposes, and can start the Image Viewer and i-motion Player by easy operations.

Bring up the Camera Shortcut menu from the Stand-by display.



Stand-by display



Main menu



Private menu



Camera Shortcut menu

Each time you press , you can change the display in the order of; "Main menu" "Private menu" "Camera Shortcut".

The Stand-by display returns when no key is pressed for more than 15 seconds.

## Icons



You can select icons using .

You cannot use  in Viewer style.

If this key is not pressed for one second, the guidance for the selected icon appears. (You can set "Menu display set" (see page 206 of "Basics" manual) to not display this guidance.)



**CAMERA:**

Starts the camera.



**2 MEGA PIXEL SNAP:**

Starts Side camera in the Snap shot mode.  
"Side camera size" is set to "UXGA (1600 x 1200)".



**MOVIE FOR MAIL:**

Starts the camera in the Moving image shot mode. "Purpose (recording size)" has been set to "Mail attachment", so that you can record moving images in a file size for i-mode mail attachment. ("Front-CMR size" and "Side camera size" are set to "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)".)



**SUPER FINE MOVIE:**

Starts the camera in the Moving image shot mode. "Store in" has been set to "SD card", so that the recorded images are saved to the miniSD Memory Card. ("SD image quality" is set to "Super fine".)



**BAR CODE READER:**

You can read in bar codes and view the read data. (See page 304)



**TEXT READER:**

You can read in alphanumerics and view the read data. (See page 312)



**PLAY POSITION MEMORY:**

You can bring up the Position Memory List. You can play back i-motion images from the point stored using "Play position memory".



**i-MOTION PLAYER:**

You can view moving images taken with the camera or i-motion images downloaded from sites.



**SELF MODE:**

You can set Self Mode to block incoming calls while you are taking moving images.  
(See page 221 of "Basics" manual for Self Mode)

### Information

You can change the shooting mode previously set for when you start the camera from each icon.

## Multiaccess/Multitask

You can use the Multiaccess function to do dual communications, namely, voice communications (phone) and packet transmission (i-mode, i-mode mail, and data transmission connecting to personal computers) simultaneously. Further, you can use Short Message (SMS) at the same time.

The main operations that are available with Multiaccess are as below. For details, see page 274 of “Basics” manual.

Transmissions added Current transmission	Making/taking calls (voice call)	Starting i-mode	Sending/receiving i-mode mail	Packet transmission with PC
During a call (voice call)	x <sup>1</sup>			
During i-mode		x		x
During packet transmission with PC		x	x <sup>2</sup>	x

1: If you subscribe to the Call Waiting Service, this might be available depending on the combination. (See page 356 of “Basics” manual)

2: You can send and receive Short Messages (SMS).

**Multitasking enables you to use multiple functions simultaneously.**

**By combining Multiaccess and Multitask, you can use following functions simultaneously:**

**You can use maximum three functions and a voice call or a video-phone call simultaneously.**

**Mail Group (i-mode mail and Short Message (SMS) functions)**

**i-mode Group (Menu functions inside “i-mode group” of the Main menu)**

**Setting Group (Menu functions inside “Setting group” of the Main menu)**

**Tool Group (Menu functions inside “Tool group” of the Main menu)**

**Other functions not in the groups (Voice call, Video-phone call, 64K data transmission, etc.)**

**You can use one menu function per i-mode Group, Setting Group, or Tool Group.**

**To implement a new function, press  to bring up the Main menu, and then select an item from the Main menu or call up it by a menu number.**

You can neither use  in Movie style, nor enter a menu number in Viewer style.

**When the Stand-by display is brought up, press  to call up i-mode menu or press  to call up the Mail menu directly.**

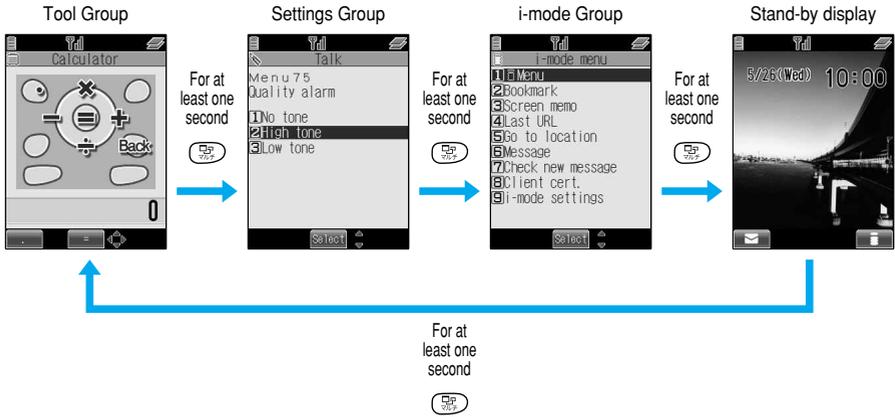
You cannot use  in Viewer style.

**For details, see page 278 of “Basics” manual.**

### When multiple menu functions are operating

Press and hold  for at least one second to switch displays.

The display switches in order from the most recently selected one.



You can also switch displays from the Task menu.

### To check usage status

#### • Use icons

- “” .....Displayed when a single function is used.
- “” .....Displayed when multiple functions are used.

#### • Use the Task menu

Press .

The menu list in use is displayed.

To switch to another menu item, select it by  and press .



### Information

You cannot use  in Movie style or Viewer style.

## Number of Savable/Storable/Protectable Items in FOMA Phone

You can use the FOMA phone to save, store and protect the items such as sent and received Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail, received Messages R/F, Bookmarks, Screen Memos, URL History, and downloaded i-αppli software and i-motion. The following table shows the maximum numbers of items that can be saved, stored and protected: (For details about each function, see the pages listed in the table.)

		Number of savable/storable items	Number of protectable items	Reference page
<b>Mail</b> (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail)	Received mail	1,000 max. <sup>1, 2, 4</sup>	500 max. <sup>1</sup>	p.184, 221
	Sent mail	400 max. <sup>1, 3, 4</sup>	200 max. <sup>1</sup>	p.175, 214
	Draft mail <sup>5</sup>	10	–	p.177, 217
	Inbox folder	30 <sup>6</sup>	–	p.228
	Outbox folder	6 <sup>7</sup>	–	–
<b>Message</b>	Request	100 max. <sup>1</sup>	50 max. <sup>1</sup>	p.125
	Free	100 max. <sup>1</sup>	50 max. <sup>1</sup>	p.125
<b>Bookmark</b>	Bookmark	100	–	p.58
	Bookmark folder	10 (incl. "Bookmark")	–	p.60
<b>Screen memo</b>		100 max. <sup>1</sup>	50 max. <sup>1</sup>	p.64
<b>URL history</b>		10	–	p.53
<b>i-αppli</b>		200 max. <sup>1</sup>	–	p.90
	Mail-linked i-αppli	5	–	p.91
<b>Chara-den</b>		10 max. <sup>1</sup>	–	p.108
<b>Moving/i-motion image</b>		200 max. <sup>1, 8</sup>	–	p.118, 191, 281
<b>Melody</b>		160 max. <sup>1</sup>	–	p.70, 132, 190
<b>Image</b>		500 max. <sup>1, 8</sup>	–	p.69, 133, 189, 274

1: The maximum number that can be saved, stored and protected depends on the size of the data.

2: Includes mail in "Trash box" folder and the i-αppli mail folder.

3: Includes mail in the i-αppli mail folder.

4: In addition, up to 20 Short Messages (SMS), as a total of received and sent items, can be saved to the UIM (FOMA card). (See page 227)

5: Can save unsent mail you are composing.

6: Includes the "Inbox" folder, "Trash box" folder and i-αppli mail folder.

7: A total of the items in the "Outbox" folder and i-αppli mail folders.

8: A total of maximum number of items that can be saved to each folder.

### Important

The stored contents may be lost due to a malfunction, repair, or other handling of the FOMA phone. You are well advised to take notes of the contents stored in the Phonebook, or save them to the miniSD memory card (see page 405). You can also save them to a personal computer by connecting the FOMA phone using the FOMA USB Cable (option) and running the Data Link software (see page 494).

**Be advised that we cannot be held responsible for the loss of data stored in your FOMA phone.**

## UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that can store your information such as phone numbers. It can also store data such as the Phonebook entries and Short Messages (SMS).

By replacing the UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA phones for multiple purposes.

You cannot use the FOMA phone for voice and video-phone calls, i-mode, mail or packet transmission unless the UIM is inserted.

You can set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the UIM. (See page 209 of “Basics” manual)

Refer to the UIM manual for details about how to use it.

See page 50 of “Basics” manual for how to insert and remove the UIM.

### Functions Restricted by UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM has a restriction function to protect your data and files.

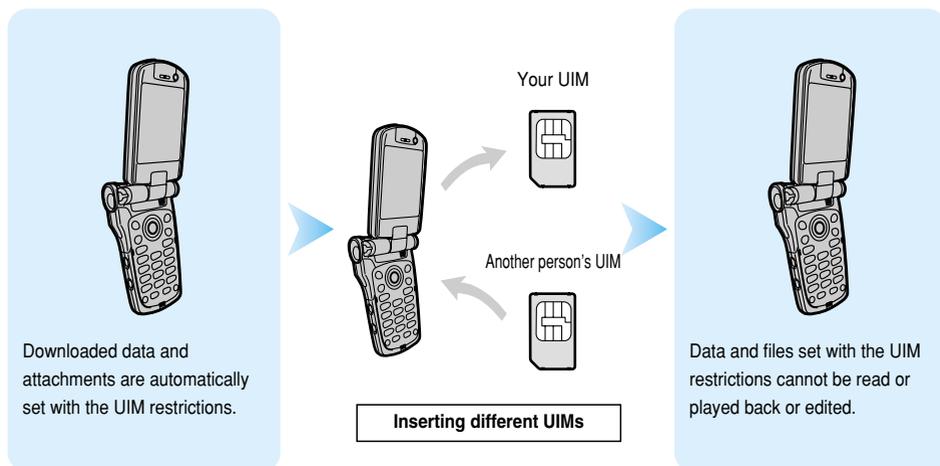
If you obtain data and files by the method below with the UIM inserted, restrictions are automatically set to them.

- When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or the Internet
- When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments

Data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be read, played back, started up, edited, attached to mail, and transferred by Ir exchange function, only when the same UIM that acquired them is inserted.

If the UIM used to obtain data and files is not inserted, or if a different UIM is inserted, the restrictions will protect the data from being read, played back, started up, edited, attached to mail, and transferred by Ir exchange function.

In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as “your UIM” and other UIMs as “another person’s UIM”.



When the UIM is not inserted, or when you insert the another person's UIM, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, .

- Melodies, images, i-appli, Chara-den downloaded from sites or Internet web pages
- i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages
- Downloaded dictionaries
- Screen memo containing melodies, images, i-motion, Chara-den and downloaded dictionaries
- Files (melodies, images, i-motion, Chara-den images, Chara-den movies) attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox
- Files (melodies, images, i-motion, Chara-den images, Chara-den movies) attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox, or Draft, except the data edited or taken with the FOMA phone
- Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted

This function applies to the pre-installed i-appli and Chara-den if they are reinstalled from a site.

The still image or moving images set with the UIM restrictions appear on the Preview display as shown at right.



### Information

When the UIM restrictions are set for data and files, you cannot set those data and files for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone" when another person's UIM is inserted instead.

If you have set the data and files with the UIM restrictions for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone", these will work with their default settings if you remove your UIM or insert another person's UIM. If you replace that card with your own one, then your settings will be enabled again.

<Example: Setting ring tone for "Melody A" set with UIM restrictions>

When you remove your UIM and insert another person's UIM instead, the setting displayed for "Select ring tone" will be "Melody A", but the actual ring tone will be the same as the default setting at the time of purchase. If you replace that card with your own UIM, "Melody A" will play for incoming calls again.

UIM restrictions cannot be set for data acquired using the Ir exchange or data transmission (OBEX) functions or still images/moving images edited or taken with the FOMA phone.

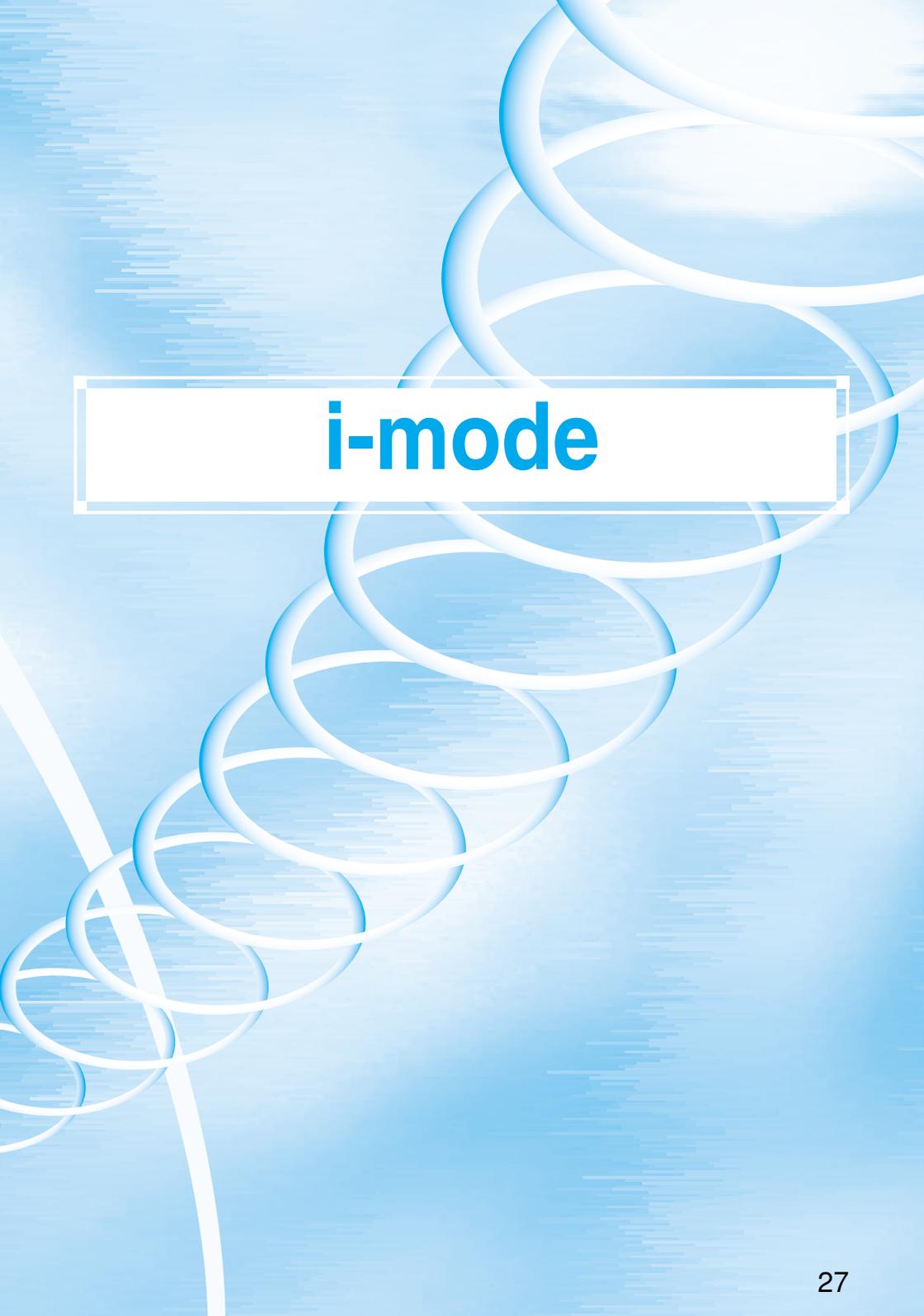
Even when another person's UIM is inserted, data and files set with the UIM restrictions can be moved and deleted.

You cannot start up i-appli or download i-motion by selecting highlighted text on the detailed display of i-mode mail if the UIM restrictions are set.

## Differences of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you are using the blue UIM with your FOMA phone, note that some specifications differ from those of the green UIM.

Functions	UIM (blue)	UIM (green)	Reference page
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook.	20 max.	26 max.	See page 130 of "Basics" manual
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Cannot be used	Can be used	See page 81
WORLD WING	Cannot be used	Can be used	See page 53 of "Basics" manual



**i-mode**

# What is i-mode?

i-mode is the service that makes use of the display of i-mode FOMA phone (i-mode phone) to enable you to use i-mode mail and online services such as site (program) access and Internet access.

## Site (Program) Access

With simple key operation, you can use various sites offered by Information Providers (IP).

## Internet Access

You can connect to the Internet to access Web pages that support i-mode.

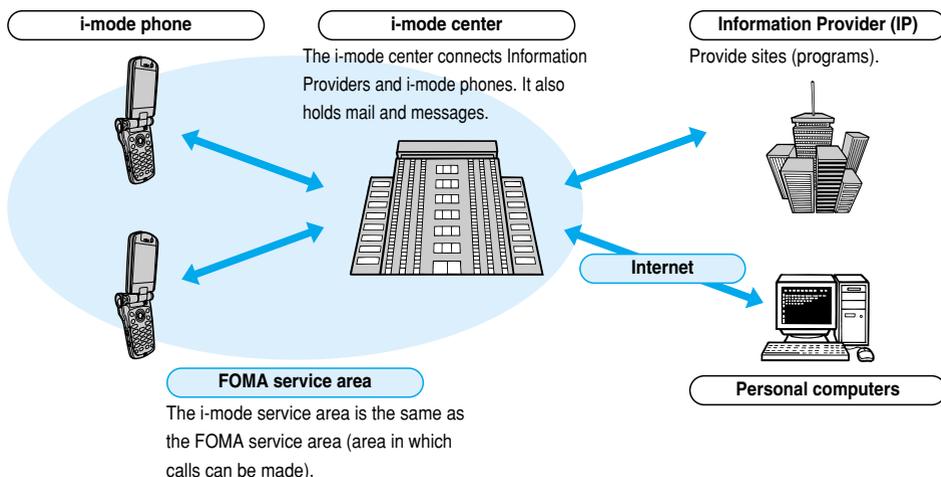
## i-mode Mail

You can exchange e-mail over the Internet as well as between i-mode phones.

What is i-mode?

What is i-mode?

## Structure of service



**i-mode is only available on a subscription basis. To subscribe, call:**

From DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

(No area code) 151 (in Japanese, toll-free)

Not accessible from ordinary phones.

From ordinary phones



0120-005-250 (in English)

0120-800-000 (in Japanese)

Also accessible from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Please double check the number before dialing.

## Information

When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, you will be able to use that service from the same day.

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the contents of My Menu that you had been using with the mova service. However, some sites cannot be inherited by My Menu of the FOMA phone, so these will have to be registered again. You can check “お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)” of iMenu to find out which sites can be inherited by My Menu.

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the same e-mail address.

i-mode is a service that charges a fee for the amount of received and sent data (number of packets). This manual does not include information on fees. Refer to “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” you received when applying for the i-mode service.

The contents of i-mode service might change, so see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual” for details.

## i-mode Menu



1 iMenu	This is the first page that comes up when you connect to the i-mode center. From here you can access sites (programs), “週刊 〇〇ガイド (Weekly 〇〇 Guide)”, and so forth. (See page 38)
2 Bookmark	Once you store Web page addresses of interest in the i-mode phone, you can access them directly the next time. (See page 58)
3 Screen memo	You can view the i-mode pages stored in the i-mode phone. (See page 64)
4 Last URL	You can display the last site or Web page displayed before ending i-mode. (See page 57)
5 Go to location	You can enter Internet addresses directly to connect to pages that support i-mode. (See page 52)
6 Message	You can display the list of received messages. Message services automatically deliver information you require to your mobile phone. (See page 125)
7 Check new message	You can connect to the i-mode center to receive i-mode mail and Messages R/F you could not receive automatically. (See page 182)
8 Client cert.	You can apply for and download a user certificate for FirstPass, which supports SSL transmission. (See page 81)
9 i-mode settings	You can customize the site and Internet settings. (See page 74)

## Site (Program) Access

You can connect to sites by easy key operation, and use various types of online services offered by IP (Information Providers). These online services are for checking bank statements, transferring money, reserving tickets, checking the news, looking up dictionaries, and downloading melodies for the ring tone, and so on.

For some sites, such as ones for banks, you need to apply to the IPs separately. "Sites" mean programs offered by IPs, and include mobile banking and news services.

### Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode center, the first display is the iMenu. From here you can access the various sites (programs) such as “週刊  ガイド (Weekly  Guide)”.

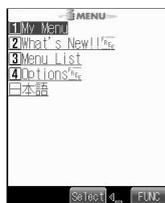
See page 38 for how to display sites.

What is i-mode?

What is i-mode?



Japanese



English

① マイメニュー (My Menu)	Once you register frequently used sites, you can connect to them directly. (See page 50) Information such as pay sites are automatically registered. A total of 45 sites can be registered.
② 週刊  ガイド (Weekly  Guide)	The latest information about newly opened sites or recommendable sites are distributed everyday from Monday to Friday.
③ メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by genre and region. You can select and connect to sites from this list.
④ とくするメニュー (Tokusuru Menu)	Gives weekly updates on interesting PR campaigns, premiums and discount coupons. (Sponsor: D2 Communications)
⑤ i エリア (iArea)	Gives easy-to-use information on the area you are in, such as weather, maps and town information.
⑥ かんたん検索 (Kantan Search)	i アプリサーチ : Menu introducing i-appli by usage category, (i-appli Search) such as free information and games. 便利サイトサーチ : Gives sites picked from the menu list that (Convenient-site are handy and practical for daily use, by Search) usage category.
⑦ マイボックス (My Box)	Membership services that can be easily accessed once you register with the stores or sites providing the services.
⑧ オプション設定 (Options)	For i-mode mail settings and changing your i-mode password.
⑨ お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)	Provides information from DoCoMo and instructions and rules for using i-mode.
English	Switches iMenu from Japanese to English.
日本語	Switches iMenu from English to Japanese.

Above displays are just samples. This actual displays may differ depend on the settings.

## Information

Your mobile phone information (serial number of your FOMA phone and the ID number of your UIM) is sent to the IP (Information Providers) over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties.

Depending on the site, you may have to pay an information fee (i-mode pay sites).

Depending on the site, you may have to apply separately to use the service.

Even if "☎" is blinking, you are not charged packet transmission fee except when you are communicating with the i-mode center.

Some displays such as iMenu may differ if you sign up for Dual Network Service.

## Other things you can do

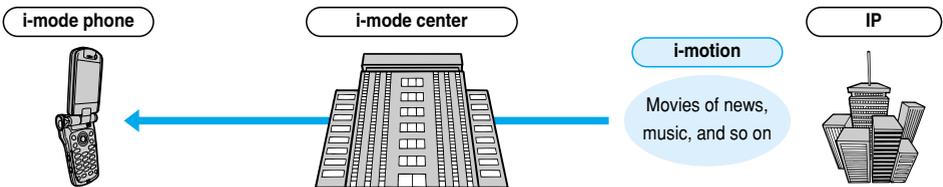
### • i-motion

You can download images and sound from i-mode sites to your i-mode phone, and then play them back or use them for the Stand-by display.

See page 118 for how to download i-motion.

See page 356 for how to play back i-motion.

See page 121 for i-motion automatic replay settings.



You can download i-motion by packet transmission via the i-mode center, or directly by digital communication.

### • Movie Ring Tone

You can download i-motion from an i-mode site to your i-mode phone and set this for the ring tone and ring image. In addition to melodies, you can use the voice of your favorite singer as the ring tone.

You cannot set some incompatible i-motion for a moving ring tone. Check "File property" for whether the i-motion file can be set for. (see page 366.)

See page 181 of "Basics" manual for how to set Movie Ring Tone.

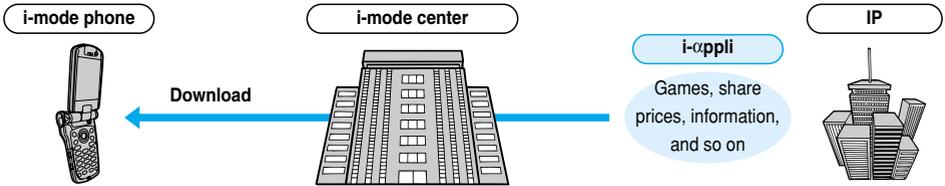
### • i-appli

You can make the i-mode phone more useful by downloading i-appli from sites. For instance, you can download various types of games to your i-mode phone for entertainment, or stock market i-appli for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. With map i-appli, you can download just the data you need, for smooth scrolling.

See page 90 for how to download i-appli.

See page 94 for how to execute i-appli.

See page 102 for how to run i-appli automatically.



### • i-appli Stand-by display

With the i-appli Stand-by display you can use i-appli for the Stand-by display, send and receive mail, and make phone calls. It can be even more useful, because you can use it to display latest news and weather reports, and have your favorite animation character announce new mail and alarms.

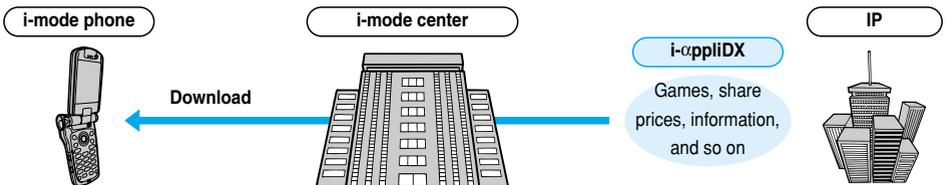
See page 104 for how to set the i-appli Stand-by display.

### • i-appliDX

With i-appliDX, you can make even greater use of i-appli by, for instance, linking your i-mode phone information (mail and call records, Phonebook data, etc.) to compose mail on the display of your favorite animation character, having your animation character announce the names of callers, or obtaining realtime updates of information such as share prices or sport events.

See page 88 for i-appliDX.

See page 94 for how to run i-appliDX.



## • Chara-den

During video-phone calls, you can send an animation character (Chara-den) to the other party's display instead of sending your own image; you can also have the mouth of the animation character lip-sync your voice, and make the character move by key operation. You can download an animation character, and set the still image shot or moving image file of that animation character as the stand-by image, or send it as a mail attachment. (You cannot send the still image or moving image file of which attachment to mail or delivery to external devices is prohibited.)

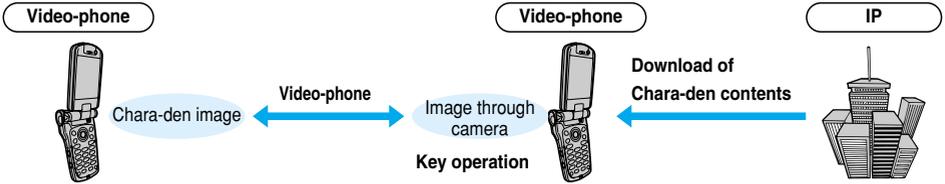
See page 108 for how to download Chara-den.

See page 109 for how to confirm Chara-den.

See page 112 for how to set Chara-den.

See page 110 for how to operate character.

See page 113 for how to record Chara-den.

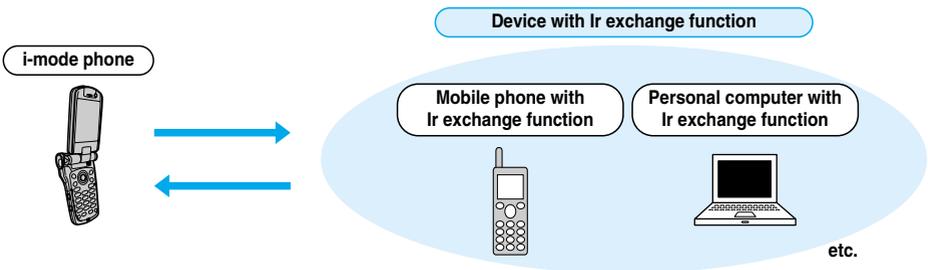


## • Ir exchange

You can exchange Phonebook, mail and bookmark data with another mobile phone or PC using Ir exchange function. You can make even greater use of this function by combining it with i-appli and linking to a device that supports Ir exchange function.

You might not be able to exchange data with some devices, even when they have the infrared data exchange function.

See page 398 for how to exchange the infrared data.



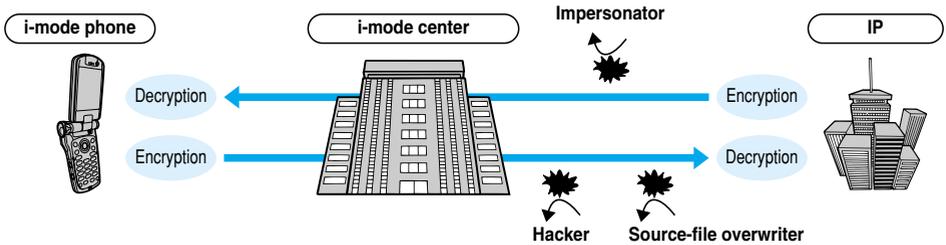
## • SSL transmission

SSL, which stands for "Secure Sockets Layer", employs authentications/encryption technology to protect privacy and to make data transmission more secure. SSL pages use data encryption for data transmission to prevent hacking, impersonation (see page 36), and source-file overwriting (see page 36) so that you can more safely exchange personal information such as credit card numbers and addresses.

There are two types of SSL transmission. One is the transmission to display a SSL-compatible site (SSL page, see page 36) using the CA certificate in the phone without any special procedure. Another is the transmission to display a SSL-compatible site (SSL page) using the user certificate downloaded from the First Pass center. Depending on the site, you use the different certificate to use.

See page 80 for how to use the CA certificate stored in the i-mode phone.

See page 81 for how to use the user certificate from the FirstPass center.



Impersonator: Someone who pretends to be a site for the purpose of illicitly acquiring information about people.

## • UIM restrictions

When you insert the UIM with your information (such as your phone number, or some Phonebook data), operation restrictions are applied to files of melodies, still images, moving images and other data you have downloaded from sites or have acquired from e-mail. Also, when you insert a different UIM or switch the power on without the UIM inserted, you cannot play back or display those files.

### 【 Restricted files 】

Still image files

i-appli

Chara-den

Files pasted to Message R/F

Images inserted in decorated mail text

Image files and moving image files saved using the video-phone's recording function

This restriction function does not work for still images and moving images taken with the camera function, or for files saved to the i-mode phone from external storage devices.

Ring tone and stand-by image settings set for the i-mode phone are reset when this function is set.

Melody files

Moving image files

Images in Screen Memo (including Flash images)

Files attached to i-mode mail

## • i-melody

You can download the latest or favorite tunes from sites into the i-mode phone to use for ring tones. You can also set i-motion movies as Movie Ring Tone. In addition to melodies, you can use voice and movies, such as that of your favorite singer, for ring tones and ring images. (See page 70)

## • Images and animations

You can download your favorite images and animations from sites to the i-mode phone and set these for displays such as Stand-by and Wake-up. (See page 69)

## • Message services

You can apply to sites providing message services so that your required information (Message) is delivered automatically to your i-mode phone.

Message services are of two types, Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

<b>Message Request (Message R)</b>	Your required information is delivered automatically once you apply on the site providing the message service.
<b>Message Free (Message F)</b>	Messages are delivered free of charge by packet transmission once you set the receive setting in the option setting.

See page 122 for how to receive message services.

Messages R/F are held at the i-mode center during video-phone calls, when the power is off, and when you are out of the service area.

### Information

See page 122 for how to set Message F (Free).

The table below shows the number of messages that can be stored at the i-mode center, and the storage period. When the maximum storage number and time are exceeded, messages are deleted from the oldest ones.

	Maximum number stored	Maximum time stored
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

You can use "Check new message" (see page 182) to receive Messages R/F held at the i-mode center.

## i-mode password

**The i-mode password is required to register/release My Menu items, to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings. At purchase, this password is set to "0000", so you need to change it to your own four digit numbers. (See page 51)**

**Be sure not to let others know your password.**

You cannot enter an i-mode password in Movie style or Viewer style.

## Internet Access

**By entering the Internet address (URL), you can access the Internet and display any i-mode-compatible Web page.**

See page 52 for how to display Web pages.

### Information

Web pages that do not support i-mode might not be displayed correctly.

Web pages that are i-mode-compatible have been created using i-mode-compatible tags. See page 36 for details.

Pages might appear differently on the monitor of personal computers.

You might not access the URLs having 256 characters or more.

**Glossary****Internet web page**

A web page where the server (where information is stored) provides brief information. With this web page as the starter, you can view detailed information by selecting items on the web page.

**URL**

The address of a page in the World Wide Web. You can access the page by entering its URL.

**Bookmark**

With this function you can save the URLs of frequently accessed pages so that you can display them easily.

**Cache**

The place where the FOMA phone temporarily stores data such as Web pages that you have displayed. You can easily return to previously opened Web pages because their data is held in the cache for quick retrieval.

**Download**

The operation of obtaining and then saving data or software from servers via the Internet.

**Link**

A connection with data in another location. If, for example, a page contains "Contents", you might be able to move to different pages by selecting items from those contents. This is because the selected item has been linked to the URL for the item's page. To distinguish links from other parts of the page, they are often displayed in a different color or are underlined.

**SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)**

Security protocol that encrypts information exchanged with servers via the Internet, so that it cannot be copied or seen by others.

**SSL certificate**

An electronic document issued by a third-party authenticating institution. For a server and your FOMA phone to be connected by SSL transmission, they must already hold a certificate issued and provided by the authenticating institution. The authenticating institution is called CA (Certificate Authority).

**SSL authentication**

When the FOMA phone starts SSL transmission, this is the process whereby the connected server is authenticated by checking that it has a certificate issued by the same CA.

**Impersonation**

The act of posing as a site or other person to illicitly acquire that person's information.

**Source-file overwriting**

The act of overwriting a person's information while that person is exchanging information with a server via the Internet. Also called falsification.

## Before Using i-mode

Generally contents of sites (programs) and Web pages (Internet web pages) are protected by copyrights. Data such as text and images that you download to the i-mode phone from sites (programs) and Web pages can be used for personal entertainment but cannot be used in whole or in part for commercial purposes or sent as e-mail attachments or output from your i-mode phone to other devices, unless you have permission from the copyright holders.

The data stored in your i-mode phone (mail, Message R/F, Screen Memo, i-appli, and i-motion) and registered contents such as bookmarks could be lost if, for instance, the i-mode phone malfunctions or is repaired. It is wise to keep a separate memo of any necessary information you store in the i-mode phone. Be advised that we cannot be responsible for the loss of data stored in your i-mode phone (see page 373 of "Basics" manual).

If your i-mode phone is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode, i-appli, and i-motion cannot be copied to a new mobile phone because of copyright laws. Also, if you replace the existing UIM with the new one or turn the power on with the UIM not inserted, you cannot display and/or play still image, moving images, or melody files, or those attached to mail, "Screen memo", or "Message R/F".

When the file whose display and/or playback is restricted by the UIM are set for the Stand-by display or specified ring tone, the set contents are reset if you replace the existing UIM with new one or turn the power on with the UIM not inserted.

### Information

#### <When displaying pages stored in cache>

The cache is temporary storage in the FOMA phone, for holding data such as displayed Web pages. By pressing  or  you can display pages stored in the cache without data transmission. (See page 40)

However, if the handset's cache overflows, or if you display the page that has been set (created) by the site so that only new information can be read, transmission will be performed when you press  or .

In Viewer style, press  in stead of  for at least one second or press  in stead of  for at least one second.

Even when you read a page from the cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when last connected.

The cache is cleared when you end i-mode.

The message "Displaying SSL page" appears when you load an SSL page from the cache.



# Accessing Sites

You can use a variety of services offered by Information Providers (IPs).

From the display of the FOMA phone, you can check your bank statement, reserve tickets, and do similar tasks.

(IPs offer different types of services. Some of them have to be applied for separately.)

## 1 iMenu

The i-mode menu contains nine items.

You can start most operations from the display shown on the right.

You can also bring up the "i-mode menu" display by pressing from the Stand-by display.



<i-mode Menu display>



While you are online, "↔" blinks.

While downloading a page, you can cancel it by pressing .

## 2 Select an item (link)

If there is a number in front of the item showing the link, you can connect to that link directly by pressing the same number on the keypad.

(Some sites cannot be connected.)

Next, repeat step 2 to display the desired site.



**1** Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second ▶ Use to select   
You can also bring up the "i-mode menu" display by pressing (機能 / メニュー) from the Stand-by display.

**2** Use to select "iMenu" ▶

**3** Use to select an item (link) ▶

### Scroll function (by line and by screen)

When the full list or text of a site's page does not fit on the display, press to scroll down and display the next part of the list or text. Further, when the next part of a list or text is displayed, press to scroll up to the previous part of the list or text.

Press or to scroll a screen at a time.

**To end i-mode**

1. From the i-mode display, press .
2. Select "YES" and press .

"" goes off and i-mode ends.

It may take longer to end i-mode.

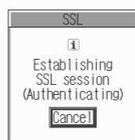
**Information**

If you press and hold  for at least two seconds, the power is switched off.

You cannot end i-mode in Viewer style.

**Downloading SSL pages**

The display on the right appears when you are downloading an SSL site. When downloading is completed, the SSL page appears and "" lights.

**Returning to ordinary site**

The display on the right appears when you return to a non-SSL site.

Select "YES" and press  to display the ordinary site; "" goes off.

**Information**

Set the date and time beforehand to do SSL transmission (see page 62 of "Basics" manual).

**Information**

When "" is displayed, you are out of the service area or in a place where signals cannot reach. Move to a place with better reception so that the level indicator (such as "") is displayed.

"" blinks while you are using the i-mode service (during i-mode stand-by).

Depending on the site, you may have to apply in writing separately to use the service.

Depending on the site, you may have to pay information fees.

In areas that do not receive the i-mode service, "" will blink and the message "Connecting to i-mode" will appear if you attempt to receive or send information via an i-mode site or the Internet (see page 52) or attempt to send i-mode mail (see page 150), and it might take extra time for the i-mode service to start.

The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (areas where you can make calls).

You can bring up the i-mode Menu display even when outside the service area. However, you cannot send or receive information via i-mode site or the Internet.

Depending on the site, images might not be displayable.

You can make and receive calls even while being connected to a site. You can also send and receive mail. However, you cannot receive video-phone calls during i-mode communication.

Even when the message "Receiving Page..." is displayed, you can use  to scroll the display.

You can select underlined items in the displayed site. The selected item will be highlighted.

With some Web pages (sites) that support i-mode, the color setting might make the text difficult or impossible to see.

## Changing to iMenu in English



The iMenu can be displayed in English.

### 1 iMenu

iMenu in English will be displayed.

To change back to the Japanese display, select “日本語” and press (Select).



#### Information

The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.

Items such as Tokusuru Menu, i-appli Search, Convenient-site Search and News & Help are not shown on the English iMenu.

Generally, “What’s new!!” site will be updated every other Monday.

English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).

Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on “What’s new!!”.

## Flash Function



Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. With it, you can use various kinds of animations and expressive sites. You can also download Flash-based images to your FOMA phone and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.

#### Information

<Flash images>

Special effects sound for some Flash images. To silence these, set “Sound effect setting” to “OFF”.

“Retry” plays the Flash image back from the beginning.

Flash images cannot be displayed when “Display image” is set to “OFF”.

The saved Flash image might appear differently to that on the site.

The Flash image might not work correctly even if it can be displayed.

You can operate some Flash images by pressing or . Flash images can be operated sometimes even when “” is not displayed. In Viewer style, you can operate some Flash images by pressing , , (for at least one second) or .

## Return to Previous Page/Go to Next Page



You can go back to the downloaded previous page or go to the downloaded next page.

### 1 Press to return to the previous page. Press to go to the next page.

In Viewer style, press and hold for at least one second to return to the previous page, and press and hold for at least one second to go to the next page.

Two pages before

One page before

Currently displayed page

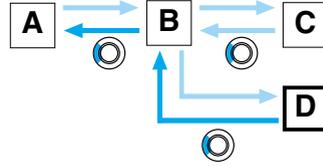


### Turning pages

You can move back up through the pages that you have displayed so far by pressing  repeatedly. However, if you press  to return to the previous page (say, from "C" to "B"), and then display a different page ("D"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" displaying now, even when you press  twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "B" "A".

In Viewer style, press and hold  for at least one second in stead of .

<When pages have been displayed in the order "A" "B" "C" "B" "D">



.....Sequence of page display  
.....Sequence when previous page has been displayed

### Mobile phone information

While a site or Web page is displayed, the Mobile Phone Information Notice display may bring up when you press .

The message "Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?" appears. To send the information,

select "YES" and press . Not to send the information, select "NO" and press .

To return to the previous display, press  while the message "Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?" is displayed.



### Information

The information that is sent is the serial number of your FOMA phone and the ID number of your UIM. This information could be accessed by third parties because it is sent to the IP (Information Provider) via the Internet.

The Mobile Phone Information display always appears before mobile phone information is sent. It cannot be sent automatically.

### Function menu

While a site is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Add bookmark	p.58
Screen memo	p.64
iMenu	p.42
Bookmark	p.59
Enter URL	p.42
Reload	p.42
Save image	p.69
Add to phonebook	p.43
Add desktop icon	p.43
Compose message	p.44
Change CHR code	p.44
Set as home URL	p.56
Display home	p.56
Title	p.44
URL	p.45
Certificate	p.45
Display image	p.75
i-motion type	p.121
Retry	p.45
Sound effect	p.75

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can return to “iMenu” when you want to search for sites again.

## 1 From a site display > (FUNC) > iMenu

“iMenu” comes up.

## Enter URL



While a site is displayed, you can directly enter a URL to display a new site.

## 1 From a site display > (FUNC) > Enter URL

## 2 Select the text box for entering a URL > > Enter a URL >

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.

## 3 OK > OK

To cancel, select “Cancel” and press .

## Reload



By reloading, you can get up-to-the-minute information from constantly changing sites such as sports programs.

## 1 From a site display > (FUNC) > Reload

The displayed contents will change each time you reload if the site has been updated in the meantime.

### Information

If you reload during browsing after entering characters or your ID/password, the message “Send data again?” might appear. (This appears on automatic updating sites even when you do not execute “Reload”.) Select “YES” and press

 to update the site.



When a site or screen memo is displayed, you can save the displayed mail address or phone number to the Phonebook.

**1 From a site display/Screen Memo detailed display** (FUNC)

▶ **Add to phonebook** ▶ YES

Phone .....Saves to the FOMA phone's Phonebook.

UIM .....Saves to the UIM's Phonebook.

**2 New/Add**

New .....Creates a new Phonebook entry.

Add .....Adds to an existing Phonebook entry.

When you save the data to the UIM's Phonebook, the message "[2] Overwrite" appears.

When the phone number has information such as name, reading or mail address, that is entered as well. Enter other necessary items and add the data to the Phonebook.

To store the information in the Phonebook, follow the procedures described on pages 122 to 128 of "Basics" manual.

See page 132 of "Basics" manual for "Add (Overwrite)".

**Information**

You cannot add information to the Phonebook during "PIM lock" (see page 218 of "Basics" manual) or "Keypad dial lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual), or when the data contains a phone number specified in "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual).

If the data contains characters that cannot be stored in the Phonebook, those characters may become spaces.

i-mode remains connected while you are saving data to the Phonebook.

You can sometimes save highlighted information to the Phonebook even when it is not a phone number or address.

The contents of some sites cannot be saved.



From the site currently displayed, the Bookmark List, or URL History List, you can paste the URL icon on the Desktop. Including other types of icons (see page 201 of "Basics" manual) pasted to the Desktop, you can paste a total of 12 icons.

**1 From a site display/Bookmark List/URL History List**

▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Add desktop icon** ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

**To display a site from an icon pasted to the Desktop**

1. Press from the Stand-by display.
  2. Use to select a site's icon and press .
- You cannot use in Viewer style.



**Information**

Depending on the site, some icons may not be pastable.

You can store the icon's title in up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. When the title exceeds this length, the excess part will be abandoned when the title is saved. If these are no titles, URLs are displayed without "http://" or "https://".

URLs longer than 256 half-pitch characters cannot be pasted to the Desktop.

See page 205 of "Basics" manual for how to delete the pasted icon.

## Compose Message



To the i-mode mail message, you can paste the URL of the displayed site, or the URL of the item selected in the Bookmark List or URL History List.

### 1 From a site display/Bookmark List/URL History List

▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Compose message**

The URL is entered into the text.

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on page 150 to compose the mail message.



## Change Character Code



When a character is not correctly displayed, you can convert it to the correct one.

### 1 From a site display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Change CHR code**

#### Information

When the character is still not the right one, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.

Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not come up.

If you change the character code when the correct character is displayed, a wrong character might come up instead.

"Change CHR code" is effective for the displayed site only.

## Title



You can check the title of the displayed site.

### 1 From a site display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Title**

After checking, select "OK" and press .

#### Information

You cannot edit the displayed title.

Titles can be displayed up to 128 half-pitch characters.

## URL



You can check the URL of the displayed site or a screen memo.

### 1 From a site display/Screen Memo detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ URL

After checking, select "OK" and press .

#### Information

You cannot edit the displayed URL.  
URLs can be displayed up to 512 half-pitch characters.

## Certificate



You can check the name, author, validity period and serial number of certificate used in SSL transmission.

### 1 From a site display/Screen Memo detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Certificate

Use to scroll the display to check the information.

After checking, press .

#### Information

When there are multiple certificates, use to check the next/previous ones. In Viewer style, you can check them by pressing and holding for at least one second.

For a certificate display, you can scroll only a line at a time, regardless of the setting for "Scroll".

## Retry



You can play back the displayed animation or Flash image from the beginning.

### 1 From a site display/Screen Memo detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Retry

#### Information

When you select "Retry" during playback, playback will start again from the beginning.

## Entering/Selecting Information on Sites

When you respond to questionnaires or submit applications on sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, pull down menus, and selection boxes.

### Radio Button



Radio buttons are for selecting one of multiple choices. “” indicates the selected item.

#### 1 Move “ (frame)” ▶

The radio button that you want to select turns “” and becomes selected.



### Check Box



Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices. “” indicates the selected item.

#### 1 Move “ (frame)” ▶

The check boxes that you want to select turn “” and become selected.

If you select a checked box again, it will become unchecked.



### Text box



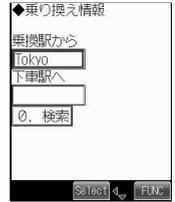
You can enter characters in text boxes.

#### 1 Select a text box ▶



## 2 Enter characters ▶

The number and type of characters that can be entered depend on the particular text box. See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.

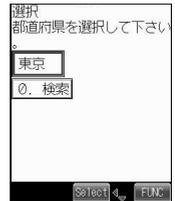


## Pull Down Menu

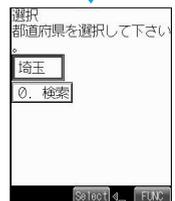
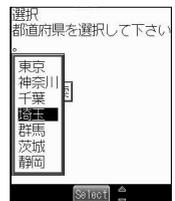


With pull down menus, you cannot see the choices until you select a menu. When you select the menu, a list will be displayed for further selection.

## 1 Select a pull down menu ▶



## 2 Use to select an item ▶



## Information

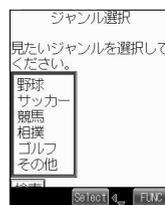
Depending on the configuration of the site, you might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Use  to select an item; then, press  to select/release items. After selecting items, press  (Finish).

## Selection Box

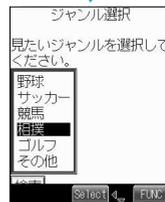
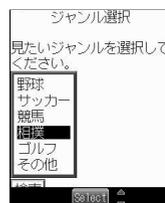


With selection boxes you can select an item from the displayed option list. Some pages show only part of the option list.

**1** Select a selection box 



**2** Use  to select an item 



## Information

Depending on the configuration of the site, you might be able to select multiple items from a selection box. Use  to select an item; then, press  to select/release items. After selecting items, press  (Finish). If "Finish" does not come up, press .



Sometimes, "OK" or "Cancel" is displayed on sites and Web pages.

**1** Use  to select "OK" or "Cancel".

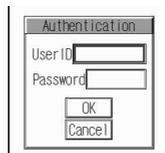
The display will change to  or .

**2** Press .

### Entering user ID or password

Some sites have an authentication display such as on the right.  
(The format of the display varies according to the site.)

1. Select "User ID" and press .
2. Enter your user ID and press .  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.
3. Select "Password" and press .
4. Enter your password and press .  
The entered password is displayed with " \*".  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter numerics.
5. Select "OK" and press .  
Authentication of your user ID and password will begin.  
To cancel this operation, select "Cancel" and press .



### Information

When "Input method" (see page 315 of "Basics" manual) is set to "Mode2 (2-touch)", use the "Mode 2" method to enter numbers when entering your password.

You cannot enter numbers in Movie style or Viewer style.

## <My Menu>

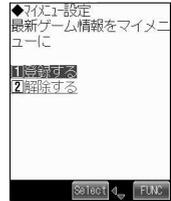
# Using My Menu

If you register frequently used sites in My Menu, you will be able to access them easily.

## Registering Sites in My Menu

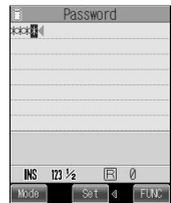


- 1 Bring up the page of the site you want to register ▶ Register My Menu



- 2 Select the i-mode password text box ▶  
▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ 決定 (OK)

The entered password is displayed with “\*”.\*  
See page 35 for the i-mode password.



### Information

The page configuration depends on the site.

If you have switched your subscription from the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service, you can continue using the contents of My Menu that you had been using with the mova service. However, some sites cannot be inherited by My Menu of the FOMA phone, so these will have to be registered again. You can check “お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)” of iMenu to find out which sites can be inherited by My Menu.

Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.

When you subscribe to a pay site in i-mode Menu List it will be registered in My Menu automatically.

You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.

Your i-mode password is required for registering sites to My Menu.

## Accessing Sites from My Menu



- 1 ▶ ▶ iMenu ▶ English ▶ My Menu ▶ Select the site you want to access

### Information

You have to register the site in My Menu beforehand to access it directly from My Menu.

If you are using Dual Network Service, you might not use My Menu registered by the FOMA phone using the FOMA phone, or My Menu registered by the FOMA phone using the mova phone.



## Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings. At purchase, this password is set to "0000" (four zeros), so you need to change it to your own i-mode password. Be sure not to let others know your password.

**1** iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Change i-mode Password

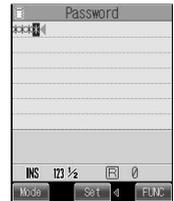
▶ Select the "Current Password" text box

**2** Enter the i-mode password (four digits)

The entered password is displayed with "\*" .

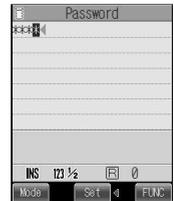
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter numerics.

At purchase the setting is "0000" so enter "0000" the first time.



**3** Select the "New Password" text box

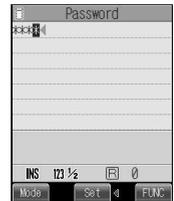
Enter the new i-mode password (four digits)



**4** Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" text box

▶ Enter the new i-mode password (four digits) ▶ Select

Enter the same number that you did in step 3.



### Information

If you forget your i-mode password, you can have it reset to "0000" at a DoCoMo inquiry counters. You will be required to show your driver's license or similar official identification.



<Enter URL>

## Accessing Internet Web Pages

You can display the Web page you want to see by entering its URL.

You can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric and symbols for URLs.

### 1 Go to location Enter URL

While displaying a site, press (FUNC) and select "Enter URL".

### 2 <New> Enter a URL OK

"http://" is inserted automatically.

You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

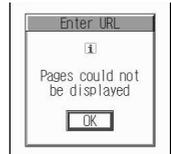
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



### 3 OK

The Web page comes up.



#### Information

Web pages that do not support i-mode might not be displayed correctly.

Depending on the type of the accessed site, the page might not be displayed correctly.

Receiving is stopped if the downloaded data exceeds the maximum size that can fit on one page.

The data downloaded so far might be displayable by pressing .

The displayed page can be registered in Bookmark (see page 58), Screen Memo (see page 64), Add Desktop Icon (see page 43), or Set as Home URL (see page 56).



# Displaying Web Pages from URL History

Up to ten entered URLs can be registered in URL History.

**1** **Go to location** **Enter URL** **Select the URL to be displayed** **OK**

You can edit the URL, by selecting the URL's text box and pressing before selecting "OK".

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



<URL History List>

**2** **OK**

The Web page comes up.



### Information

When more than 10 items are registered in the URL History, the URLs are erased automatically, starting from the oldest ones.

When the same URL is accessed from "Enter URL", it is not overwritten but registered as a separate item.

Excluding "http://" and "https://", up to 22 half-pitch characters can be displayed in the URL History.

### Function menu

While the URL History List is displayed, press () to display the following items.

Add desktop icon	p.43
Compose message	p.44
Set as home URL	p.56
Delete this	p.54
Delete selected	p.54
Delete all	p.54

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Delete This



You can delete a selected URL History.

### 1 URL History List (FUNC) Delete this YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete Selected

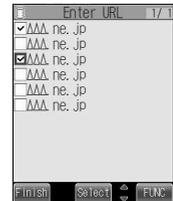


You can delete selected URL Histories.

### 1 URL History List (FUNC) Delete selected Put check marks for the URL Histories to be deleted

"

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".



### 2 (Finish) YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete All



You can delete all URL Histories.

### 1 URL History List (FUNC) Delete all Enter the Terminal Security Code YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

## <Display Home>

# Displaying Site Set as Home URL

## Home URL



Setting at purchase  
Invalid

You can set whether to show the Web page set as Home URL by pressing from the Stand-by display or by selecting “Display home” from the Function menu while a site is displayed. You can also set the URL of the Web page to be displayed.

Example: Entering the URL and setting it to “Valid”.

**1** **i-mode settings** **Home URL**

**2** **Select the text box for “Home URL”**

To set to “Invalid”, select “Invalid” and press .

To validate Home URL already entered, select “Valid” and press .



**3** **Enter a URL** **Valid**

“http://” is inserted automatically.

You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



### To display the Web page set as the Home URL

When Home URL is set, you can display the Web page set as the Home URL by simply pressing from the Stand-by display. While a site is displayed, you can display it by pressing (**FUNC**), selecting “Display home” and pressing .

### Information

If you have not set this to “Valid”, you cannot display the Web page by pressing from the Stand-by display or by selecting “Display home” from the Function menu while a site is displayed, even when a bookmark, URL History or site’s URL has been registered as the Home URL or when you have entered the Home URL.

## Set as Home URL



You will find it convenient to set the most frequently viewed site as your Home URL. Then, you will only have to press from the Stand-by display to bring up that page.

You can also register a URL selected in the Bookmark List, or in the URL History List.

### 1 From a site display/Bookmark List/URL History List

(FUNC) Set as home URL YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

After registering the Home URL, you need to set "Home URL" to "Valid" before you can display the home page by pressing .

If any Home URL has been registered already, the message "Already set Overwrite ?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press to overwrite. Select "NO" and press not to overwrite.

## Display Home



You can display a site from the URL registered in "Set as home URL" or "Home URL".

### 1 Go to location Display home

While a site is displayed, press (FUNC) and select "Display home".

You can also display the page by pressing from the Stand-by display.

#### Information

When "Home URL" is set to "Invalid", you cannot access the site from "Display home".

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with switch is connected, you can also display the home page by pressing the switch from the Stand-by display.

<Last URL>

## Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site

### Display Last URL



When you end i-mode, the last page that was displayed is stored as “Last URL”. You can display the most recently accessed site by selecting “Last URL” from the i-mode menu.

Some pages cannot be stored as “Last URL”, such as pages that contain more than 2048 half-pitch characters, download-completion pages for melodies or i-motion, and FirstPass center pages.



#### Information

Each time another page is displayed, the URL of “Last URL” is updated to the current page.

If you select “Last URL” just after purchase or after performing “Reset last URL”, the iMenu display will come up.

### Reset Last URL



You can initialize the Last URL contents to the iMenu URL.



## Bookmarking Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

### Registering Bookmark



Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the desired page directly.

Up to 100 bookmarks can be registered (total for all folders).

You can delete the registered bookmarks, or change their titles.

#### 1 From the page to be registered ( **FUNC** ) Add bookmark YES

If you attempt to register the same URL, the message "Same URL already stored Overwrite?" is displayed.

Select "YES" and press  to overwrite.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### 2 Select the folder in which you want to register the bookmark

At purchase you can only select "Bookmark".

### Information

URLs containing up to 256 half-pitch characters can be registered. URLs longer than this cannot be registered.

The title can be up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted. If no title is entered, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.

During "PIM lock" (see page 218 of "Basics" manual), bookmarks cannot be registered or displayed.

Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

When the number of bookmarks reaches the maximum, delete unnecessary bookmarks so that you can register new ones.



Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, it is very easy to display it.

## 1



**Bookmark** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶

While a site is displayed, press (FUNCTION) and select "Bookmark".  
At purchase you can only select "Bookmark".



<Bookmark Folder List>

## 2

**Select the bookmark you want to display** ▶

When there are more than 10 bookmarks, use to move to the next or previous 10 bookmarks.



<Bookmark List>

### Information

After you use a bookmark to display a site, that bookmark will be displayed at the top of the Bookmark List. Information might not be updated automatically; if so, perform "Reload".

#### Function menu

While the Bookmark Folder List is displayed, press (FUNCTION) to display the following items.

Add folder	p.60
Edit folder name	p.60
No. of bookmarks	p.61
Delete folder	p.61
Delete all	p.61

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Add Folder



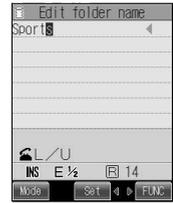
You can add new folders.

You can add up to nine folders in addition to “Bookmark”.

**1** From the Bookmark Folder List ( **FUNC** ) **Add folder**

**Enter the folder name**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

A new folder is added to the lowest field of the Bookmark List.  
If you do not enter a folder name, you cannot add a new folder.

## Edit Folder Name



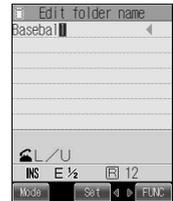
You can edit the name of a selected folder.

You cannot edit the name of the “Bookmark” folder.

**1** From the Bookmark Folder List ( **FUNC** )

**Edit folder name** **Edit the folder name**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

You can add folders with identical names.

## Number of Bookmarks



You can check the total number of bookmarks stored in all folders.

### 1 From the Bookmark Folder List ( **FUNC** ) ▶ No. of bookmarks

After checking, press  .

## Delete Folder



You can delete the selected folder and the bookmarks inside the folder.

You cannot delete the “Bookmark” folder.

### 1 From the Bookmark Folder List ( **FUNC** ) ▶ Delete folder

#### ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

See page 208 of “Basics” manual for the Terminal Security Code.

To cancel, select “NO” and press  .

## Delete All



You can delete all bookmarks. The folders will not be deleted.

### 1 From the Bookmark Folder List ( **FUNC** ) ▶ Delete all

#### ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

See page 208 of “Basics” manual for the Terminal Security Code.

To cancel, select “NO” and press  .

### Function menu

While the Bookmark List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Move this	p.62
Edit title	p.62
Add desktop icon	p.43
Compose message	p.44
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
Set as home URL	p.56
Copy URL	p.62
No. of bookmarks	p.63
Delete this	p.63
Delete selected	p.63
Delete all	p.63

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Move This



You can select a bookmark and move it to a different folder.

### 1 From the Bookmark List (FUNC) Move this Select the destination folder Put a check mark for the bookmark to be moved

"

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".

### 2 (Finish) YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Edit Title

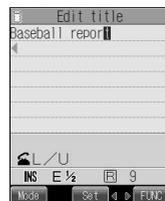


You can edit the title of the selected bookmark.

### 1 From the Bookmark List (FUNC) Edit title Edit the title

The title can be up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

If you delete (blank) the title and press , the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.

## Copy URL



You can copy the URL of the selected bookmark.

### 1 From the Bookmark List (FUNC) Copy URL Select the start point for copying Select the end point for copying

See page 330 of "Basics" manual for how to paste copied characters.

## Number of Bookmarks



You can display the number of bookmarks contained in the displayed folder.

### 1 From the Bookmark List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ No. of bookmarks

After checking, press (F7) .

## Delete This



You can delete the selected bookmark.

### 1 From the Bookmark List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (F8) .

## Delete Selected



You can delete selected bookmarks in the displayed folder.

### 1 From the Bookmark List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete selected

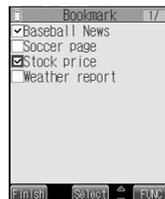
#### ▶ Put check marks for the bookmarks to be deleted

"" and "" switch each time you press (F8) .

.....Deletes.

.....Does not delete.

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (i) (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".



### 2 (Finish) (FUNC) ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (F8) .

## Delete All



You can delete all the bookmarks in the displayed folder.

### 1 From the Bookmark List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete all

#### ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (F8) ▶ YES

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

To cancel, select "NO" and press (F8) .

### Information

"Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the displayed folder. It does not delete bookmarks in other folders.

## Saving Site Contents

### Saving as a Screen Memo



You can use the Screen Memo function to save pages you might want to refer to later (such as recipes or transportation guides).

The FOMA phone can store up to 100 screen memos. (The actual number depends on the data size of the pages.)

#### 1 From the page to be saved ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Screen memo ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### When screen memos are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of screen memos is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary screen memos and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .

2. Put check marks for the screen memos to be deleted.

and  switch each time you press .

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".

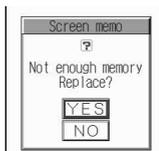
Continue checking until "Finish" appears at the lower-left of the display.

3. Press (Finish).

You cannot use in Viewer style.

4. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



#### Information

You can save the title in up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. When the title exceeds this length, the excess part will be abandoned when the title is being saved.

If you save a Download Completion display, its data will be saved as well. (The Download Completion display for the i-motion with playback time limits cannot be saved.) Some Download Completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos.

When you save SSL pages, their SSL certificates are saved as well.

When you register the same page, it will be saved as another screen memo without being overwritten.



You can display pages saved as screen memos.

## 1 Screen memo Select the screen memo to be displayed

When there are more than 10 screen memos, use  to move to the next or previous 10 screen memos.

Use  to check other screen memos.

Press and hold  or  for at least one second in Viewer style.



<Screen Memo List>



<Screen Memo detailed display>

### Information

The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.

Untitled pages are indicated by "No title" in the Screen Memo List.

### Function menu

While the Screen Memo List is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit title	p.66
Protect ON/OFF	p.66
No. of memos	p.66
Delete this	p.67
Delete selected	p.67
Delete all	p.67

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Edit Title

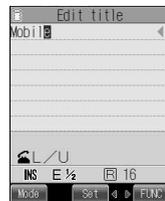


You can edit the title of the selected screen memo.

### 1 From the Screen Memo List/Screen Memo detailed display

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Edit title ▶ Edit the title ▶ (O)

You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



#### Information

If you delete (blank) the title and press (O), the screen memo is registered as "No title".

## Protect ON/OFF



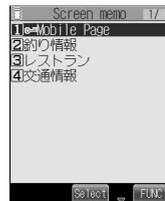
You can protect a selected screen memo. The protected screen memos cannot be deleted.

You can protect up to 50 screen memos. (This number depends on the data size of the protected pages.)

### 1 From the Screen Memo List/Screen Memo detailed display

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Protect ON/OFF

Protected items are indicated by "🔑".  
To release protection, repeat the above procedure.



## Number of Memos



You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos.

### 1 From the Screen Memo List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ No. of memos

After checking, press (クリア).

## Delete This



You can delete a selected screen memo.

### 1 From the Screen Memo List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

#### Information

Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Delete them after releasing protection.

## Delete Selected



You can delete selected screen memos.

### 1 From the Screen Memo List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete selected ▶ Put check marks for the screen memos to be deleted

"

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (i) (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".



### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

#### Information

You cannot select protected screen memos.

## Delete All



You can delete all screen memos.

### 1 From the Screen Memo List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Release protection before deleting them.

### Function menu

While the Screen Memo detailed display is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Save image	p.69
Add to phonebook	p.43
Edit title	p.66
URL	p.45
Certificate	p.45
Protect ON/OFF	p.66
Retry	p.45
Sound effect	p.75
Delete	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Delete



You can delete a displayed screen memo.

**1** From the Screen Memo detailed display  ( **FUNC** )  Delete  YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Information

Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Release protection before deleting them.



# Saving Images

You can save images displayed on sites or screen memos to the “i-mode” folder (see page 318). You can set the saved images as the Stand-by display or the Wake-up display in “Display setting” (see page 187 of “Basics” manual).

**1** From a site/the Screen Memo detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save image

**2** Select the image to be saved ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

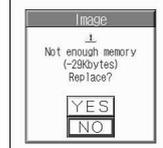
See page 187 of “Basics” manual for how to set as the Stand-by display.

### When images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of images is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary images and then save new ones.

1. Select “YES” and press .
  2. Change the image to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press to switch to the gray display.
  3. Press (Finish).  
You cannot use in Viewer style.
  4. Select “YES” and press .
- To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Insufficient memory

### Information

Images cannot be saved when “Image display” is set to “OFF”.



# Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set a downloaded melody as a ring tone after you save it as "Original tone" (see page 388).

- 1 Bring up a site from which melodies can be downloaded ▶  
Select the melody to be saved ▶



<Download Completion display>

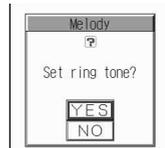
- 2 Save ▶ YES

Select "Play" and press to play the melody back.  
 Select "Property" and press to display melody information. (See page 120)  
 To cancel, select "NO" and press .

- 3 Select "YES" to set the downloaded melody as a ring tone



- Phone ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls.
  - Video-phone ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.
  - Mail ..... Sets the ring tone for new i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).
  - Msg. Request ..... Sets the ring tone for when a Message Request is received.
  - Msg. Free ..... Sets the ring tone for when a Message Free is received.
- To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### When melodies are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of melodies is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary melodies and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .
2. Put check marks for the melodies to be deleted.  
 "  " and "  " switch each time you press .  
 Continue checking until "Finish" appears at the lower-left of the display.
3. Press (Finish).  
 You cannot use in Viewer style.
4. Select "YES" and press .  
 To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Function menu

While the Download Completion display is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following item.

Screen memo

p.64

This item might not be available depending on the operation.

## Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to download melodies.

The part that can be played back is already specified for some downloaded melodies (including those saved as Original Tone). Those melodies can be played back in full normally, but only the specified parts can be played back for the ring tone or similar settings.

Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.

The URL of the download-completion page is not stored as "Last URL". The Last URL will be the one for the page prior to completing download.

Melodies without titles are displayed in the list as "No title".

When you play back a downloaded melody, the volume will be the same as set for "Phone/Video-phone" of "Ring volume" (see page 83 of "Basics" manual).

During a call, you cannot play melodies.

## <Download Dictionary>



# Downloading Dictionaries from Sites

You can download dictionary data from sites. Up to five dictionaries can be downloaded.

## 1 Bring up a site from which a dictionary can be downloaded

▶ Select a dictionary ▶

## 2 Save ▶ YES

Select "Property" and press to display information. (See page 120)

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



<Download Completion display>

## 3 <Not stored>

If the dictionary has been stored already, the message "Overwrite dictionary?" appears.

See page 342 of "Basics" manual for how to operate the downloaded dictionary.

## Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to download.

### Function menu

While the Download Completion display is displayed, press ( **FUNC** ) to display the following item.

Screen memo

p.64

This item might not be available depending on the operation.

# Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, and display Web pages using highlighted information displayed in the sites and mail (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on).

The Web To, Phone To, AV Phone To, or Mail To function might not be available to the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer.

## Phone To Function



You can make calls by using phone numbers or similar information in sites and mail.

### 1 Select the displayed phone number or similar information



Voice phone .....Dials a voice call.

32K V-phone .....Dials a 32K video-phone call.

64K V-phone .....Dials a 64K video-phone call.

Select image .....For selecting "Me", "Pre-installed", "Original", or "Chara-den" as the image to send during a video-phone call.



The display on the right might not come up when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:". Go to step 2. (The display on the upper right might appear with some sites.)

### 2 Dial

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press

To notify your caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press . Not to notify your caller ID, select "Don't notify ID" and press .

Press to cancel the call midway.

#### Information

You cannot make calls using the Phone To function while "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual), "Keypad dial lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual), or "Self mode" (see page 221 of "Basics" manual) is set. Release the setting.

Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Phone To function.

You can also use the Phone To when the mail sender or address is a phone number.

During a call, you can press and hold for at least one second to return to the original display and continue i-mode operations.

You can sometimes use the Phone To function with highlighted information other than numerical strings representing phone numbers.

## Mail To Function

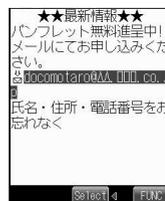


You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information in sites and mail.

### 1 Select the mail address or similar information ▶

The destination mail address is already entered in the address field.

Next, create the mail by following the procedures described step 3 on page 150.



#### Information

You cannot send mail using the Mail To function during “PIM lock” (see page 218 of “Basics” manual) or “Keypad dial lock” (see page 219 of “Basics” manual). Release the setting.

Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Mail To function.

If the mail address is not entered correctly, change it to the correct one and then send the mail.

When multiple mail addresses are specified in the highlighted information, you can create the message in which multiple destinations are entered (simultaneous mail sending (see page 141)).

You can sometimes use the Mail To function with highlighted information other than mail addresses.

## Web To Function



You can access Web pages by using URLs or similar information in sites and mail.

### 1 Select the displayed URL or similar information ▶

While downloading, you can cancel by pressing  (Out) or .

#### Information

Depending on the site, you might not be able to use the Web To function.

URLs are displayed differently depending on the site.

You can sometimes use the Web To function with highlighted information other than URLs.



You can launch i-appli from URLs (links) displayed in sites and mail.

# 1 Select the displayed i-appli information ▶ ▶ YES

i-appli starts.

You cannot start i-appli when “” is displayed in the Outbox List or the Inbox List.

### Information

You cannot start i-appli using pasted data, if you unchecked in “Set i-appli To” (see page 98).

When the “i-appli To” setting (see page 253) is set to “Invalid”, you cannot start up i-appli from the data pasted to the text of i-mode mail.

When multiple data items have been pasted, the data itself might not be displayable regardless of the setting for “i-appli To”.

When the text of i-mode mail contains i-appli To, i-appli To cannot be quoted for replying and forwarding mail. Also, i-appli To cannot be quoted when using data link software or Ir exchange.

## Setting Detailed Functions

### Scroll



Setting at purchase  
1 line

You can set the number of lines that are scrolled for when you use while displaying sites, screen memos, and the text of Messages R/F.

# 1 ▶ ▶ i-mode settings ▶ Scroll

1 line .....Scrolls one line at a time.

3 lines .....Scrolls three lines at a time.

5 lines .....Scrolls five lines at a time.

### Information

When a certificate is displayed, it is scrolled one line at a time.

## Character Size



Setting at purchase  
Standard

You can set the font size for display of sites, or for the main text of Messages R/F.

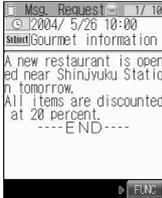
# 1



### i-mode settings ▶ Character size

- Standard .....Displays characters in standard size.
- Small .....Displays characters in small size.
- Large .....Displays characters in large size.

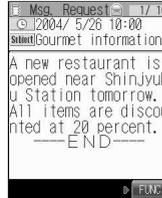
#### <Example> Message R/F display



Standard



Small



Large

## Image Display



Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set whether to display images or Flash images included in sites, screen memos, and the text of Messages R/F.

# 1



### i-mode settings ▶ Image display

- ON .....Displays images and Flash images.
- OFF .....Does not display images and Flash images.

While a site is displayed, you can press () to select "Display image".

#### Information

Even when "Image display" is set to "ON", images might not be displayed correctly. If so, "" will be displayed.

When "OFF" is set, "" is displayed and the data will not be received.

While a site is displayed, you can do this setting with "Display image" of the Function menu. The changed setting will be reflected in this function as well.

## Sound Effect Setting



Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set whether to sound effect tones of Flash images.

# 1



### i-mode settings ▶ Sound effect setting

- ON .....Enables sound effects of Flash images.
- OFF .....Disables sound effects of Flash images.

While a site is displayed, or from the Screen Memo detailed display, press () and select "Sound effect".

#### Information

Even if you select "ON", the effect tones may not sound depending on Flash images.

## Check Settings



You can check the i-mode settings.

1



**i-mode settings** ▶ **Check settings**

After checking, press .

## Reset Settings



You can reset each of the “i-mode settings” to their defaults.

1



**i-mode settings** ▶ **Reset settings** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security**

**Code** ▶ ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

See page 208 of “Basics” manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Contents reset by “Reset settings”

Items	Settings after resetting
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Image display	ON
Automatic replay	ON
i-motion type	Normal type
Message auto display	Msg. Req. preferred
Auto melody play	ON
Pasted melody/Msg.	Valid
Home URL	Invalid (Home URL is http://)
Sound effect setting	ON
Reset last URL	URL of iMenu



## Setting Connection Timeout

Setting at purchase  
60 seconds

It sometimes takes long to download some sites. You can set the time to wait before canceling downloading.

Downloading is not canceled automatically when "Unlimited" is set.

### 1 i-mode connection ▶ Connection timeout

60 seconds ...Cancels downloading after 60 seconds.

90 seconds ...Cancels downloading after 90 seconds.

Unlimited .....Does not set a limit for disconnecting from the i-mode center.

### Information

Even when you have set "Unlimited", you can be disconnected owing to signal conditions.

# Changing a Host

Setting at purchase  
i-mode

## Set Host



Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DoCoMo).

If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

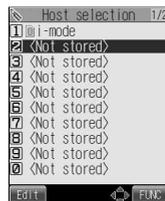
Site (Program) Access

Host Selection

### 1 i-mode connection Host selection

Select <Not stored> (Edit) Enter the Terminal Security Code

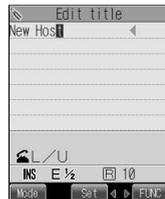
You can operate by selecting <Not stored> and then "Edit" from the Function menu.  
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.



<Host Selection display>

### 2 Title

You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch alphanumerics.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



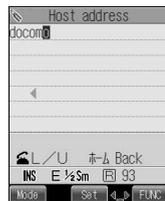
### 3 Host name

You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumerics.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### 4 Host address (Finish)

You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumerics.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



#### Information

You cannot set the host during i-mode stand-by (while " " is blinking). End i-mode first, and then set the host.

### Function menu

While the Host Selection display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Edit	See this page
Delete	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Edit



You can edit the host you have registered.

- 1 Host Selection display** ▶ **Select the registered host** ▶  () ▶ **Edit**  
▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶ 

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on page 78 to edit the host.

You can also edit by selecting the registered host and pressing  () .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

## Delete



You can delete the host you have registered.

- 1 Host Selection display** ▶ **Select the registered host** ▶  ()  
▶ **Delete** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶  ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press  .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

<Certificate>

# Operating SSL Certificates

## Displaying a SSL Certificate



1

→ → i-mode connection → Certificate

▶ Select a certificate → (FUNC) → Certificate info

The certificate's name, author, validity period, and serial number are displayed.  
Use to scroll the display.

You can also check the certificate by pressing instead of (FUNC).  
After checking, press .



## Validating/Invalidating SSL Certificates



Setting at purchase  
All Valid

1

→ → i-mode connection → Certificate

▶ Select a certificate → (FUNC) → Valid/Invalid

Selected item is revoked, then “” change to “”.

When you select a invalid certificate, it will be validated.



### Information

If you set a certificate to “Invalid”, you cannot display the pages with that certificate.  
You cannot set “DoCoMo Cert2” to “Invalid”.

#### Certificates used for SSL communication

- Certificate .....Certificate issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA phone at purchase.
- DoCoMo certificate .....Certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center or FirstPass sites; it is stored in the UIM (green).
- User certificate .....Certificates downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting “Client cert.” from i-mode menu (see page 83); it is stored in the UIM (green).

## Operating User Certificates

User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored in the UIM for the use on sites that support FirstPass.

When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate in the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored in the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass center.

- You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass center.
- This function is not available with the blue UIM.
- The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass center site are subject to change.
- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/F while connected to the FirstPass center.
- Set the date and time beforehand to connect to the FirstPass center (see page 62 of “Basics” manual).

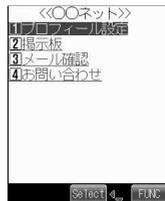
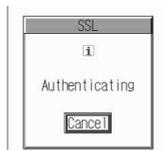
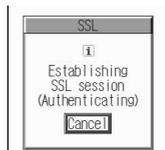
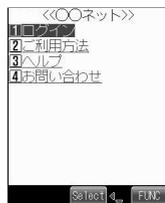
## Client Certification

- With the FOMA phone, server certification and client certification are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA phone exchange certification, check the other party's certification and verify each other for safer communication service.  
By getting client certification, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
- Client certification is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA phone or via the Internet communication with the FOMA phone connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer to exchange client certification, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the supplied CD-ROM. See “FirstPassManual (PDF format)” in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual (PDF format)”. If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.



You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

**1** Bring up a FirstPass site ▶ Select an item ▶



**2** YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

**3** Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) ▶

When you are entering this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter "0000".

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as " \_".

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as the message "Rest X times".)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the number of remaining entry attempts returns to three.

See page 214 of "Basics" manual for how to release PIN Lock.

When you enter the PIN2 code correctly, the verifying display appears and then the site comes up.

See page 209 of "Basics" manual for PIN2 code.

## Information

You need to enter the PIN2 code to access FirstPass sites using your downloaded user certificate.

If you have connected to a FirstPass site without having a user certificate, the message "You have no certificate Do you connect?" will appear. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous page. Download the user certificate from the FirstPass center and then access the site again.

If your user certificate has expired, the message "Your certificate has expired Do you connect?" is displayed. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous page. Update your user certificate from the FirstPass center and then access the site again.

## Accessing FirstPass Center



The FirstPass center performs user certificate operations.

The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass center site are subject to change.

# 1



Client cert. ▶ English



<Site display of

FirstPass center>

## Information

Before using the FirstPass center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.

You cannot use the following functions while connected to the FirstPass center:

- Video-phone (You can still make voice calls.)
- Sending photo messages
- Sending/receiving i-mode mail (You can still send/receive SMS.)
- Checking i-mode (You can check SMS.)
- Receiving Messages R/F
- Downloading i-motion
- The Web To function

## Requesting Issue of User Certificate

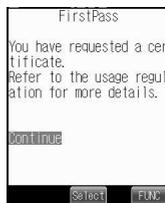


You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it.

### 1 From the Site display of the FirstPass center

#### ▶ Request your certificate ▶ Continue

For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.



### 2 Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) ▶

When you are entering this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter "0000".

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as "\_".

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as the message "Rest X times".)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the number of remaining entry attempts returns to three.

See page 214 of "Basics" manual for how to release PIN Lock.

Enter the PIN2 code correctly and the display for completing certificate requesting appears.

See page 209 of "Basics" manual for PIN2 code.



#### Information

Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to apply for the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the application for issue has been made.

## Downloading User Certificate



After applying for issue, you can download the user certificate. The downloaded user certificate will be saved to the UIM so that you can display FirstPass sites.

### 1 From the Site display of the FirstPass center

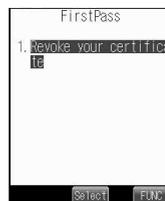
#### ▶ Download your certificate ▶ Continue





You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

## 1 From the Site display of the FirstPass center ▶ Other settings ▶ Revoke your certificate ▶ YES



## 2 Enter your PIN2 code (4 to 8 digits) ▶

When you are entering this code for the first time, for instance just after subscribing, enter "0000".

The entered PIN2 code is displayed as "\_".

When the PIN2 code is entered wrongly three times, the PIN2 code will be locked and cannot be used.

(The number of times you can attempt entry before the code is locked is indicated as the message "Rest X times".)

When you enter the correct PIN2 code the number of remaining entry attempts returns to three.

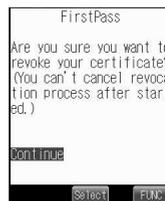
See page 214 of "Basics" manual for how to release PIN Lock.

Enter the PIN2 code correctly and the display for confirming certificate revocation appears.

See page 209 of "Basics" manual for PIN2 code.



## 3 Continue ▶ Continue ▶ Continue



### Information

You cannot consecutively perform user certificate issue application, download, or revoke application. You need to complete a particular operation and disconnect the FirstPass center before doing another operation.

After revoking a certificate application, you will not be able to display FirstPass sites.

To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate application, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.

To view the downloaded user certificate, see page 45.

## Set a Certificate Host



Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the host to be used for downloading the user certificate.

- i-mode connection**
**Certificate center**  
**Select <Not stored>**
**Enter the Terminal Security Code**
**Enter the Terminal Security Code**

You can operate by selecting <Not stored> and then "Edit" from the Function menu.  
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.



<CA Center Selection display>

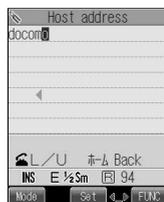
- Host name**
**Enter a host name**

You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



- Host address**
**Enter the address**
**Finish**

You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Function menu

While the CA Center Selection display is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Edit	p.87
Delete	p.87

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Edit



You can edit the host you have registered.

- 1 CA Center Selection display ▶ Select the registered host ▶**  **(FUNC)**  
▶ **Edit ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶** 

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on page 86 to edit the host.

You can also edit by selecting the registered host and pressing  **(Edit)**.

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

## Delete



You can delete the host.

- 1 CA Center Selection display ▶ Select the registered host ▶**  **(FUNC)**  
▶ **Delete ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶**  **▶ YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Before Using FirstPass

FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA phone exchange certificates, check the other party's certification and perform mutual authentication. When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read the "FirstPassご利用規約 (the usage regulation)" on the display, agree to these, and then make the request.

You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate.

Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.

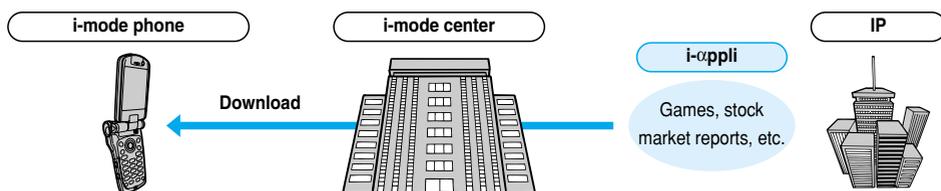
If your UIM is lost or stolen, DoCoMo can revoke your user certificate.

DoCoMo bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites. Please solve the problem between you and sites that support FirstPass.

DoCoMo and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.

## What is i-appli?

By downloading i-appli from i-mode sites, you can make full use of your i-mode FOMA phone. For example, you can enjoy various games on i-mode phone, and can check the stock market at regular intervals once you have downloaded a stock market information i-appli. In addition, i-appli for map downloads the required data items only, so smooth scrolling is enabled. You can also store data directly from i-appli into the Phonebook or Schedule. i-appli that links to Multimedia is also available, enabling you to download and save images.



See page 90 for downloading i-appli.

See page 94 for running i-appli.

See page 102 for running i-appli automatically.

- Mobile phone information (FOMA phone's serial number and UIM's ID number) of your i-mode phone may be used depending on the software.
- Some of software do communication when it is started; you can set the software not to communicate.

### Using stored data

Some of i-appli software are able to refer, save, and operate to the stored data in your i-mode phone (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images and icon information). The following are the items you can do using the stored data:

- Storing Phonebook entry
- Using icon information
- Saving to Bookmark
- Storing schedule event
- Retrieving images from Multimedia
- Saving image to Multimedia

## What is i-appliDX?

i-appliDX enables you to link to your i-mode phone's information (mail, Dialed Call Record/Received Call Record/Redial, or Phonebook data), in a more convenient and pleasurable way. i-appliDX also enables you to compose a mail message in the display where your desired graphic character appears, or where that graphic character tells you who the caller is. By linking to mail, you can update the stock price information, or the progress of games in real time.

See page 94 for running i-appliDX.

## Using stored data

i-αppliDX enables you to refer to, store, and operate the stored data such as in mail, Redial, Received Call Record, and ringing tone in addition to the stored data in the Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, and icon information which are in use for ordinary i-αppli. The following are the items you can do using the stored data:

- Storing Phonebook entry
  - Referring to Phonebook
  - Using icon information
  - Saving to Bookmark
  - Storing schedule event
  - Using Mail Menu
  - Using i-mode Mail Composing display
  - Referring to the latest data in Redial
  - Referring to the latest data in Received Call Record
  - Referring to the latest unread mail
  - Saving ring tone
  - Changing ring tone (for calls, mail, message)
  - Bringing up images from Multimedia
  - Saving images to Multimedia
  - Changing display settings (for Stand-by display, Dialing/Receiving display, Mail Sending/Receiving display, Message R/F Receiving display)
- i-αppliDX might do communication to confirm the validity of software regardless of the communication settings of the software. Communication frequencies and timing differ depending on the software.
  - You need to set the Clock to start up i-αppliDX.

### What is Mail-linked i-αppli?

Mail-linked i-αppli is a type of i-αppliDX, enabling you to use i-αppli in a more convenient and pleasurable way. By exchanging information via i-mode mail, you can update the stock price information, or the progress of games in real time.

- i-αppli mail running under mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.

### Other things you can do

#### i-αppli Stand-by display

You can set i-αppli for the Stand-by display, so that you can receive mail or make a phone call in the i-αppli Stand-by display. You can also set the i-αppli Stand-by display more convenient: it enables you to display the latest information about news or weather, or to bring up your desired graphic characters that notifies you of incoming mail or alarm. (See page 104)

They are the functions that can be used under the software supporting the i-αppli Stand-by display.

#### i-αppli auto start

Specify the date, time, and the day of the week to auto-start the software. Some of software can be auto-started at the time interval set in the software. (See page 102)

#### Shooting with Camera

You can take a picture using the i-mode phone's camera from the software.

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the camera shooting function.

#### Ir Exchange

You can communicate with the devices that come with the Ir exchange functions. i-αppli has now a wide variety of usage by linking to the Ir exchange devices. (See page 398)

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the Ir exchange functions.

Communication might not be done with some devices even if they support the Ir exchange functions.

#### Ir remote-controller

You can operate, from the software, home electronic appliances supporting the Ir remote-controller. (See page 93)

This is a function that can be used under the software supporting the Ir remote-controller. You need to have the software compatible with target devices.



# Downloading i-αppli

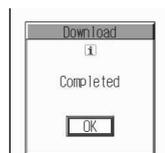
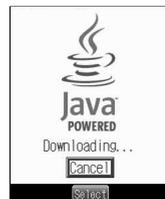
You can run software downloaded from sites on the FOMA phone's display.

You can store from 10 to 200 downloaded software programs. (Depending on the volume of the data, the maximum storable number varies.)

## 1 Bring up a site from which i-αppli can be downloaded

### ▶ Select the software ▶

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .



Press when downloading ends.

When downloading ends, the display for setting the software (Network Setting, Stand-by Setting, or Stand-by Display Network) might come up.

Press , after setting is completed. These settings can also be done from the software list. (See pages 98, 104 and 105)

## 2 YES/NO

YES.....Launches i-αppli.

NO .....Returns to the site display.

When software launches, " " appears at the bottom of the display.

### i-αppli that launches right away from sites

Some software launches as soon as it is downloaded. This software is downloaded but not saved. When the software ends, a display comes up to confirm saving. To save the software, select "YES" and press .

### When software programs are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of software programs is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary software programs and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .

2. Put check marks for the software programs to be deleted.

"

Continue checking items until the number of insufficient bytes becomes zero and "Finish" appears at the lower-left of the display.

3. Press  (Finish).

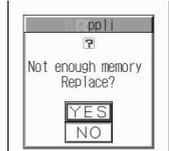
You cannot use  in Viewer style.

4. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Deleted software programs cannot be recovered.

Software is not saved if downloading fails because of signal conditions.



### Downloading mail-linked i-αppli

When you download mail-linked i-αppli, each i-αppli mail folder is created automatically in the Inbox/Outbox Folder List. The name of the folders is the same as that of the downloaded mail-linked i-αppli, and cannot be altered. i-αppli mail is automatically assigned to the i-αppli mail folder.

Up to five mail-linked i-αppli can be saved.

You cannot download the software if the mail-linked i-αppli using the same folder is already in the software list.

You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli if security settings have been activated for the Inbox or Outbox.

You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli if the Inbox/Outbox Folder List contains five i-αppli mail folders.

### Reloading mail-linked i-αppli

You can use an existing i-αppli mail folder when reloading mail-linked i-αppli whose folder only remains. If you do not intend using the existing i-αppli mail folder, delete the folder and create a new i-αppli mail folder. You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli without creating a new folder.

To use the existing i-αppli mail folder

1. From the display for confirming whether to use the folder, select "YES" and press .

To delete the existing folder and create a new i-αppli mail folder

1. From the display for confirming whether to use the folder, select "NO" and press .

2. From the display for confirming whether to create a folder, select "YES" and press .

### Information

"i-αppli mail" is mail sent and saved by mail-linked i-αppli and mail received for mail-linked i-αppli. i-αppli data is set for i-αppli mail so that i-αppli mail is automatically assigned to the i-αppli mail folder.

## Information

Downloading cannot be done depending on the accessed sites.

Some i-αppli software can automatically connect to the i-mode center after it is downloaded. However, to use this service, you have to select it in advance in "Software setting (Network setting)" (see page 98).

"SSL" appears at the top of the display while software information or software is being downloaded from SSL pages.

The default for "Display software info" is "Not display". If you set this to "Display" you can check the software information before downloading it.

Press  to display the message "Download?".

Select "YES" and press  to start downloading.

When you attempt to download software, the message "Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?" might be displayed.

Select "YES" and press  to start downloading. In this case, your mobile phone information (serial number and the ID number of your FOMA phone) is sent to the provider over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

When you attempt to download software, a message may appear to confirm use of the stored data items and the FOMA phone's information.

Select "YES" and press  to start downloading.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If you attempt to re-download software that was downloaded with a different UIM, the message "Already downloaded by different UIM Overwrite?" is displayed.

Select "YES" and press  to start downloading. When downloading ends, the software that was downloaded using a different UIM is deleted.

You can use 3D software. With 3D software you can enjoy three-dimensional images.

The 3D polygonal engine enables cubic images to be displayed in i-αppli.

By combining polygons, a deep, cubic image is displayed.

## Display Software Information



Setting at purchase  
Not display

You can set whether to display software information before downloading i-αppli.

1



i-αppli settings ▶ Display software info

Display .....Displays software information before downloading.

Not display ....Does not display software information before downloading.

## i-αppli Pre-installed in Your FOMA Phone

At purchase, your FOMA phone contains the following five software programs.



### ファイナルファンタジー (Final Fantasy)

World famous roll playing game "Final Fantasy" series, the complete, first portable version.

"When the world is in darkness, four warriors will come."

The story begins from when the four warriors have found a way to a castle.

© 1987, 2004 SQUARE ENIX CO., LTD. ALL Rights Reserved.

For details, see "別冊 内蔵 i アプリガイド (Pre-installed i-αppli guide)".



## BombLink

Rotate a bomb, get its fuse fired using flames falling from above at both sides to explode the bomb, and then fight a fire. Point the fuse of other bombs to the exploding bomb and the bombs get exploded in a chain. Bombs rise up from the bottom in series. When the bombs are piled up to the top of the display, the game is over.

presented by Panasonic

For details, see “別冊 内蔵 i アプリガイド (Pre-installed i-appli guide)”.



## くるくるフォトフィール (Photo Phone Book)

Insert photos or illustrations to create your original Phonebook. You write the Phonebook detailed information about birthday, interest, or skill, so that you can refer to them whenever necessary. Further, you can make calls or send messages by selecting the stored photos or illustrations. If the other party has the compatible software, you can send or receive files via infrared.

© Panasonic Mobile Communications

For details, see “別冊 内蔵 i アプリガイド (Pre-installed i-appli guide)”.



## i 絵文字メール (Pictograph Mail)

In response to the pictograph for mail title, graphic characters animate around, enabling you to exchange cheerful messages. When the other party has Dimo compatible phone, the graphic characters let you know that you have had calls or messages, or unread messages in the FOMA phone.

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.



## アプリモコンP (APPLIMOCON P)

You can use the FOMA phone as a remote-controller for TV. You can also download program tables.

©NANO Media, Inc.

The “Program table” and “Calendar” functions are available only for 30 days after you downloaded the program.

For details, see “別冊 内蔵 i アプリガイド (Pre-installed i-appli guide)”.

### Ir remote-controller

You can use the FOMA phone as a remote-controller for devices supporting Ir remote-controllers. i-appli makes use of Ir to let the FOMA phone send remote control signals.

To use remote control devices you have to download the software for those devices.

This function does not work with some devices.

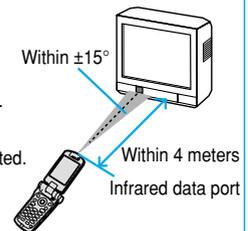
Communication might be affected by compatible devices and the ambient light.

You cannot use Ir remote-controller during Self Mode.

Aim the FOMA phone’s infrared data port at the front of the device to be operated.

You can operate up to 4 meters away from the device.

Keep the angle of the infrared rays within  $\pm 15^\circ$ .



### Information

You can delete these software programs. You can also reload them from the “P-SQUARE” site.

iMenu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker) P-SQUARE

If you use the UIM other than the UIM used when downloading, UIM Restriction is activated. (See page 25)



# Starting i-αppli

You can run downloaded or pre-installed i-αppli.

1



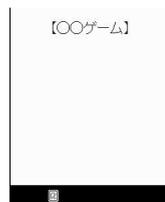
Software list ▶ Select the software to launch ▶



From the Stand-by display, you can also bring up the "Software list" by pressing and holding  for at least one second.

To cancel launching the software, select "Cancel" and press .

If you have set "Software setting (Network set)" to "Check every start", the message "Use network transmission?" might be displayed. To connect to the network, select "YES"; otherwise, select "NO" and press .



"" or "" is displayed while i-αppli is running.

### To run i-αppliDX

i-αppliDX uses information and functions of the FOMA phone.

When i-αppliDX has been launched and is running, a message appears to confirm the use of the FOMA phone's information and functions. Select "YES" and press  to enable i-αppliDX to use the information and functions.

#### Information

Set the time and date of the clock beforehand by "Clock setting" for i-αppliDX to run. (See page 62 of "Basics" manual)

### Launching mail-linked i-αppli

You can launch mail-linked i-αppli from the Inbox/Outbox Folder List as well as from the Software List.

1. From the Inbox/Outbox Folder List, select an i-αppli mail folder and press .

If security settings have been set for the i-αppli mail folder, you need to enter the Terminal Security Code.



### To end i-appli

1. While the software is running, press and hold  for at least one second or press .
2. Select "YES" and press .  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### When software malfunctions

You can check the details when software malfunctions.

1. From the Stand-by display, press .
2. Select  and press .
3. Select "i-appli info" and press .
4. Select "Trace info" and press .

The display for Trace Information comes up.

### When a security error occurs

You can check the details when i-appli ends because of a security error.

1. From the Stand-by display, press .
2. Select  and press .
3. Select "i-appli info" and press .
4. Select "Security error history" and press .

The display for Security Error History comes up.

If "  " is displayed on the desktop, you can select the icon and press  to display the Security Error History.

### Copying and deleting information

You can copy or delete information when "  " appears on the Trace Information or Security Error History.

To copy information: 1. From the Trace Information or Security Error History display, press

1.  (  ).
2. Select "Copy info" and press .

To delete information: 1. From the Trace Information or Security Error History display, press

1.  (  ).
2. Select "Delete info" and press .
3. Select "YES" and press .



### Information

When there is no Trace Information, "Trace info" is not displayed.

When the memory space for the Trace information becomes full, the information is overwritten beginning from the oldest one in order.

To creators of i-appli

If you encounter an error while creating software, the Trace Information display might help identify the problem.

See " When software malfunctions" on this page to confirm the Trace Information.

## Information

You can enable software to start automatically if you set "Auto start set" to "ON" and set "Auto start time".

You can also have software start automatically by selecting a link in a site or mail that launches i-αppli in the FOMA phone.

You can receive mail and Messages R/F while i-αppli is launching or running. i-αppli will continue and the icon "  (pink)", "  (yellow)" or "  (yellow)" will be displayed. To check mail or messages you have received, close i-αppli or use the Multitask function (see page 278 of "Basics" manual).

While software is running, any melody that is played will be at the volume set for "Ring volume" (see page 83 of "Basics" manual). However, melodies are not played during a call.

If a call comes in while i-αppli is running, i-αppli will be interrupted temporarily. The i-αppli display returns as soon as you end the call.

With some software you can use the Web To function and the Phone To function from i-αppli. However, you cannot use the Web To from the i-αppli Stand-by display.

If i-motion (image and sound data) plays back while i-αppli is running, see page 358 for operation instructions. The i-αppli display returns when you cancel playback.

If i-αppli is launched from the camera, the images taken are not saved with ordinary images, but are saved as part of i-αppli for its usage.

Images that are used by i-αppli and data you have entered can be sent over the Internet to the server automatically.

i-αppli uses the following types of images:

- Images taken by the camera after it is launched from a camera-linked i-αppli
- Images obtained by the i-αppli Ir-exchange function

With some software, the message "This software will use terminal ID Download?" might be displayed. Select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Sometimes i-αppli mail using mail-linked i-αppli might not display successfully.

At i-αppli launch, the message "Upgrade?" might be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to upgrade the software. (See page 100)

Some programs of i-αppli software may save the various information running under i-αppli when it is closing. Therefore, the information might not be saved if the battery alarm sounds or the battery pack is removed while i-αppli is running. If the battery level indicates "  ", either press  or end i-αppli in accordance with the instructions from each software.

### Using software to launch another software

With some software you can launch the specified i-αppli and enjoy it without having to return to the Software List.

Some software launches the specified software only.

When software to be launched is specified

While i-αppli is running, a display comes up for confirming launch of specified software.

1. Select "YES" and press  to launch the software.

When software to be launched is not specified

When software to be launched is not specified, you will have to select the software.

While i-αppli is running, a prompt asks if you want to select software.

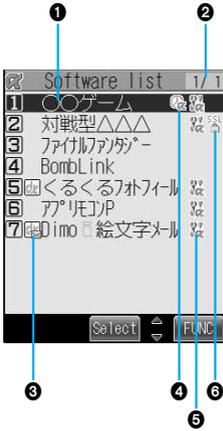
1. Select "YES" and press  to display the Software List.
2. Select the software and press .

## Information

If the specified software is not in the Software List, you will have to download it.

# Software List

The following items appear in the Software List.



- 1 Title**  
i-appli title
- 2 Page number**  
Page number of Software List (current page/total pages)
- 3 i-appliDX**  
**Mail-linked i-appli**
- 4 Auto Start**  
Indicates that auto launch is set.  
**i-appli Stand-by display**  
Indicates that this software is set as the i-appli Stand-by display.  
**Auto Start and i-appli Stand-by displays**  
Indicates that both the Auto Start and i-appli Stand-by displays are set.
- 5 OK for setting**  
Indicates that setting can be done for either "Auto start time" or "Software setting (Stand-by set)".  
**UIM execution restrictions**  
Indicates that the contents have been downloaded or upgraded by using a different UIM.
- 6 SSL**  
Indicates that the contents have been downloaded from an SSL page.

i-appli  
i-appli Launch

## Function menu

While the Software List is displayed, press ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Set i-appli To	p.98
Auto start time	p.102
Software setting	p.98, 99, 104, 105
Software info	p.99
Upgrade	p.100
Add desktop icon	p.100
Delete this	p.101
Delete selected	p.101
Delete all	p.101

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can set the i-αppli launch method for the selected software. Software can be set individually.

## 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Set i-αppli To

## 2 Put check marks for the items to be set ▶ (Finish)

“” and “” switch each time you press .

.....Launches.

.....Does not launch.

Site “i-αppli To” .....Launches i-αppli from site containing i-αppli To.

Mail “i-αppli To” .....Launches i-αppli from mail containing i-αppli To.

Ir “i-αppli To” .....Launches i-αppli from external device that receives Ir data for launching i-αppli.

Bar code “i-αppli To” .....Launches i-αppli from bar code for launching i-αppli.

Some items might not be set depending on the software.

## Software Setting (Network Setting)



You can set whether to go online when the selected software launches.

## 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Software setting ▶ Network set

Check every start .....You are asked to confirm going online each time i-αppli launches.

ON .....i-αppli launches without displaying the confirmation message.

OFF .....Displays the online-disabled message and then launches i-αppli.

## Software Setting (Icon Information)



You can set whether to enable i-αppli to use information of icons for the i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS), Messages R/F, battery level, Manner Mode and for service area/out of service area while i-αppli is running.

## 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Software setting ▶ Icon info

ON .....i-αppli uses icon information.

OFF .....i-αppli does not use icon information.

### Information

When you set “Software setting (Icon info)” to “ON”, icons for unread mail/message, battery level, Manner Mode, signal strength and out of area can be sent to your provider over the Internet, in the same way as your mobile phone information (FOMA phone model/serial number and UIM ID), and can be acquired by third parties.

## Software Setting (Change Melody/Image)



You can set whether to enable i-αppli to change the ring tone/image. The ring tone and image are changed automatically when “ON” is set.

This function is available for i-αppliDX only.

### 1 Software List > (FUNC) > Software setting > Change mld./img.

Check every change .....You are asked to confirm changes whenever i-αppli attempts to change settings for the ring tone and Stand-by display.

ON .....i-αppli can change the ring tone and Stand-by display.

OFF .....i-αppli cannot change the ring tone and Stand-by display.

## Software Setting (See Phonebook/History)



You can set whether to enable i-αppli to look up the Phonebook, Redial, and Received Call Record. The Phonebook, Redial, and Received Call Record can be looked up automatically when “ON” is set.

This function is available for i-αppliDX only.

### 1 Software List > (FUNC) > Software setting > See P.book/hist.

ON .....i-αppli can look up Phonebook entries, received call records, and redial items.

OFF .....i-αppli cannot look up Phonebook entries, received cal records, and redial items.

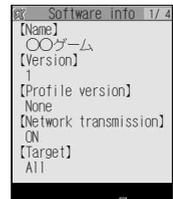
## Software Information



You can check the information of selected software.

### 1 Software List > (FUNC) > Software info

Use to scroll the display.



### Information

You cannot change the name of the i-αppli software displayed in “Software info”.



You can upgrade the version of the selected software.

## 1 Software List (FUNC) Upgrade YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If the software on the site has not been upgraded, the message "Software upgraded" is displayed.

For SSL pages, the message "Establishing SSL session (Authenticating)" is displayed.

### Information

When there is not enough memory, the message "Not enough memory Replace?" is displayed. For upgrading, delete unnecessary software and then do the upgrade.

At upgrading, the message "Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?" might appear.

Select "YES" and press ; upgrading will begin. In this case, your mobile phone information (serial number of your FOMA phone and ID number) is sent to the provider over the Internet, so could be accessed by third parties.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

At upgrading, a message appears to confirm whether to use of the stored data and mobile phone information.

Select "YES" and press ; upgrading will begin.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

While displaying an i-αppli mail folder corresponding to the mail-linked i-αppli to be upgraded, you cannot upgrade the i-αppli.

While the security is set for mail or i-αppli mail folder corresponding to the mail-linked i-αppli to be upgraded, you cannot upgrade the i-αppli.

While the security is set for mail, you cannot upgrade the mail-linked i-αppli whose mail folder name is changed.

If the software has been updated at launch, the upgrade can be done automatically.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can paste the selected software to the desktop.

Up to 12 icons can be pasted to the desktop, including those already pasted. (See page 201 of "Basics" manual)

## 1 Software List (FUNC) Add desktop icon YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Launching i-αppli from a desktop icon

1. From the Stand-by display, press .
2. Use to select the icon of the i-αppli to be launched, and press .  
You cannot use in Viewer style.



### Information

When the originally stored i-αppli has been deleted or overwritten, you cannot start it up from the icon.

See page 205 of "Basics" manual for how to delete the pasted icon.

## Delete This



You can delete a selected software program.

### 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES

A confirmation display appears for the software that has been set as the Stand-by display or set for auto start. Select "YES" and press (OK); the software program is deleted. To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).

## Delete Selected



You can delete the selected software programs.

### 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete selected ▶ Put check marks for the software programs to be deleted

"" and "" switch each time you press (OK).

.....Deletes.

.....Does not delete.

### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

A confirmation display appears for the software that has been set as the Stand-by display or set for auto start. Select "YES" and press (OK); the software programs are deleted. To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK).

## Delete All



You can delete all software programs.

### 1 Software List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ (OK) ▶ YES

A confirmation display appears for the software has been set as the Stand-by display or set for auto start. Select "YES" and press (OK); the software is deleted. To cancel, select "NO" and press (OK). See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Deleting mail-linked i-αppli

When deleting mail-linked i-αppli, you can choose whether to delete the automatically created i-αppli mail folders. If just the folders are left, you can check the text of mail from the Inbox/Outbox List.

1. Do the operation for "Delete this", "Delete selected" or "Delete all".

YES .....Deletes the i-αppli mail folder corresponding to the deleted software.

NO .....Does not delete the i-αppli mail folder; deletes the software only.

Cancel .....Does not delete both the software and i-αppli mail folder; the previous display will return.

#### Information

When the i-αppli mail folder contains protected mail, even if you select "YES", you cannot delete either the software or the folder.

You cannot delete the i-αppli mail folder in the following cases:

- While displaying details of the folder
- While Mail Security is set
- When the folder is set with security
- When the folder contains protected mail



For delete this

# Starting i-αppli Automatically

You can have i-αppli launch automatically at a set time. You can set the time for automatic start using Automatic Start Time.

## Automatic Start Setting



Setting at purchase  
OFF

You can set whether to enable automatic start of i-αppli.

### 1 Auto start set

ON ..... Enables automatic start of i-αppli.

OFF ..... Disables automatic start of i-αppli.

## Automatic Start Time



You can set how the selected software starts.

### 1 Software List (FUNC) Auto start time

### 2 Put the check marks for the items to be set (Finish)

and  switch each time you press .

..... Starts.

..... Does not start.

Time interval set ..... For starting at an interval specified by the software.

Start time set ..... For setting the automatic start time.

If you have selected "Start time set", go to step 3.

### 3 Select start time Enter the time and date to be set

Use to move the cursor and use the keypad to enter numbers.

Enter the western calendar year.

Enter the time on 24-hour basis.

### 4 1 time

1 time ..... The setting is for no repetitions (once only).

Daily ..... The software starts every day.

Weekly ..... The software starts on the specified day/s of the week. Go to step 5.

### 5 Put the check marks for the day/s of the week to be set (Finish)

and  switch each time you press .

..... Starts.

..... Does not start.

Select at least one day.



You can check whether software has started automatically and properly.

1



i-αappli info ▶ Auto start info

- Start .....Started automatically.
- Start x .....Did not start automatically.
- Start – .....Has not started yet.



<Auto Start Info display>

### Information

Software does not start automatically in the following cases:

- The FOMA phone is switched off.
- The clock is not set.
- Another task is running.
- You are on the phone.
- During All Lock or PIM Lock.
- The time set for automatic start is identical to the time set for “Software update”, or an alarm of “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “ToDo”.

If automatic start fails, “ Not run ” appears on the desktop; when you select this icon, the message “Not run soft” is displayed. Select the icon and press  to bring up the Auto Start Info display.

The failure of automatic start, which occurs during i-mode or when another software is running, is also recorded.

# Operating i-αpli Stand-by Display

## Software Setting (Stand-by Setting)



You can set some software as the Stand-by display.

Once set, the i-αpli Stand-by display automatically appears each time you bring up the Stand-by display.

### 1 Software List (FUNC) Software setting

"" appears for the software set as the Stand-by display.

You can also bring up the Software list by pressing and holding for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

### 2 Stand-by set

ON .....Sets the i-αpli Stand-by display.

OFF .....Cancels the i-αpli Stand-by display.

"" or "" is displayed while an i-αpli Stand-by display is running.

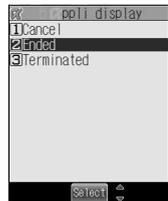
To cancel starting the software up, select "Cancel" and press

#### While an i-αpli Stand-by display is running, you can operate it as a normal i-αpli.

From the i-αpli Stand-by display, press .

"" or "" changes to a blinking "" or "" and you can operate the i-αpli normally.

To return to the i-αpli Stand-by display, press and hold for at least one second; you can also press , select "Ended" and press . To cancel the i-αpli Stand-by display, select "Terminated", press , select "YES" and then press .



#### Information

With some software programs set as the i-αpli Stand-by display, you can press a key to go from the normal i-αpli status to the i-αpli Stand-by display status. However, you cannot return to the i-αpli Stand-by display if other menu functions are operating.

## Information

If you switch the FOMA phone off while the i-αppli Stand-by display is running, a message will come up to confirm launching i-αppli when you switch the power on again. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

You can only set one software program for the i-αppli Stand-by display.

Some i-αppli cannot be set as the Stand-by display.

Note that you might not be able to receive timely information if you have set "Software setting (Stand-by net)" to "OFF". If the software set for the i-αppli Stand-by display connects to the network, it might not operate successfully because of signal conditions.

When the i-αppli Stand-by display is activated, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" (see page 187 of "Basics" manual) will not be displayed.

When you bring up a Stand-by display while a menu function is operating, the image set for "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" (see page 187 of "Basics" manual) will appear, even when the i-αppli Stand-by display is set.

You cannot use the Web To function from the i-αppli Stand-by display.

If you set All Lock or PIM Lock while an i-αppli Stand-by display is running, the i-αppli Stand-by display will end. If you set All Lock, the display set in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" will come up and if you set PIM Lock, the Stand-by display at purchase will come up. The i-αppli Stand-by display will return when you cancel All Lock or PIM Lock.

## Software Setting (Stand-by Network)



You can select whether to connect the network when the selected software is set as the Stand-by display.

### 1 Software List (FUNC) Software setting Stand-by net

ON ..... Enables connection to the network during i-αppli Stand-by display.

OFF ..... Disables connection to the network during i-αppli Stand-by display.

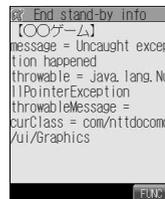


When the i-αpli Stand-by display does not end successfully, you can check the time and reason.

# 1



i-αpli info ▶ End stand-by info



<End Stand-by Info display>

## Copying or deleting information

You can copy or delete information when “FUNC” appears in the End Stand-by Info display.

Copying information

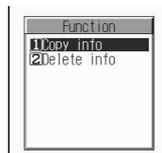
1. From the End Stand-by Info display, press (FUNC).
2. Select “Copy info” and press .

The end information is copied.

Deleting information

1. From the End Stand-by Info display, press (FUNC).
2. Select “Delete info” and press .
3. Select “YES” and press .

The end information is deleted.



### Information

When the i-αpli Stand-by display ends successfully (normal end), it is not recorded.

# Setting Lights and Vibrators for when Running i-αppli

## αDisplay Light



Setting at purchase  
Depend on system

You can set the display light operation for when an i-αppli is running.

1

  **i-αppli settings** ▶ **αDisplay light**

Depend on system .....Same as "Display light". (See page 195 of "Basics" manual)

Depend on software .....Same as software's setting.

## αVibrator



Setting at purchase  
Depend on system

You can set the vibrator operation for when an i-αppli is running.

1

  **i-αppli settings** ▶ **αVibrator**

Depend on system .....Does not work regardless of the setting of "Vibrator" (see page 153 of "Basics" manual).

Depend on software .....Same as software's setting.

### Information

With some software, the display light and vibrator settings are "OFF". Consequently, if you set "Depend on software", the display light and vibrator will not work; if you want them to work, set "Depend on system".

## <Chara-den>

### What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is an animation character representing yourself. You can send it as your image during video-phone calls.

You can use the Chara-den Player to play back Chara-den and can shoot it.

#### Chara-dens stored at the time of purchase



<クラウド (Cloud)>



<ティファ (Tifa)>



<エアリス (Aerith)>

#### Operations of pre-installed Chara-den

Key operation	クラウド (Cloud)	ティファ・エアリス (Tifa/Aerith)	Key operation	クラウド (Cloud)	ティファ・エアリス (Tifa/Aerith)
1	手を振る (Waves hand)	手を振る (Waves hand)	6	うなづく (Nods)	うなづく (Nods)
2	笑う (Laughs)	笑う (Laughs)	7	首を振る (Shakes head)	首を振る (Shakes head)
3	悲しむ (Grieves)	悲しむ (Grieves)	8	拍手する (Claps hands)	拍手する (Claps hands)
4	髪をかきあげる (Runs hands through hair)	喜ぶ (Delighted)	9	驚く (Surprised)	慌てる (Confused)
5	怒る (Gets angry)	怒る (Gets angry)			

There is no parts action in the pre-installed Chara-den.

You can delete these Chara-dens. You can also re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site.

## <Download Chara-den>



### Downloading Chara-den

You can download Chara-den from sites and save them to the FOMA phone.

You can store from 5 to 10 downloaded Chara-den. (Depending on the volume of the data, the storable number varies.)

#### 1 Bring up a site from which you can download Chara-den

▶ Select the Chara-den you want to save ▶ ▶ Save

Select "Play" and press to play back the Chara-den.



<Download Completion display>

#### 2 YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Function menu

While the download-completion display is displayed, press  () to display the following item.

Screen memo p.64

This item might not be available depending on the operation.

## <Chara-den Player>



### Displaying Chara-den

# 1

  **Chara-den**  **Select the Chara-den you want to display** 

The selected Chara-den is displayed.

See page 110 for how to operate Chara-den.



<Chara-den display>

Chara-den

Download Chara-den  
Chara-den Player

### Function menu

While a Chara-den display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Rec. chara-den	p.113
Substitute image	p.112
Add desktop icon	p.116
Action list	p.111
Change action	p.111
File property	p.116
Set image disp.	p.116

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



## Operating Chara-den

You can operate Chara-den by pressing keys or by simply speaking into the mouthpiece. Use the “Action List” to check the actions that you can operate.

Key operation	Details
~	Whole action (Whole action mode)
~	
~	Parts action (Parts action mode)
	Pauses action midway.
	Pauses entered action.
	Displays the “Action List”.
	Switches to Action Mode.

Example: When the “手を振る (Waves hand)” action is set for .



### Information

The pre-installed Chara-dens enable you to operate nine types of whole actions. Parts action is not installed. The number of actions you can operate differs depending on the Chara-den.

## Switch Chara-den

You can switch the displayed Chara-den.

During Video-phone Calls



- During a video-phone call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup  
▶ Switch chara-den ▶ Select the Chara-den to be displayed ▶

Chara-den Recording Display (See page 113)



- Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Switch chara-den  
▶ Select the Chara-den to be displayed ▶

### Information

When you switch Chara-den, the action mode becomes “Whole Action Mode”.

## Action List

You can display the list of actions that you can operate.

During Video-phone Calls



**1** During a video-phone call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Action list

Select the action and press to execute it.

You can also display Action List by pressing .

Chara-den Display/Chara-den Recording Display



**1** Chara-den display/Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Action list

Select the action and press to execute it.

You can also display Action List by pressing .

## Change Action

Setting at purchase  
Whole Action Mode

You can switch the action between whole action mode and parts action mode.

Whole action mode makes an animation character “laugh” or “weep” expressing his or her sentiment by whole aspect.

Parts action mode makes the animation character “raise right hand” expressing his or her sentiment by part aspect.



(Whole Action Mode)  
 (Parts Action Mode)

During Video-phone Calls



**1** During a video-phone call ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Chara-den setup ▶ Change action

The action modes switch between parts action and whole action.

You can also switch modes by pressing .

Chara-den Display/Chara-den Recording Display



**1** Chara-den display/Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Change action

The action modes switch between parts action and whole action.

You can also switch modes by pressing in Normal style.



## Making a Video-phone Call Using Chara-den

You can make video-phone calls using a Chara-den as the substitute image.

You need to set “Camera image sending” to “OFF”. (See page 102 of “Basics” manual)

- 1 Chara-den Select the Chara-den to be displayed (FUNC) Substitute image

The Chara-den is set as the substitute image for video-phone calls.

- 2 Press to return to the Stand-by display.

- 3 Enter the destination phone number You can speak when the other party answers

The Chara-den selected in step 1 appears instead of your own photo image.

See page 85 of “Basics” manual for how to operate the video-phone.



- 4 To end the call, press .

### Substitute Image



Setting at purchase  
クラウド (Cloud)

You can set the selected Chara-den as the substitute image for video-phone calls.

If you have set a substitute image for Chara-den, you can make or receive video-phone calls with the Chara-den substitute image.

- 1 Chara-den display/Chara-den List/Chara-den Recording display (FUNC) Substitute image

### Information

The “Fixed” substitute image will be sent in the following cases:

- The Chara-den set for the substitute image has been deleted.
- During PIM Lock



# Recording Chara-den

You can record Chara-den.

1



Chara-den ▶ Select the Chara-den to be recorded ▶ (Info) (FUNC) ▶ Rec. chara-den

You can select a Chara-den from the Function menu of the Chara-den List.



<Chara-den Recording display>

### Function menu

While the Chara-den Recording display is displayed, press (Info) (FUNC) to display the following items.

Switch chara-den	p.110
Substitute image	p.112
Action list	p.111
Change action	p.111
Set image disp.	p.116
Recording size	p.114
Recording type	p.114
Recording Qlty	p.114

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Taking Still Images



The still images you have taken will be stored in the “Chara-den image” folder. (See page 318)

1

Chara-den Recording display ▶ Press (Up) several times to switch to the Snap shot Mode.



Snap icon

2

Press (Shutter).

A still image of the displayed Chara-den is taken.  
Next, go to step 4 on page 275.

### Information

In Manner Mode, the shutter tone does not sound.

## Recording Moving Images



The recorded moving images will be saved to the “Chara-den video” folder (see page 356).

**1** Chara-den Recording display ▶ Press several times to switch to the Moving image shot mode.



Recording icon

**2** Press .

Recording of the displayed Chara-den begins.  
Next, go to step 4 on page 282.

### Information

The image size is fixed to QCIF (176 x 144).  
The operating sound may be picked up.  
In Manner Mode, the recording start tone does not sound.  
When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone set with switch is connected, the voice is recorded via the Earphone.

## Recording Size



Setting at purchase  
QCIF (176x144)

You can set the size of the images for when saving Chara-den image after recording it in the Snap shot mode.

**1** Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Recording size

QCIF (176 x 144) .....Records Chara-den at 176 x 144 dots.  
Small (117 x 96) .....Records Chara-den at 117 x 96 dots.

## Recording Type



Setting at purchase  
Video + voice

You can set image and sound for when recording and saving Chara-den.  
You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

**1** Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Recording type

Video + voice .....Records both images and sound.  
Video .....Records images only.

## Recording Quality



Setting at purchase  
Normal

You can set the quality for saving Chara-den.  
You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

**1** Chara-den Recording display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Recording Qlty

For long recording .....Lower quality but longer recording time.  
Normal .....Standard quality.  
For high quality .....Higher quality but shorter recording time.



## Displaying Chara-den List

You can display the list of Chara-den stored in the FOMA phone.

1



Chara-den



<Chara-den List>

### Function menu

While the Chara-den List is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Rec. chara-den	p.113
Substitute image	p.112
Edit title	See this page
File property	p.116
Memory info	p.116
Add desktop icon	p.116
Delete	p.117
Delete all	p.117
Multiple-choice	p.117
Set image disp.	p.116
Reset title	p.117

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Edit Title



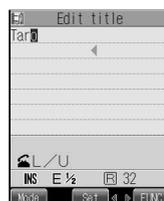
You can edit the title of the selected Chara-den.

1

Chara-den List (FUNC) Edit title Enter the title

You can enter the title in up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## File Property



You can display information about the selected Chara-den.

### 1 Chara-den List/Chara-den display > (FUNC) > File property

Use to scroll the display for confirmation.

After checking, press .

You cannot use in Viewer style.



#### Information

"Rec. file restriction" describes whether the operation such as attaching still images/moving images created by Chara-den to mail, saving them to miniSD memory card, or editing them, is restricted or not.

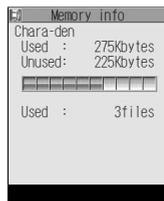
## Memory Information



You can check how much memory is used or unused for Chara-den.

### 1 Chara-den List > (FUNC) > Memory info

After checking, press .



#### Information

Displayed memory capacity is an estimate.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can paste the selected Chara-den as a desktop icon.

### 1 Chara-den List/Chara-den display > (FUNC) > Add desktop icon > YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

If you delete the original Chara-den, the pasted icon remains but the Chara-den is not displayable.

See page 205 of "Basics" manual to delete pasted icons.

## Set Image Display



Setting at purchase  
Fit in display

You can set the method of displaying Chara-den.

### 1 Chara-den Recording display/Chara-den display/Chara-den List > (FUNC) > Set image disp.

Actual size .....Displays in actual size.

Fit in display .....Fits in the size of the FOMA phone's display.

## Reset Title



You can reset the title of the selected Chara-den. When you reset the title that has been changed, it reverts to the original title.

### 1 Chara-den List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Reset title ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

## Deleting Chara-den

### Delete



You can delete a selected Chara-den.

### 1 Chara-den List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

### Delete All



You can delete all the Chara-den items in the Chara-den List.

### 1 Chara-den List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

Note that this operation also deletes the Chara-den items pre-installed when you purchased the FOMA phone.

## Multiple-choice



You can delete selected Chara-den items in the Chara-den List.

### 1 Chara-den List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Multiple-choice

#### ▶ Select the files to be deleted ▶

You can move the cursor to confirm that the files have been selected.

Keep pressing to scroll continuously.

If you select a file that you have already selected and then press , the selection is released.



### 2 (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press

#### Information

If you delete the Chara-den set for the video-phone substitute image, the "Fixed" image will become the substitute image.

## <Download i-motion>

# Downloading i-motion

You can download i-motion (image and sound data) from sites.

There are different types of i-motion as shown below. The type of i-motion is predetermined and not selectable.

Categories		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard type (can be saved )	Plays back after downloading (up to 300 Kbytes)	Plays back after all i-motion data is downloaded.
	Plays back while downloading (up to 300 Kbytes)	Plays back while downloading i-motion data. You can also play it back after downloading.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while downloading (up to 2 Mbytes)	Plays back while i-motion data is being downloaded. When playback completes the data is deleted so you cannot play back again or save in the FOMA phone.

Some i-motion items cannot be saved.

## Playing i-motion Downloaded from a Site



### 1 From a site that supports the downloading of i-motion, select the i-motion to be downloaded ▶ ▶ Play

For operating during playback, see page 358.

If "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the i-motion will be played back automatically after it is downloaded.

If you select an i-motion that can be played back during downloading, that i-motion will be played back during downloading.



<Download Completion display>

### Information

Depending on the type of server and i-motion, you might not be able to download the data or play it back during downloading.

Even when you stop playing back the data of Standard type i-motion while downloading, downloading still continues.

Even when "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the data is not automatically played back after downloading if it is played back while downloading.

If "Automatic replay" is set to "OFF", the i-motion will not play back automatically after it is downloaded, and instead the download-completion display appears.

If an i-motion has restrictions for the number of playbacks, playback period, or playback expiry date, "⌚" will be displayed before the title. i-motion with playback period restrictions cannot be played back prior to or after the restriction period. Further, if you keep the battery detached for a lengthy period, the clock in your FOMA phone might be reset. If this happens, you will not be able to play back i-motion that have playback period and playback expiry restrictions. Some i-motion will not be played back successfully even when the data has been downloaded.

Because of the speed and quality of the connection or the signal status, playback might be interrupted while the data is downloading, or it might be erratic. i-motion of standard type can be played back repeatedly after downloading, but i-motion of streaming type cannot be played back.

You cannot download i-motion in ASF format.



You can save downloaded i-motion to your FOMA phone. You can use the i-motion Player to play back saved i-motion and view information.

i-motion is saved to the “i-mode” folder (see page 356), and up to 50 items can be saved. (The maximum number of i-motion that can be saved depends on the volume of the i-motion data.)

### **1** Download Completion display ▶ Save ▶ YES

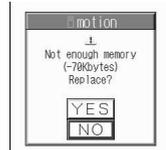
To cancel, select “NO” and press .

#### **When i-motion files are stored to the maximum**

When the maximum number of i-motion files is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary i-motion files and then save new ones.

1. Select “YES” and press .
  2. Change the i-motion to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press  to switch to the gray display.
  3. Press  (Finish).  
You cannot use  in Viewer style.
  4. Select “YES” and press .
- To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Insufficient memory

#### Information

Untitled i-motion files are indicated by “movie” in the i-motion List.

Depending on the i-motion, you might not be able to save the downloaded data in the FOMA phone.

You can set downloaded i-motion as the Stand-by display (see page 187 of “Basics” manual). However, some i-motion cannot be set as the Stand-by display.

You cannot use the Web To, Mail To nor Phone To function from an i-motion file set as the Stand-by display.

## Property



You can display the property of downloaded i-motion. You can check the title, playback restrictions, and so forth.

### 1 Download Completion display ▶ Property

Press after checking.



For i-motion

## When a Link is Set in a Ticker



When a ticker has been set in an i-motion, it is displayed during playback.

When the ticker contains the underscored phone number, mail address, or URL, you can execute the Phone To, Mail To, or Web To function (see page 72) after playback.

Example: Connecting to a URL in a ticker

### 1 Playback End display ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



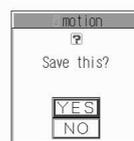
<Playback End display>

#### If i-motion has not been saved

If the Web To function is executed while an i-motion file has not been saved yet, the display on the right appears and you can save it.

1. Select "YES" and press .

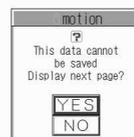
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



When an i-motion cannot be saved, the display on the right appears.

1. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



#### Function menu

While the Download Completion display is displayed, press ( ) to display the following item.

Screen memo

p.64

This item might not be available depending on the operation.



# Setting whether to Play i-motion Automatically

Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set whether to play back i-motion automatically, for when you have downloaded a standard (normal) type i-motion from a site or have selected a standard (normal) type i-motion saved as a screen memo in the Screen Memo List.

## 1 i-mode settings ▶ i-motion setting ▶ Automatic replay

- ON .....Plays back the i-motion automatically.
- OFF .....Plays back the i-motion manually.

### Information

When the setting is "OFF" and you have downloaded a standard (normal) type i-motion from a site or have selected a standard (normal) type i-motion from the Screen Memo List, the i-motion will not play back automatically; instead the download-completion display will come up.

Note that streaming type i-motion is played back automatically even when the setting is "OFF".



# Setting Download Type for i-motion

Setting at purchase  
Normal type

You can set whether to download standard (normal) type i-motion only or to download both standard (normal) and streaming types. See page 118 for the type of i-motion.

## 1 i-mode settings ▶ i-motion setting ▶ i-motion type

- Normal type .....Downloads standard (normal) type i-motion only.
  - Norm · Streaming type .....Downloads both standard (normal) and streaming type i-motion.
- While a site is displayed, press ( ) and select "i-motion type".

### Information

To download streaming type of i-motion, you need to set "i-motion type" to "Norm·Streaming type". Otherwise, the message "Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay" will be displayed, and you will not be able to download the streaming type of i-motion.

## <Message R/F Receiving>

### Receiving Messages R/F Automatically

Message services automatically deliver information you want to your FOMA phone.

You can save up to 100 each of received Messages R/F.

You can receive Messages R/F held at the i-mode center by executing “Check new message” (see page 182).

You can use “Select ring tone” (see page 179 of “Basics” manual) to set the ring tone for when you receive a Message R/F, and you can use “Illumination” (see page 170 of “Basics” manual) to set the flickering pattern of the Call/Charging Indicator for when you receive a Message R/F.

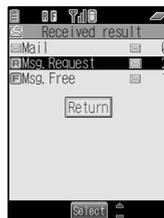
- 1 When you receive a Message R/F, “ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” blinks and the message “Msg. Request Receiving...” or “Msg. Free Receiving...” appears.



After the message is received, the number of received mail and Messages R/F is displayed.

You can display the Message R/F List by selecting “Msg. Request” or “Msg. Free” and pressing .

If “Message auto display” is set to other than “OFF”, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed automatically.



The former display returns if you do not perform any operation for 15 seconds. (The number of seconds can vary depending on the setting for “i-mode ringing time”.)



When former display was Stand-by display

#### Setting Message F (Free)

After selecting iMenu オプション設定 (Options) メッセージ[F]設定 (Msg. Free setting) 受信する (Receive), then enter your i-mode password (four digits) and select “決定 (OK)”.

## Information

You can use "Message auto display" to set Message R/F to be displayed automatically. Select "OFF" if you do not want them to be displayed automatically.

When new Message R/F is delivered, other Messages R/F and i-mode mail that have been held at the center will also be delivered.

Messages R/F are not displayed automatically while the Stand-by display is not shown, while i-appli is running, or during Drive Mode, All Lock, or PIM Lock.

When the FOMA phone cannot receive any more Messages R/F, "R" (gray) or "F" (gray)" is displayed. Read unread Messages R/F or release protection.

When "R" (yellow)" or "F" (yellow)" is displayed, the i-mode center keeps Messages R/F. Read unread Messages R/F or release protection, and then perform "Check new message".

When "R" (gray)" or "F" (gray)" is displayed, the i-mode center can hold no more Messages R/F. Perform "Check new message" to receive them.

The i-mode center can hold Messages R/F for three days (72 hours). However, when it stores the maximum number of messages (300 Messages R and 300 Messages F), the oldest messages held at the center will be deleted to make way for the newest ones.

After being displayed automatically, Messages R/F are still displayed as unread ones in the Message R/F List.

However, if you scroll through the messages while they are being displayed automatically, they will be indicated in the Message R/F List as read.

When multiple i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS), and Messages (R/F) are received at the same time, the ring tone set for i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS), or Messages (R/F) that has been received in the last will sound and the illumination flickers.

If you receive a message R/F when "Receiving display" is set to "Operation preferred" with other than the Stand-by display, the ring tone does not sound. When "Alarm preferred" is set, the ring tone sounds and the Received Result display appears. (See page 252)

If you receive a Message R/F when the FOMA phone is closed, this information is displayed in the Private Window.

If you receive a Message R/F while playing back an i-motion, the images and sound might be interrupted.



## Message Auto Display



Setting at purchase  
Msg. Req. preferred

You can set how to auto-display messages R/F received during standby.

### 1 i-mode settings ▶ Message auto display

- Msg. Req. preferred .....Message Request have priority for automatic display.
- Msg. Free preferred .....Message Free have priority for automatic display.
- Msg. Request only .....Only Message Request are displayed automatically.
- Msg. Free only .....Only Message Free are displayed automatically.
- OFF .....Message R/F are not displayed automatically.

## Auto Melody Play



Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set whether to play back pasted or attached melodies automatically for when you open a Message R/F.

### 1 i-mode settings ▶ Auto melody play

- ON .....Automatically plays back pasted or attached melodies when Messages R/F are opened.
- OFF .....Does not automatically play back pasted or attached melodies when Messages R/F are opened.

## Pasted Melody/Message



Setting at purchase  
Valid

You can set whether to validate (enable you to play back and store) the melodies pasted in Messages R/F.

### 1 i-mode settings ▶ Pasted melody/Msg.

- Valid .....Melodies can be played back and stored.
- Invalid .....Melodies cannot be played back.



# Reading Received Messages R/F

When your FOMA phone is in the service area, it receives Messages R/F automatically from the i-mode center.

“ (yellow)” or “ (yellow)” appears at the top of the display when a Message R/F is delivered.

## 1 Message

Msg. Request .....Displays Messages Request List.

Msg. Free .....Displays Messages Free List.

## 2 Select the Message R/F you want to display

When you select an unread Message R/F, “” changes to “”.

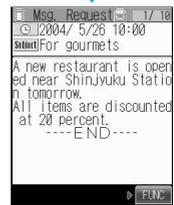
When the Message R/F List contains six or more messages, press to display the next or previous five messages.



<Message R/F List>

Use to check other Messages R/F.

If the Message R/F is long, use to scroll it. Press or to scroll by page.



<Message R/F detailed display>



### 1 Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second Use to select

You can also bring up the “i-mode menu” display by pressing (機能 / メニュー) from Stand-by display.

### 2 Use to select “Message”

### 3 Use to select “Msg. Request” or “Msg. Free”

### 4 Use to select the Message R/F you want to display

#### Display Light

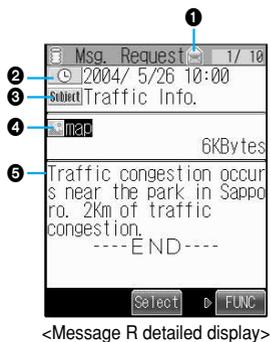
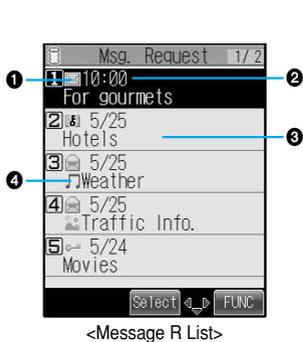
The display light lights for about 15 seconds when you open the FOMA phone, press a key, or receive a Message R/F. However, when you display the text of a Message R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the message. (The display light does not light when “Lighting” of “Display light” (see page 195 of “Basics” manual) is set to “OFF.”)

#### Information

“OK” and “Cancel” might be displayed in Messages R/F. If so, follow the same operations as for sites (see page 49).

## Message R/F List and Message R/F detailed displays

The Message R/F List and Message R/F detailed display are structured as below.



### 1 Status of Message R/F

- : Unread Message R/F
- : Read Message R/F
- : Unread and protected Message R/F
- : Read and protected Message R/F

### 2 Date and time received

The list shows the time for the Message R/F received today, and shows the date for the Message received on earlier days.

The detailed display shows the date and time the Message R/F was received.

### 3 Subject

#### ④ Appears when a melody or image has been attached or pasted.

Appears even when the attached or pasted data is invalid.

The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached or pasted data.

##### <For Message R/F List or Message R/F detailed display>

: A melody is attached or pasted. (Detailed display is only for an attached melody.)

: A melody is pasted. (Detailed display only)

: Multiple melodies are attached or pasted, and some of them are invalid. (List only)

: All attached or pasted melodies are invalid.

: An image is attached.

: Multiple images are attached, and some of them are invalid. (List only)

: All attached images are invalid.

: Multiple data items are attached.

#### ⑤ Text of message

##### Information

If the clock of the FOMA phone is not set, the time and date are displayed as "--:--" and "--/--".

## Function menu

While the Message R/F List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Display all	See this page
Sort	See this page
Filter	p.129
Protect ON/OFF	p.129
Unprotect all	p.129
No. of messages	p.130
Delete this	p.130
Delete selected	p.130
Delete read	p.131
Delete all	p.131

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Display All



You can re-display all Messages R/F after using the Sort or Filter function. The Sort or Filter function will be released and all messages will be displayed in “Chronological” order.

**1** Message R/F List  ( **FUNC** )  Display all

## Sort



You can rearrange the order in which Messages R/F are displayed in the Message R/F List.

**1** Message R/F List  ( **FUNC** )  Sort

Chronological .....Sorts by date and time from the most recent.

Chronological .....Sorts by date and time from the oldest.

### Information

You can use the Filter and Sort functions together. For example, to display only unread Messages R/F from the oldest ones, select the Filter’s “Unread” option, and then select “Chronological”. (To set back to the former status, select “Display all”).

After displaying a sorted Message R/F List, you can return to the full display List by closing the List and re-opening it, or you can execute “Display all”.

## Filter



You can change the type of Message R/F displayed in the Message R/F List.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) Filter

- Unread .....Displays only unread Messages R/F.
- Read .....Displays only read Messages R/F.
- Protected .....Displays only protected Messages R/F.
- Melody .....Displays only Messages R/F attached with melodies.
- Image .....Displays only Messages R/F attached with images.

#### Information

After displaying a filtered Message R/F List, you can return to the full display List by closing the List and re-opening it, or you can execute "Display all".

## Protect ON/OFF



You can protect Messages R/F from being overwritten.

You can release protection of already protected Messages R/F.

You can protect up to 50 messages (50 messages for Message Request and Message Free each).

### 1 Message R/F List or the Message R/F detailed display

(FUNC) Protect ON/OFF

Protected messages are indicated by "🔒" or "🔒".



#### Information

When the number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone reaches the maximum, new Messages R/F will overwrite the read, unprotected ones, starting from the oldest messages.

## Unprotect All



You can release protection for all protected Messages R/F.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) Unprotect all YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Number of Messages



You can check the total number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone, as well as the number of unread messages and protected messages.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) ▶ No. of messages

All .....Total received Messages R/F.

Unread .....Number of unread Messages R/F.

Protected .....Number of protected Messages R/F.

After checking, press .

## Delete This



You can delete a selected Message R/F.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

This function also deletes unread Messages R/F.

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F. Release protection and then delete.

## Delete Selected



You can delete selected Messages R/F.

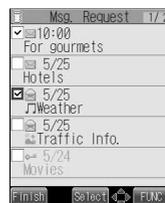
### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) ▶ Delete selected ▶ Put check marks for the Messages R/F to be deleted

and  switch each time you press .

.....Deletes.

.....Does not delete.

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing (FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all".



### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F. Release protection and then delete.

## Delete Read



You can delete Messages R/F you have already read.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) Delete read YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

Unprotected and read messages are all deleted.

When only the Messages R/F filtered by the filter function (see page 129) are displayed, only the unprotected read Messages R/F displayed in the list are deleted if you execute "Delete read".

## Delete All



You can delete all Messages R/F stored in the FOMA phone.

### 1 Message R/F List (FUNC) Delete all Enter the Terminal Security Code YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

This function also deletes unread Messages R/F.

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F. Release protection and then delete.

When you display only the Messages R/F specified by the Filter function (see page 129), all the unprotected Messages R/F in the displayed list will be deleted by "Delete all".

#### Function menu

While the Message R/F detailed display is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Add to phonebook	p.132
Save melody	p.132
Save image	p.133
Reload image	p.134
Protect ON/OFF	p.129
Delete	p.134

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



When there are mail addresses or phone numbers in the text of Messages R/F, you can save them to the Phonebook.

## 1 Message R/F detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add to phonebook

▶ YES

Phone.....Saves mail addresses or phone numbers to the FOMA phone.

UIM.....Saves mail addresses or phone numbers to the UIM.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## 2 New/Add

New.....Saves the data to a new Phonebook entry.

Add .....Saves the data to an existing Phonebook entry.

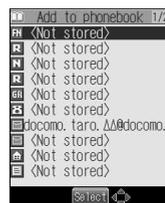
When you select to save the data to the UIM's Phonebook, the message

" Overwrite" appears.

When information such as name, reading and mail address is attached to the phone number, that information is entered as well. Enter any other necessary items and store the Phonebook entry.

See pages 122 to 128 of "Basics" manual for how to store items in the Phonebook.

See page 132 of "Basics" manual for "Add".



For "New"

### Information

You cannot add items to the Phonebook during "PIM Lock" (see page 218 of "Basics" manual) or "Keypad Dial Lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual) or if any a phone number has been specified for "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual).

When characters (pictographs) that cannot be stored in the Phonebook are contained, those characters may be converted to spaces.

You might store phone numbers or mail addresses to the Phonebook using highlighted information other than phone numbers or mail addresses.

## Save Melody



You can save melodies attached or pasted to Messages R/F as "Original tone". You can set saved melodies as ring tones.

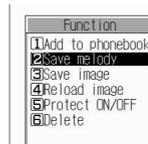
## 1 Message R/F detailed display ▶ Select the melody

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save melody ▶ YES

Next, perform step 3 on page 70 to set saved melodies as ring tones.

When multiple melodies are attached, use to select the melody to save and then save it.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Information

You can play an attached melody by highlighting it and pressing .

You cannot play melodies during a call.

The file names of attached melodies are not saved. When the titles are not set, the file names of attached melodies are saved.

Sometimes saved melodies cannot be played back successfully.



You can save an image attached to Messages R/F to the “i-mode” folder (see page 318). Then you can use “Display setting” (see page 187 of “Basics” manual) to set it as the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.

**1** Message R/F detailed display ▶ Select the image ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save image  
▶ Select image ▶

**2** YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

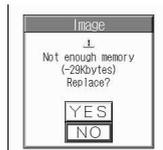
See page 187 of “Basics” manual for how to set the image as a Stand-by display.

#### When images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of images is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary images and then save new ones.

1. Select “YES” and press .
  2. Change the image to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press to switch to the gray display.
  3. Press (Finish).  
You cannot use in Viewer style.
  4. Select “YES” and press .
- To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Insufficient memory

#### Information

You cannot save images when “Image display” is set to “OFF”.

## Reload Image



When “” is displayed instead of an image in the text of a Message R/F, you can reload the image to view it.

**1** Message R/F detailed display  ( **FUNC** )  Reload image

### Information

Sometimes the image cannot be displayed even after reloading.

## Delete



You can delete a displayed Message R/F.

**1** Message R/F detailed display  ( **FUNC** )  Delete  YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

### Information

You cannot delete protected Messages R/F. Release protection and then delete.



# Mail

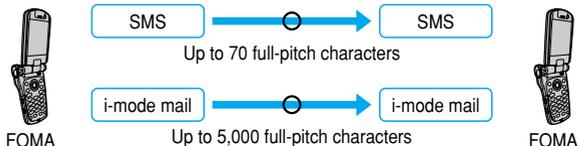
# Mail Functions of FOMA Phone

The FOMA phone has mail functions for sending and receiving i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS). You need to subscribe to i-mode to be able to use i-mode mail.

## Sending and Receiving of Mail Function

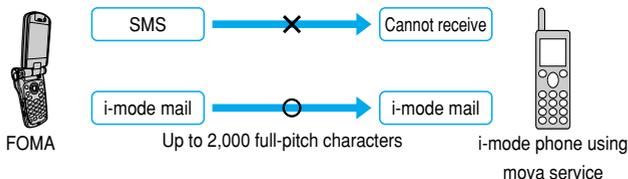
### FOMA phone FOMA phone

Short Messages (SMS) can be exchanged between FOMA phones only.



### FOMA phone i-mode phone using mova service

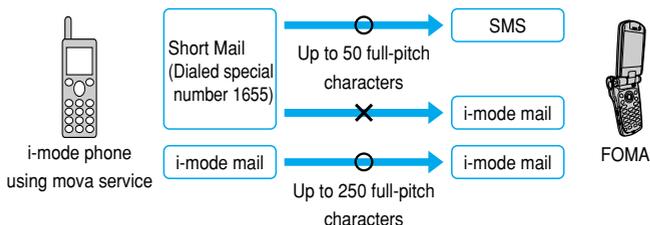
The i-mode mail service is used for sending messages from the FOMA phone to i-mode phones using the mova service.



Varies according to the settings of the i-mode phone using the mova service.

### i-mode phone using mova service FOMA phone

Short Mail sent from i-mode phones using the mova service is received as Short Messages (SMS) by the FOMA phone.



The Short Mail service enables text messages to be exchanged between DoCoMo mobile phones.

- You cannot send Short Mail from the FOMA phone, even when you use the special number 1655.
- When Short Mail is sent from i-mode phones using the mova service, the FOMA phone receives it as a Short Message (SMS).

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mail over the Internet as well as with other i-mode phones (including the mova).

For how to send and receive i-mode mail, see pages 150, 178.

When you first subscribe to the i-mode service, your mail address is as below.

### If you have subscribed to i-mode newly

The alphanumeric before the “@” mark are a random combination, check your address after signing up for the i-mode service.

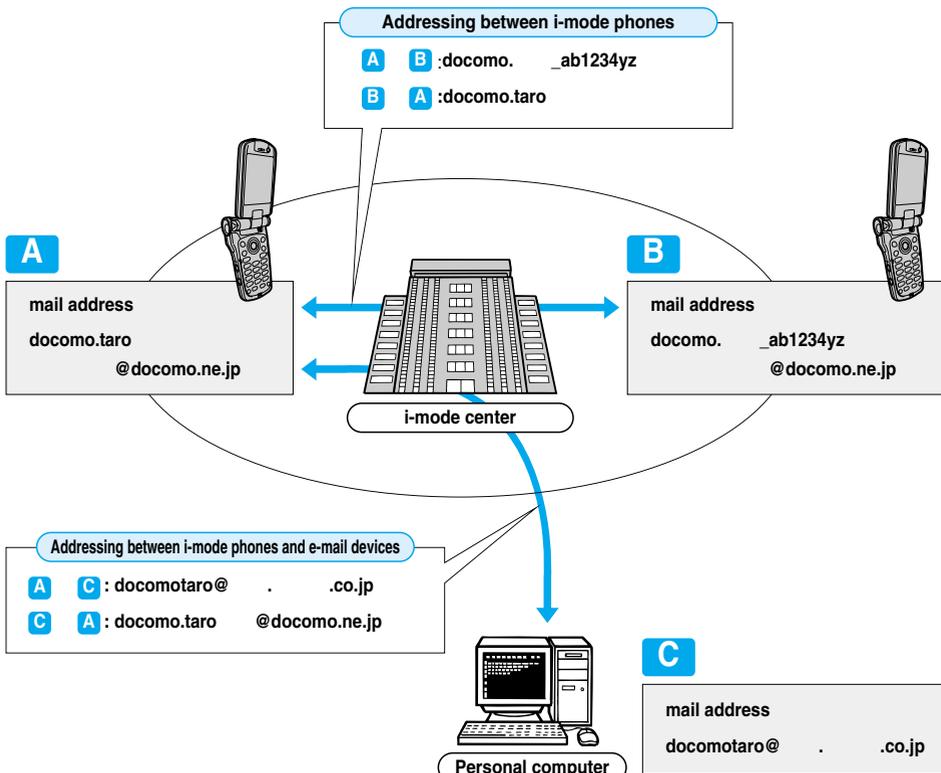
<Example> abc1234 ~ 789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<How to check your mail address> For details, see page 200:

iMenu display English  Options  Mail Settings Confirm Mail Address.

When exchanging e-mail with other i-mode phones (including the mova), you only need to use the part before the “@” mark.

When you receive e-mail from personal computers, the senders have to use your full address including @docomo.ne.jp.



### • **Selecting and receiving i-mode mail**

You can check the titles of i-mode mail held at the i-mode center, select items to receive, or delete items before receiving them. (See page 180)

### • **Changing mail address**

You can change the part of your mail address preceding the "@" mark as in "docomo. \_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp". (See page 198)

### • **Registering secret code**

You can register a four-digit secret code to your phone number when you use it as the mail address. Then, you will not receive i-mode mail that does not include your secret code, thus eliminating unwanted i-mode mail. (See page 200)

### • **Resetting mail address**

You can set your mail address to the format "your phone number@docomo.ne.jp". (See page 202)

### • **Confirming mail address**

You can confirm what the currently set mail address is. (See page 200)

### • **Rejecting/Receiving mail settings**

You can restrict receiving mail by setting the accept/reject mail settings following any of the methods shown below: (See page 204)

#### ① Receiving mail from selected domains

- You can receive mail from the specified company from among au, vodafone, TU-KA, and DDI Pocket.
- You can also receive mail sent from the specified domain other than the above companies. (See page 207)

All messages are received from i-mode, i-shot, Fixed Amount Arrival Notice Service, e billing invoice, and M-stage Visual Net.

#### ② Receiving/Rejecting selected mail

- You can accept/reject mail from specified mail addresses. (See page 206)

#### ③ Receiving/Rejecting only i-mode mail

- You can accept (reject mail over the Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode mobile phones (see page 204).

#### ④ Rejecting mass i-mode mail senders

- You can reject i-mode mail from 200th and after sent from a single i-mode mobile phone (including the mova) per day. The default is "Reject" so you need not set if you want to reject a bulky number of messages.

#### ⑤ Rejecting unsolicited ad mail

- You can accept/reject mail with "未承諾広告" inserted to the head of the title name, which is incoming for advertising/promoting purposes without your agreement. The default is "Reject" so you need not set if you want to reject "未承諾広告".

(Senders are obligated by the law to describe "未承諾広告" (six full-pitch characters) to the head of title name field.)

You cannot set "Receive Mail from Selected Domains", "Receive Selected Mail", "Reject Selected Mail", "Receive only i-mode mail", and "Reject only i-mode mail" at the same time.

### • Confirming settings

You can check the mail settings for whether mail is accepted or rejected. (See page 209)

### • Limiting mail size

You can limit the size of i-mode mail you receive by specifying the size in advance. (See page 203)

### • Suspending mail functions

If you do not want to use the mail functions, you can have the i-mode center suspend them. (See page 210)

## Preventing nuisance mail

You can effectively prevent receiving nuisance mail by changing your mail address (see page 198), or by using Receive/Reject Selected Mail (see page 206).

## Number of characters that can be sent/received

The numbers of characters that can be sent/received by i-mode mail are as below.

Item	Full-pitch (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphabet, numbers, katakana, etc.)	Bytes
Subject	15	30	30
Address	-	50	50
Text	5000	10000	10000
Attachment	Melodies, images, big images, i-motion		-

When a melody, image or i-motion file is attached or text is decorated, the number of characters that can be received/sent decreases.

### Information

Up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes) can be sent/received as the text of i-mode mail, but this number can be lower, depending on the volume of attached files. Files that are not compatible with i-mode mail cannot be received or sent; such files are deleted automatically at the i-mode center and just the text of the mail is delivered. In this case, the text is headed by the message “添付ファイル削除 (Attachment deleted)”. (Then, the mail is received up to the maximum number of characters including “添付ファイル削除 (Attachment deleted)”).

When the text of the i-mode mail contains more than the maximum characters, “/” or “//” is inserted at the end and the excess part is deleted automatically.

When sending i-mode mail to i-mode phones using the mova service, the text can be up to 2,000 full-pitch characters. Any attachments other than i-shot will be deleted.

Characters in the subject field of the i-mode mail that are in excess of the maximum will be deleted.

You can exchange mail containing half-pitch katakana or pictographs only between i-mode phones (includes the mova).

In other cases those characters might not be displayed correctly.

## When you cannot receive i-mode mail

i-mode mail is delivered to your i-mode phone as soon as it arrives at the i-mode center. However, if your FOMA phone is off or out of the service area, or Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", the mail will be kept at the i-mode center. Mail held at the i-mode center will be resent at set intervals for a maximum of three times. You can also set your FOMA phone so that you can select i-mode mail at the i-mode center to receive it.

### Information

The table below shows the maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum holding period.

	Maximum Number Held	Maximum Holding Period
i-mode mail	207 - 1,000 (up to approx. 2 Mbytes)	720 hours

Once the holding period expires the i-mode mail is deleted automatically.

The maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be held varies according to their data size. When the maximum number is exceeded, the i-mode center stops receiving i-mode mail and returns an error message to the senders. Your i-mode phone will display " " (gray) (indicates maximum number of messages held) indicating that your mailbox at the center is full. When Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", " " (gray) (indicates maximum number of messages held) does not appear even when the maximum number of messages is exceeded.

You can receive i-mode mail held at the i-mode center using "Check new message" (see page 182) or "Receive option" (see page 180). Further, if new i-mode mail is delivered, it will be sent with other i-mode mail and Messages R/F that have been held at the center.

Once you receive i-mode mail, it will be deleted at the i-mode center. Your FOMA phone will store the i-mode mail. (See page 178)

When the Mail function is suspended (see page 210), no more mail is held at the i-mode center.

The i-mode center might not accept extremely bulky i-mode mail.

## Other things you can do

### Mail attachments

#### • **Melody mail (see page 173 for sending, and page 190 for receiving.)**

You can create and exchange i-mode mail attachments using melody files downloaded from sites and the Internet. (Melody files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.)

Melodies might not be played back successfully if exchanged with models other than FOMA P900iV.

#### • **Image mail (see page 172 for sending, and page 189 for receiving.)**

You can create and exchange i-mode mail attachments using still image files downloaded from sites, Internet and external memory. (Still image files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.) If you send files other than i-shot to the i-mode phone service using mova service, these will be deleted and just the text will be sent.

#### **Sending/receiving i-shot (see page 172 for sending, and page 189 for receiving.)**

You can send and receive a file attachment of a still image taken with your FOMA phone and exchange this with other i-mode phones (including the mova), personal computers, and mobile phones of other manufacturers. However, this type of file does not use the format for sending files to i-mode mova phones; instead, a browsing URL and a limit on the storage period are automatically assigned to the mail, when the mail is sent; the image can be viewed by clicking on the URL.

Up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes) can be sent in the text of mail to i-mode mova phones. However, if multiple files have been attached, those files will be deleted and only the text is delivered.

#### **Deco mail (Decoration mail)**

When you are editing i-mode mail, you can change the font size and the background color, and paste an image into the text of the message. In this way you can create and send your own customized mail and also receive decorated mail. (Mail from a personal computer might not work in the same way as on the personal computer if it uses decoration not supported by the i-mode phone.)

See pages 161 to 171 for how to edit Decoration mail.

See page 158 for how to send Decoration mail.

Compatible devices--90Xi series

#### **Simultaneous mail sending**

You can send the same i-mode mail simultaneously to up to five addresses. (See page 155)

You can also register five addresses in a mailing list. (See page 262)

The transmission charge is the same rate as for sending to one address. (However, the data for the added address will involve a higher charge.)

#### **Sending/Receiving Cc and Bcc**

Just as with personal computers, you can select To, Cc, and Bcc address fields when editing i-mode mail. However, you cannot send mail when the To field is empty. (See page 155)

#### **Pasted i-αpli (see page 74 for receiving.)**

You can launch i-αpli from URLs (links) pasted in received i-mode mail.

You can send and receive moving images taken by the phone supporting i-motion mail or downloaded from sites as i-motion mail. (Moving image files cannot be sent if they are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices.)

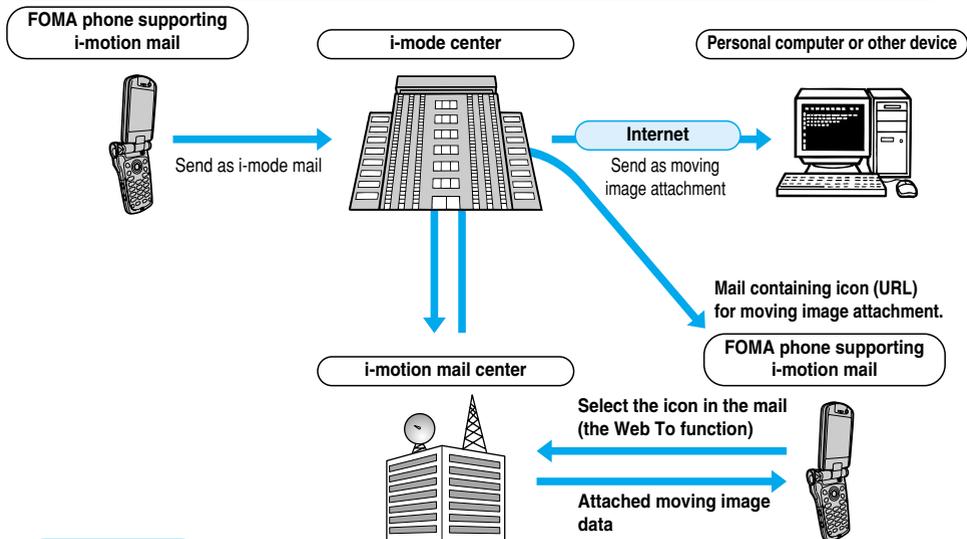
See page 174 for how to send i-motion mail.

See page 191 for how to receive i-motion mail.

### How i-motion service works

The moving image file is attached to i-mode mail and sent to the i-motion Mail Center where it is stored. (If the destination is a personal computer, the file will be sent directly as an attachment.) When the mail is received by a device that supports i-motion mail, the message “ 動画あり (moving image attached)” appears in the mail. The recipient can download the moving image file by selecting the icon.

When you send i-motion mail to a device that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted to continuous still images and the mail is received as the message which contains URL. The recipient can download the continuous still images by selecting the displayed URL.



### Information

i-motion mail sent to a personal computer arrives as a file attachment.

Apart from the text of i-motion mail, you can send attachments of up to 100 Kbytes of moving images. You cannot attach i-motion which exceeds the maximum size.

The recipient can download i-motion attached to i-motion mail.

You can delete i-motion saved at the i-motion center.

The table below shows the maximum number of items that can be held at the i-motion mail center, and the maximum holding period.

	Maximum Number Held	Maximum Holding Period
i-motion	15	10 days

Once the holding period expires, the i-motion mail is deleted automatically.

When the maximum holding number is exceeded, the i-motion Mail Center stops receiving i-motion mail and returns an error message to the senders.

Once you download i-motion to your i-mode phone, it will be deleted at the i-motion mail center.

You need compatible software to play i-motion on devices such as personal computers. For details, see the DoCoMo web page.

## Short Message (SMS)

You can send and receive Short Messages (SMS) even if you have not contracted for the i-mode service. With Short Message, you can exchange brief text messages with other FOMA phones. For how to send and receive Short Messages (SMS), see pages 212, 218.

### Information

Short Message (SMS) text messages cannot be sent overseas, or received from overseas. Short Messages (SMS) received by the FOMA phone can be saved to the UIM. (See page 227)

## Address for Short Message (SMS)

The address for Short Message (SMS) is your mobile phone number.

## Number of characters that can be sent/received

The numbers of characters that can be sent/received by Short Message (SMS) are as below.

Item	Full-pitch (kanji, hiragana, etc.)	Half-pitch (alphanumeric, etc.)	Bytes
Address	-	20 (numbers only)	20
Text	70	160	140

When half-pitch alphanumerics and symbols (except `,`, `!`, `~`, `{`, `}`, `[`, `]`, `|`, `\`, `;`, `'`, `°`, `^`, ```, and `)` only.

## When Short Messages (SMS) cannot be received

The Short Message Center delivers Short Messages (SMS) to your FOMA phone as soon as they are received. However, if your FOMA phone is off or out of the service area, the Short Messages will be kept at the center.

### Information

The Short Message Center keeps Short Messages (SMS) for a maximum period of 72 hours. You can set the holding period with "SMS validity period".

When the holding period expires, Short Messages (SMS) are deleted automatically.

You can receive Short Messages (SMS) held at the Short Message Center using "Check new SMS" (see page 220).

Once you receive Short Messages (SMS), they will be deleted at the Short Message Center. Your FOMA phone will store the Short Messages (SMS). (See page 218)

## Inbox Folder List

The Inbox Folder List can contain the information below.



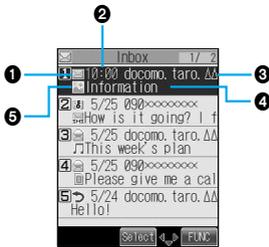
### 1 Folder status

- : Folder containing no unread mail
- : Folder containing unread mail
- : Security-activated folder containing no unread mail
- : Security-activated folder containing unread mail
- : i-oppai mail folder containing no unread mail
- : i-oppai mail folder containing unread mail
- : Security-activated i-oppai mail folder containing no unread mail
- : Security-activated i-oppai mail folder containing unread mail
- : Trash box folder
- : Security-activated Trash box folder

### 2 Folder name

## Inbox List and Received Mail detailed displays

The Inbox List and Received Mail detailed displays are structured as below.



<Inbox List (2-line display)>



<Inbox List (1-line display)>



<Received Mail detailed display>

### 1 Mail status and type

- |                  |                                |                        |
|------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| : Unread mail    | : Unread and protected mail    | : Mail received by To  |
| : Read mail      | : Read and protected mail      | : Mail received by Cc  |
| : Forwarded mail | : Forwarded and protected mail | : Mail received by Bcc |
| : Replied mail   | : Replied and protected mail   |                        |

### 2 Date and time received

The Inbox List shows the time for the mail received today, and shows the date for the mail received on earlier days. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was received.

### 3 Sender's and other receiver's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is registered in the Phonebook, the name registered in the Phonebook is displayed. (See page 149)

- : Sender's address (detailed display only)
- : Sender's address that cannot be replied to (detailed display only)
- : Other receiver's mail address (detailed display only)
- : Other receiver's mail address that cannot be replied to (detailed display only)

**4 Subject**

For Short Messages (SMS), the beginning of the message is displayed. (Indicated by "SMS" in the detailed display.)



: Short Message (SMS)



: Short Message (SMS) stored in UIM.

**5 Appears when a melody, image, i-appli or i-motion has been attached or pasted, or when it is i-appli mail.**

Appears even when the attached or pasted data is invalid.

The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached or pasted data.

**<For Inbox List (2-line display) and Received Mail detailed display>**

: A melody is attached or pasted.

: Multiple melodies are attached or pasted and some of them are invalid. (List only)

: All attached or pasted melodies are invalid.

: A melody is pasted. (Detailed display only)

: Pasted melody data is invalid. (Detailed display only)

: An image is attached.

: Multiple images are attached, and some of them are invalid. (List only)

: All attached images are invalid.

: i-appli launch information is pasted. (List only)

: Appears when "i-appli To" is set to "Invalid". (List only)

: i-motion is attached.

: Attached i-motion data is invalid.

: Undownloaded i-motion attachment.

: Data of undownloaded i-motion attachment is invalid. Also appears when "Paste i-motion" is set to "Invalid".

: Multiple data items have been pasted.

: i-appli mail (List only)

**<For Inbox List (1-line display)>**

: One or multiple melodies or images are attached.

: Multiple melodies or images are attached, and some of them are invalid.

: Multiple melodies or images are attached and all of them are invalid.

: One or multiple files contain i-motion are attached.

: Multiple files which contain i-motion items are attached, and some of them are invalid.

: Multiple files which contain i-motion items are attached, and all of them are invalid.

: i-appli mail

**6 Text of mail**

## Outbox Folder List

The Outbox Folder List can contain the information below.



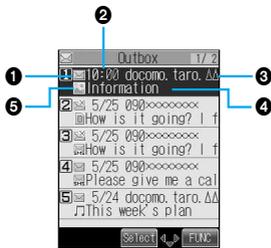
### 1 Folder status

- : Ordinary folder
- : Security-activated folder
- : i-appli mail folder
- : Security-activated i-appli mail folder

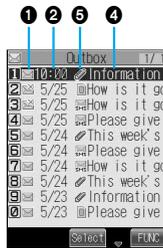
### 2 Folder name

## Outbox List and Sent Mail detailed displays

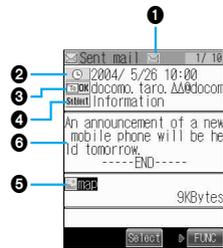
The Outbox List and Sent Mail detailed displays are structured as below.



<Outbox List (2-line display)>



<Outbox List (1-line display)>



<Sent Mail detailed display>

### 1 Mail status

- : Successfully sent mail
- : Unsuccessfully sent mail
- : Broadcast mail successfully sent to all addresses or some addresses
- : Broadcast mail unsuccessfully sent to all addresses
- : Protected mail

### 2 Sent date and time

The Outbox List shows the time for the mail sent today, and shows the date for the mail sent on earlier days.

The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was sent.

### 3 Recipient's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is registered in the Phonebook, the name registered in the Phonebook is displayed. (See page 149)

- : Mail address to which To-type mail was sent successfully (Detailed display only)
- : Mail address to which Cc-type mail was sent successfully (Detailed display only)
- : Mail address to which Bcc-type mail was sent successfully (Detailed display only)
- : Mail address to which To-type mail was sent unsuccessfully (Detailed display only)
- : Mail address to which Cc-type mail was sent unsuccessfully (Detailed display only)
- : Mail address to which Bcc-type mail was sent unsuccessfully (Detailed display only)

#### 4 Subject

For Short Messages (SMS), the beginning of the message is displayed. (Indicated by "SMS" in the detailed display.)



: Short Message (SMS)



: Short Message (SMS) stored in UIM



: Mail with SMS report received (List (2-line display) and the detailed display only)

#### 5 Appears when a melody, image, or i-motion has been attached.

The detailed display shows the data volume of the attached data.

##### <For Outbox List (2-line display) and Sent Mail detailed display>



: A melody is attached.



: An image is attached.



: A big image is attached.



: i-motion is attached.



: Attached data has been set with UIM restrictions.



: i-appli mail (List only)

##### <For Outbox List (1-line display)>



: One or multiple melodies or images are attached.



: One or multiple files which contain a big image or i-motion are attached.



: Attached data has been set with UIM restrictions.

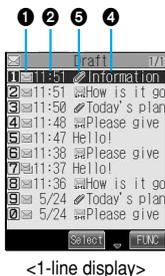
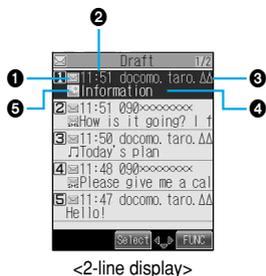


: i-appli mail

#### 6 Text of mail

## Draft List

The Draft List can contain the information below.



### 1 Mail status

-  : Draft mail
-  : Draft broadcast mail

### 2 Date and time saved

The Draft List shows the time for the mail saved today, and shows the date for the mail saved on earlier days.

### 3 Recipient's phone numbers or mail addresses

When the phone number or mail address is registered in the Phonebook, the name registered in the Phonebook is displayed. (See page 149)

### 4 Subject

For Short Messages (SMS), the first part of the message is displayed.

-  : Short Message (SMS)

### 5 Appears when a melody, image, or i-motion has been attached.

<For 2-line display>

-  : A melody is attached.
-  : An image is attached.
-  : A big image is attached.
-  : i-motion is attached.
-  : Attached data has been set with UIM restrictions.

<For 1-line display>

-  : One or multiple melodies or images are attached.
-  : One or multiple files which contain a big image or i-motion are attached.
-  : Attached data has been set with UIM restrictions.

### Information

If the FOMA clock is not set, the time and date are displayed as "--:--" and "--/--".

When the subject field of i-mode mail is empty, this is indicated by "No title".

For i-mode mail with an image attachment, you can select the image from the Received Mail detailed display or the Sent Mail detailed display, and then press  to switch between the image display and the file name display. In this manual, the file name display is used for the explanation.

### Displaying names of senders and recipients

Depending on the Phonebook contents, names of senders and recipients might be displayed instead of their mail addresses.

Contents of Phonebook	Data entry field	
	Phone number	Mail addresses
<b>Phone number</b> (Minimum of 11 digits starting with 0) Example: 090XXXXXXXXX		
<b>Alphanumeric</b> (except @docomo.ne.jp) Example: abc1234 ~ 789xyz	-	×
<b>Phone number@docomo.ne.jp</b> Example: 090XXXXXXXXX@docomo.ne.jp	-	×
<b>Alphanumeric@docomo.ne.jp</b> Example: abc1234@docomo.ne.jp	-	
<b>Phone number @ . .ne.jp</b> (when part after “@” is other than “docomo.ne.jp”) Example: 090XXXXXXXXX@ . .ne.jp	-	
<b>Mail addresses other than above</b>	-	

.....Name is displayed.

x .....Name is not displayed.

When only phone number is registered, you can display the name.

: Will be converted to names

x : Will be not converted to names

- : Entry impossible

#### Information

When a sender' s/recipient' s phone number or mail address matches a secret Phonebook entry, you can display the name in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode.

Even when a sender' s/recipient' s phone number or mail address matches an unsecret Phonebook entry, you cannot display the name in Secret Only Mode. Switch to Secret Mode or release Secret Only Mode to display the name.



# Composing i-mode Mail to Send

You can compose new i-mode mail and send it.  
See page 158 for composing Deco Mail to send.

## <Example>

Address: docomo.taro. @docomo.ne.jp

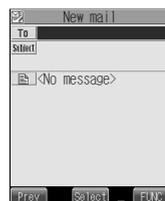
Subject: Information

1



### Compose message

If the Draft box already contains 10 items, you cannot compose a new message. Send or delete the draft mail and then compose the message.  
You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing ( ) from the Stand-by display.



<Message Composition display>

2

### Select the address field > Enter an address >

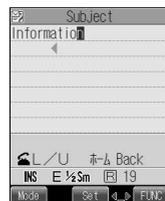
You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.  
See pages 153 or 154 to enter the address using the Phonebook, call history or mailing list.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.  
If the destination is an i-mode phone, you only have to enter the mail address before the "@" mark.  
See page 155 to send to multiple recipients.  
See page 155 to delete an added address.



3

### Select the subject field > Enter the title >

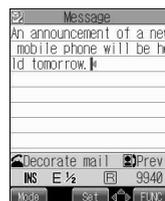
You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



4

### Select the field for the text of the message > Enter the message

You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.  
See page 156 to paste a header or signature.  
See page 156 to delete the entire message you have entered.  
See pages 172 to 174 to attach a file.  
See page 158 for Deco Mail.



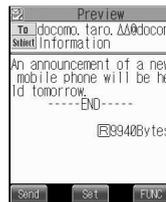
<Mail Text Entry display>

## 5 Press .

The Preview display is displayed.

Check the address, subject, text and attachment/s before sending.

Press  () to send i-mode mail.



## 6 Press .

## 7 Press ()

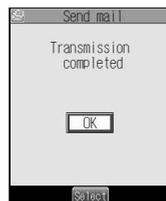
The animation display to indicate sending appears.

You can also send the mail by pressing  () , selecting "Send" from the Function menu, and pressing .

To cancel sending midway, press  for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop sending the mail.



## 8 OK



### Information

Depending on the signal status, the characters might not be displayed successfully at the destination.

Do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs except when exchanging mail with other than i-mode phones. The characters might not be displayed successfully.

When the number of sent mail items exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest. However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.

If you do not send the mail and instead press  or  , the message "Cancel and discard work in progress?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete all the text entered so far. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

If you try to send the mail which has the address of a phone number headed by "184" or "186", the message "Send without prefix numbers?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete "184" or "186" and send the mail. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

You cannot send mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or space.

You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields, but the mail cannot be sent if the To field is empty.

If the destination has been set in the Phonebook with the secret code (see page 142 of "Basics" manual), the secret code will be attached automatically at sending. However, the secret code cannot be attached unless the address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

Even if the destination is an i-mode phone of the mova service, you can send i-mode mail from the FOMA phone. (See page 136)

You can enter line feeds while editing the text of the message. Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character. Each space is counted as a character.

## Function menu

While the Message Composition display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

Send	p.151
Preview	See this page
Save	p.177
Look-up address	p.153, 154
Add receiver	p.155
Delete receiver	p.155
Change rcv. type	p.155
Attach file	p.172 to 174
Delete att. file	p.174
Add header	p.156
Add signature	p.156
Erase message	p.156
Delete	p.156

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Preview



Before sending mail, you can check the contents of the address, subject, main text, and attachment.

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Preview

After checking, press .

Press  (Send) to send the mail.

Press  (FUNC) to do the following items:

Send .....Sends i-mode mail.

Save .....Saves i-mode mail.



## Look-up Address (Phonebook)



You can look up an address or phone number in the Phonebook to enter it. The phone number or address needs to be registered in the Phonebook beforehand. (See page 122 of “Basics” manual)

### 1 Message Composition display/Short Message (SMS) Composition display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Look-up address ▶ Phonebook

If the address field already contains an address, the message “Overwrite address?” is displayed. Select “YES” and press .

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

### 2 Look up the Phonebook entry you require ▶ Display the mail address or phone number ▶

The destination address is entered into the address field.

Next, follow the operations from step 3 on pages 150, 158, or 212.

See page 133 of “Basics” manual for how to look up the Phonebook.



#### Information

When “Restrict dialing” is activated (see page 157 of “Basics” manual), you can only look up phone numbers specified for “Restrict dialing”.

## Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)



The mail addresses and phone numbers of sent and received i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) are saved in the Sent Addresses List and Received Addresses List (up to 30 items for each list). You can look up an address in one of these lists to enter it. You can also look up an address from the Redial or Received Call Records.

### 1 Message Composition display/Short Message (SMS) Composition display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Look-up address ▶ Sent address/Received address

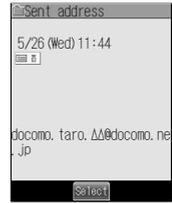
If the address field already contains an address, the message “Overwrite address?” is displayed. Select “YES” and press .

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

### 2 Select the desired mail address or phone number you require ▶

### 3 Press .

The destination address is entered into the address field.  
Next, follow the operations from step 3 on pages 150, 158, or 212.



#### Information

You cannot look up phone numbers while "Redial/Dialled calls" or "Received calls" of "Record display set" (see page 220 of "Basics" manual) is set to "OFF".

## Look-up Address (Mail Member)



You can look up an address in the Mail Member to enter it. The address needs to be registered in the Mail Member beforehand (see page 262).

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Look-up address

#### ▶ Mail member

If the address field already contains an address, the message "Overwrite all address?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### 2 Select the desired group

The destination address is entered into the address field.  
Next, follow the operations from step 3 on pages 150 or 158.



## Add Receiver



You can enter multiple addresses in the address field to broadcast the same i-mode mail to multiple destinations. You can broadcast up to five addresses.

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Add receiver

See each page for the following operations:

Phonebook ..... Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Phonebook)" on page 153

Sent address ..... Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

Received address ..... Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

Enter address ..... Step 2 on pages 150 or 158

#### Information

If the mail is not sent successfully to an address, the message "Some mail not sent" is displayed.

You cannot add addresses if the address field already contains five addresses or if the "To 1" field is empty.

If you enter the same address multiple times and try to send the mail, the message "Same address is entered Send?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press to delete the redundant address and send the mail. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete Receiver



You can select and delete an address from multiple addresses in the address field.

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Delete receiver YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Change Receiver Type



You can select an address and change it to "Cc", "Bcc" or "To".

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Change rcv. type

To ..... Changes the address type to "To".

Cc ..... Changes the address type to "Cc".

Bcc ..... Changes the address type to "Bcc".

#### To, Cc, and Bcc

The phone number or mail address set in the "To" field is the directly addressed recipient.

The phone number or mail address set in the "Cc" field is displayed on the recipient's side.

The phone number or mail address set in the "Bcc" field is not displayed on the recipient's side.

(Example) When a message was sent to the members of Mailing Lists with "To" to A, with "Cc" to B, and with "Bcc" to C  
In the message A received: the phone numbers and mail addresses of B are displayed. (Those of A and C are not displayed.)

In the message B received: the phone numbers and mail addresses of A are displayed. (Those of B and C are not displayed.)

In the message C received: the phone numbers and mail addresses of A and B are displayed. (Those of C are not displayed.)

#### Information

You cannot send i-mode mail if the "To" field is empty.

## Add Header/Add Signature



You can paste a header and signature in the text of i-mode mail.

First you need to register a header and signature. (See page 254)

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Add header/Add signature

The header is entered at the beginning of the main text, and the signature is entered at the end.

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on pages 150 or 158 to send the mail.

#### Information

If you have put a check mark for "Insert" of "Header/Signature", the header/signature is pasted automatically into the text of i-mode mail.

You cannot paste a header/signature if the text of the message, including the header/signature, would exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

If you paste the signature to the decorated text, the signature is together decorated.

As the header is not decorated and pasted with "Black", it might get obscured depending on the background color.

## Erase Message



You can delete the entire text of the message.

You cannot delete the address, subject or attached files.

### 1 Message Composition display/Short Message (SMS) Composition display (FUNC) Erase message YES

The text of the message is erased.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete



You can delete i-mode mail during editing.

### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Delete YES

The i-mode mail you have been editing is deleted.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Function menu

While the Mail Text Entry display is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Decorate mail	pp.163 to 169, 171
PI-SB input mode	See page 328 of "Basics" manual
Upper case/Lower case	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Full pitch/Half pitch	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Copy	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Cut	See page 330 of "Basics" manual
Paste	See page 330 of "Basics" manual
Space	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Line feed	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Symbols	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Pictograph	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Common phrases	See page 331 of "Basics" manual
Property	See this page
Quote phonebook	See page 334 of "Basics" manual
Quote own number	See page 335 of "Basics" manual
Jump	See page 335 of "Basics" manual
Undo	See this page
Preview	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Property



You can view the name and size of a file for the image inserted in Deco mail.

**1** Mail Text Entry display ▶ Select the inserted image ▶  (**FUNC**)  
▶ Property

After checking, press .

## Undo



After entering or deleting characters, pasting data, or operating on a Decoration, you can undo your most recent operation.

**1** Mail Text Entry display ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Undo

### Information

- Once you use "Undo" to return to the previous status, you cannot cancel this by using "Undo" again.
- If you close the Mail Text Entry display and then re-open it, you cannot return to the immediately previous status by using "Undo". (However, after you have used "Preview", you can return to the previous status.)

## Preview



You can view the contents of the text of the message before sending.

**1** Mail Text Entry display ▶  (**FUNC**) ▶ Preview

You can preview by pressing  from the Mail Text Entry display.

After checking, press  (**EXIT**).





## Composing Deco Mail (Decoration Mail) to Send

When editing i-mode mail, you can change the size of the font and the color of the background as well as inserting images, thus creating your own original mail. The Decoration function enables you to customize Font Color, Font Size, Blink, Ticker, Swing, Word Alignment, Insert Line, Insert Image, and Background Color. You can specify multiple decorations per sentence.

You can specify only one from Ticker, Swing, and Word Alignment.

You can combine line insertion only with Font Color, and Insert Image only with Word Alignment.

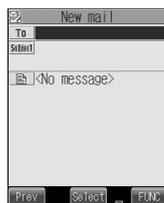
For composing Deco Mail, you can use "Decoration palette" or select a decoration from the "Function menu". This volume describes the procedures mainly by using "Decoration palette".



### 1 Compose message

If the Draft box already contains 10 items, you cannot compose Deco mail. Send or delete the draft mail and then compose the message.

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing ( ) from the Stand-by display.



### 2 Select the address field > Enter an address >

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

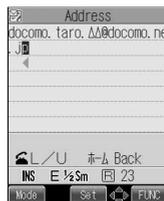
See pages 153 or 154 to enter the address using the Phonebook, call history or mailing list.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.

If the destination is an i-mode phone, you only have to enter the mail address before the "@" mark.

See page 155 to send to multiple recipients.

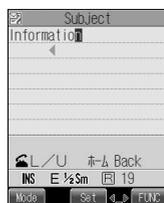
See page 155 to delete an added address.



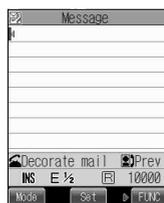
### 3 Select the subject field > Enter the title >

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### 4 Select the field for the text of the message >



<Mail Text Entry display>

## 5 Decorate the text of message using Decoration Palette.

Press  to display Decoration Palette.  
See page 161 for how to use Decoration Palette.

To enter the text of the message after selecting decorations

 ▶ **Select the decoration function** ▶ **Enter the text**

See pages 163 to 169 about detailed operations of each decoration.

To set decorations after entering the text of the message

**Enter the text** ▶  ▶ 

Next, do the operation of “Decorate area select” on page 162.

Do the operation of “Decorate (Edit Decoration)” on page 171, when you set decorations from the Function menu.

You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.  
(The number of characters you can enter will be lower because of the decoration.)  
Once you decorate the text, “ ” appears.

You can view the contents of the text of the message by pressing .

Press  () or  to return to the immediately previous display.

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.

See page 156 to paste a header or signature.

See page 156 to delete the entire contents you have entered.

See pages 172 to 174 to attach a file.



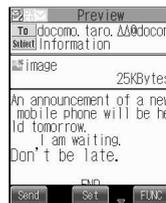
Entry Example

(In the case of using Decoration Palette)

## 6 Press .

The Preview display is displayed.

Check the address, subject, text of the message and attachment before sending.



## 7 Press (.

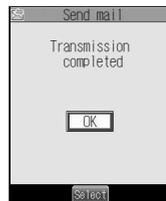
You can also send the mail by pressing  () , selecting “Send” from the Function menu, and pressing .

The animation display to indicate sending appears.

To cancel sending midway, press and hold  for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop sending the mail.



## 8 OK



## Information

Depending on the signal status, the characters might not be displayed successfully at the destination.

Do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs except when exchanging mail with other i-mode phones. The characters might not be displayed successfully.

When the number of sent mail items exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest. However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.

If you send Deco mail to a device that does not support the Deco function, it will be delivered with the Decoration deleted. The image inserted by "Insert image" will be delivered as an attachment to the FOMA phone. To the mova phone, it will be delivered as i-shot mail or with the Decoration deleted.

If you quote Deco Mail to reply to or to forward, the text of the message is displayed with the decoration and inserted image quoted.

If you do not send the mail and instead press  or , the message "Cancel and discard work in progress?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete all the contents entered so far. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

If you try to send the mail which has the address of a phone number headed by "184" or "186", the message "Send without prefix numbers?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press  to delete "184" or "186" and send the mail. Select "NO" and press  to return to the previous display.

You cannot send mail to addresses that include a comma or space.

You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields, but the mail cannot be sent if the To field is empty.

If the destination has been set in the Phonebook with the secret code (see page 142 of "Basics" manual), the secret code will be attached automatically at sending. However, the secret code cannot be attached unless the address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

### Function menu

While the Mail Text Entry display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Decorate mail	pp.163 to 169, 171
PI-SB input mode	See page 328 of "Basics" manual
Upper case/Lower case	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Full pitch/Half pitch	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Copy	See page 329 of "Basics" manual
Cut	See page 330 of "Basics" manual
Paste	See page 330 of "Basics" manual
Space	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Line feed	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Symbols	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Pictograph	See page 332 of "Basics" manual
Common phrases	See page 331 of "Basics" manual
Property	p.157
Quote phonebook	See page 334 of "Basics" manual
Quote own number	See page 335 of "Basics" manual
Jump	See page 335 of "Basics" manual
Undo	p.157
Preview	p.157

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## How to use Decoration Palette

You can decorate the text of i-mode mail using Decoration Palette. You can set multiple decorations at a time.



Press from the Mail Text Entry display to display Decoration Palette.  
Press () to close Decoration Palette.

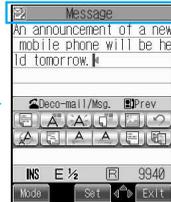
Decoration Palette

### Switch operations

You can switch between the operation of using Decoration Palette and the operation of entering text, each time you press . You can also move the cursor and enter texts with Decoration Palette displayed.



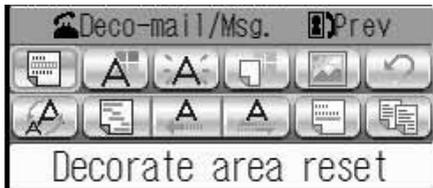
Decoration Palette operation



Text entry operation

After you enter texts, the Text entry operation display is displayed. When you use Decoration Palette in succession, press and operate.

### Icons



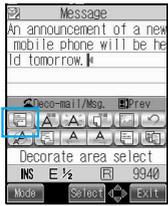
When the cursor is over the decorated character, the set decoration icon appears concave. Select the concave icon and press : then you can change or cancel the decoration. You can also cancel the decoration by pressing with the area for decorating selected. You cannot select the icon displayed in gray.

## Decoration (Decorate area select)



You can set decorations over the selected text you have entered. You can also change and add the set decoration, or cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.

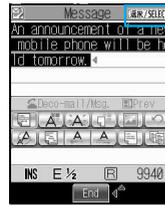


Select



Select the start point

You can select all text by pressing ( ).



Select the end point

"/SELECT" is displayed during selecting decoration area.

After this, set change or add each decoration.

### Set, change or add decoration



Select the area of characters you want to set, change, or add decorations for.



Select an icon and set, change, or add decoration

Select other icons in succession, to change the multiple decorations or add decoration.



Select



When Blink, Ticker, or Swing has been set, cancel the selected area, and then select the icons for respective settings and define the end point.

### Cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing



Select the area of characters you want to cancel Blink, Ticker, or Swing from.



Select the icon for Blink, Ticker, or Swing.



Select the same icon again.



See page 171 for setting, changing or releasing decorations after selecting the entered characters from the Function menu.

### Information

You cannot set the decoration of "Insert line", "Insert image" or "Background color" by using "Decorate area select" function.



You can change the font color and line color.

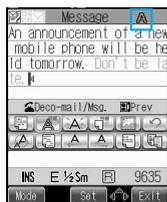
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select a color



Enter text

In the font color changing mode, “” is displayed.  
If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

If you have already selected the area for decorating, you do not need to enter the text.

See page 169 to insert a line.

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display
2. Enter text

### Information

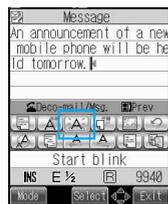
If you move the cursor to the character for which another color is set, the setting changes to that color.  
The color for pictographs is also displayed in the font color you specify. To return to ordinary color, select “Default”.

## Decoration (Blink)



You can make text blink.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Enter text



Select



You can use preview to view the blinking by pressing .

In the blink setting mode, "" is displayed.  
The set characters are highlighted.  
If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display ( )
2. Enter text ( )

### Information

Characters stop blinking after a certain period of time.  
See page 162 to cancel the set Blink.

## Decoration (Background color)



You can change the background color of the mail text.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select a color



### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display ( )

## Decoration (Insert image)



You can insert an image in the mail text. The image is inserted at the cursor position. You can change the position of the image by using “Word alignment”.

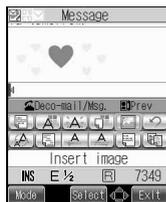
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select an image



The line feed is inserted automatically, and the image is inserted.

To delete the image, place the cursor on the image and press .

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNC) Insert image  
Image/Pre-installed ..... Inserts an image from pre-installed Images.  
Camera ..... Inserts an image from the Camera folder.  
i-mode ..... Inserts an image from the i-mode folder.  
SD card ..... Inserts an image from the miniSD memory card folder.  
Edit ..... Inserts an image from the Edit folder.  
Chara-den image ..... Inserts an image from the Chara-den Image folder.
2. Select an image

### Information

You can insert JPEG or GIF images of up to 10,000 bytes (total of text and images).

For inserting an image different from the image already inserted, you can insert up to 10 images. However, even when you have inserted 10 images or less, the confirmation display “Memory shortage Return to preview and edit message” appears depending on the operation. Select “YES” and press (Set) to preview the edited mail, and then edit the text of the message again.

Even if multiple same images are inserted, they are counted as a single file. However, once you insert an image and re-insert the image on the Edit display after pressing (Set), those images are counted as separate files.

If you copy or paste the image already inserted into the Edit display, that image is regarded as inserting the same image and handled as a single file including the copied origin. (This is also applied when re-editing.)

If an animation is inserted, it stops to animate after a certain period of time.

You cannot set Font Color, Font Size, Blink, Ticker or Swing for the inserted Image.

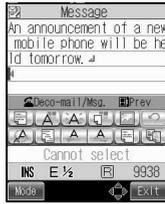
You cannot insert the image of which attachment to mail or distribution to external devices is prohibited.

## Decoration (Undo)



You can return to the previous status of the set decoration.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



(Example) When you undo the line insertion

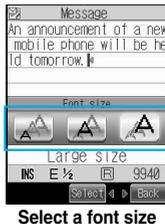
See page 157 to execute "Undo" from the Function menu.

## Decoration (Font size)



You can change the font size.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select

Select a font size

Enter text

In the font size changing mode, "" or "" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

When you have already selected the area for decorating, you do not need to enter the text.

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNC) Font size  
Large ..... Large size font (24 dots)  
Standard ..... Standard size font (20 dots)  
Small ..... Small size font (16 dots)
2. Enter the text

### Information

If you move the cursor to the character for which a different font size is set, the font size is changed to that size of the character.

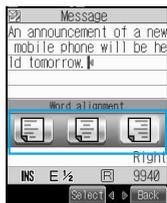


You can change the position of characters and images by paragraph.

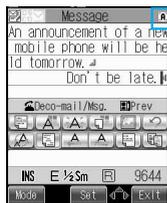
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select a word alignment



Enter text

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the alignment is set.

In the word alignment setting mode, “” is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

When you have already selected the area for decorating, you do need to enter the text.

See page 165 for inserting image.

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNCTION) Decorate mail Word alignment

Left .....The text/image is left-justified.  
 Center.....The text/image is centered.  
 Right .....The text/image is right-justified.

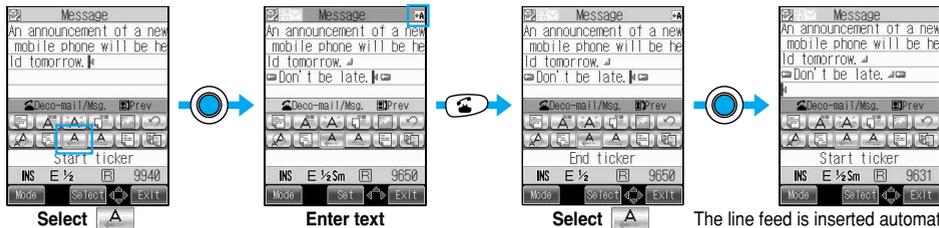
2. Enter the text

## Decoration (Ticker)



You can make the characters flow from right to left.

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select

Enter text

Select

In the ticker setting mode, "" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the text set for Ticker is enclosed with "" and "".

You can use preview to view the Ticker by pressing .

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNC) Decorate mail Ticker Begin
2. Enter text (FUNC) Decorate mail Ticker End

### Information

Characters stop ticker movement after a certain period of time.  
See page 162 to cancel the set Ticker.

## Decoration (Swing)



You can make the characters swing (displayed moving to left and right back).

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select

Enter text

Select

In the swing setting mode, "" is displayed.

If you want to set other decorations, continue from here.

The line feed is inserted automatically, and the text set for Swing is enclosed with "" and "".

You can use preview to view the Swing by pressing .

### To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNC) Decorate mail Swing Begin
2. Enter text (FUNC) Decorate mail Swing End

### Information

Characters stop swinging after a certain period of time.  
See page 162 to cancel the set Swing.

## Decoration (Insert line)

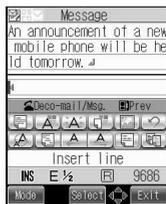


You can insert a horizontal line into the text of message. The line will be inserted at the cursor position. You can change the line's color by "Font color".

Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



The line feed is inserted automatically, and the line is inserted.

To erase the line, move the cursor over the line and press .

To set from the Function menu

1. Mail Text Entry display (FUNC) Insert line

### Information

You cannot set Font Size, Blink, Ticker, Swing or Word Alignment for the inserted line.

## Decoration (Copy)

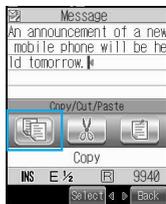


You can copy characters.

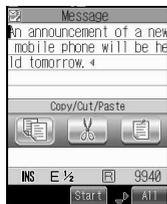
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select

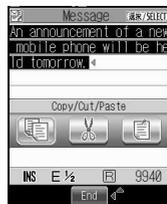


Select

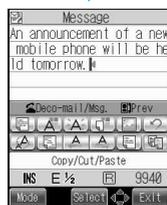


Select the start point

You can copy all text by pressing (ALL).



Select the end point



i-mode Mail

Composing Deco Mail (Decoration Mail)  
to Send

See page 329 of "Basics" manual to execute "Copy" from the Function menu.

## Decoration (Cut)

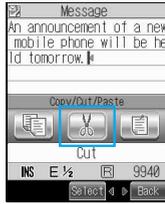


You can cut characters.

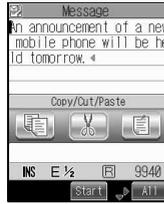
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select

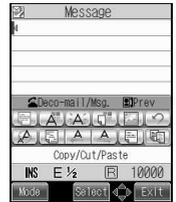


Select the start point

You can cut all text by pressing ().



Select the end point



See page 330 of "Basics" manual to execute "Cut" from the Function menu.

## Decoration (Paste)

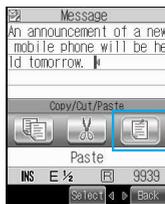


You can paste the copied or cut characters. The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

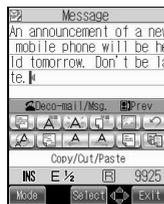
Press in step 5 on page 159 to display Decoration Palette.



Select



Select



See page 330 of "Basics" manual to execute "Paste" from the Function menu.

## Decoration (Edit Decoration)



You can decorate mail after entering text. You can change the decorations that you have entered.

**1** Mail Text Entry display ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ Decorate mail ▶ Edit decoration

**2** Select the start point ▶ ▶ Select the end point ▶

Press ( **ALL** ) to select the entire contents.

**3** Select the decoration to change ▶

Font color .....Changes the color of text and lines. (See page 163)

Font size .....Changes the size of text. (See page 166)

Blink .....Sets/Releases Blink. (See page 164)

Ticker .....Sets/Releases Ticker. (See page 168)

Swing .....Sets/Releases Swing. (See page 168)

Word alignment .....Changes the alignment of text and images. (See page 167)

Back .....Re-selects the decoration you want to change.

See page 162 for changing or releasing the decorations from Decoration Palette.

### Information

You cannot set decoration of "Insert line", "Insert image", and "Background color".

## Decoration (Reset Settings)



You can release all the decorations in the text of the message.

**1** Mail Text Entry display ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ Decorate mail ▶ Reset settings

▶ YES

If you have inserted an image, the message "In-line image is deleted" is displayed.

Press to return to the Mail Text Entry display.

You cannot execute "Reset settings" from Decoration Palette.

### Information

You cannot delete any line feed that is inserted automatically when a decoration is set.

# Sending Mail with a Still Image, Melody, Moving Image or i-motion Attached

## Attach Image



You can attach ordinary images of up to 10,000 bytes and big images of over 10,000 bytes to i-mode mail.

For ordinary images, you can attach up to 10 files (total of ordinary images and melodies) as long as the total for the text of the message and the attached files does not exceed the equivalent of 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes). For big images, only one file can be attached per message. (You can attach melody or ordinary image files together with a big image file, however.)

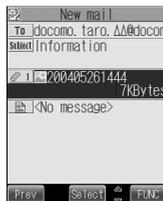
### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Attach file Attach image

- Camera .....Attaches an image from the Camera folder.
- i-mode .....Attaches an image from the i-mode folder.
- SD card .....Attaches an image from the miniSD memory card folder.
- Edit .....Attaches an image from the Edit folder.
- Chara-den image .....Attaches an image from the Chara-den Image folder.

### 2 Select an image



When "Camera" selected



The image is attached.

Press to display the image.

Press again to return to the previous display.

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on pages 150 or 158 to create the mail.

### Information

The number of attachable files may be 10 or less depending on data size.

You cannot attach an image with a data size of over 100 Kbytes. If you execute "Compose message" (see page 323) or "Size for mail" (see page 344), you can convert the size of the image to 100 Kbytes or less.

You cannot send mail with a big image attachment to FOMA phones or i-mode phones though you can send it to personal computers.

### Information

You can attach a big image in JPEG format only. You cannot attach it in GIF format.

When a big image is attached, you cannot attach i-motion.

When a big image is attached, the number of characters you can enter in the main text decreases by the equivalent of 100 full-pitch characters (200 half-pitch characters).

When no images are stored in the FOMA phone, you cannot attach images.

The image displayed from the i-mode mail and that from the Image viewer might differ. To the receiving end, the image displayed from the Image viewer is sent; therefore to correctly display the image on the receiving end, the recipient needs to once save the image to the "i-mode" folder, and then display it from the image viewer.

You cannot attach images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone to other devices. However, you can attach images taken with the camera or received by Ir exchange regardless of the settings for file restrictions. (See page 296)

You can send attachments of still images taken with your own FOMA phone to other mova service i-mode phones, personal computers, and mobile phones of other carriers. However, the images are not sent as the attachments to the mova service to i-mode phones; they are in the form of URLs and automatically attached with expiry dates; when the URLs are clicked, they can be downloaded. The text of the message that can be sent to a mova service i-mode phone is up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). (When the acceptable number of characters of the mova phone is "250 full-pitch characters") When multiple files are attached, the files are deleted and just the mail text is sent.

## Attach Melody



You can attach an "Original tone" (see page 388) to i-mode mail. You can attach up to 10 files (total of ordinary images and melodies) as long as the total for the text of the message and the attached files does not exceed the equivalent of 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes).

**1** Message Composition display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Attach file ▶ Attach melody

**2** Select a melody ▶

Press (Play) in the display at the right to play the melody.



The melody is attached.

Press to play the melody. Press any key to stop it.

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on pages 150 or 158 to create the mail.

### Information

The number of attachable files may be 10 or less depending on data size.

You cannot attach melodies with a data size of over 10,000 bytes.

You cannot attach a melody if no original tones have been registered.

You cannot attach melodies that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output to other devices.

If the receiving device is not FOMA P900iV, the melody might not be played back successfully or the attachment might be deleted.



You can send i-mode mail with attachments such as moving images taken with the i-mode phone or i-motion downloaded from sites. You can attach only one i-motion per message. (You can attach melody or image files of up to 1000 bytes together with the i-motion file.)

## 1 Message Composition display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Attach file ▶ Attach i-motion

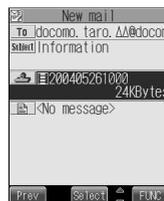
- Camera .....Attaches an i-motion from the Camera folder.
- i-mode .....Attaches an i-motion from the i-mode folder.
- Edit .....Attaches an i-motion from the Edit folder.
- Chara-den video .....Attaches an i-motion from the Chara-den video folder.

## 2 Select an i-motion ▶ (Play)

Press (Play) in the display at the right to play back the i-motion.



When "Camera" selected



The i-motion is attached.

Press (Play) to play back the i-motion.

During playback, press (Play) to return to the previous display.

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on pages 150 or 158 to create the mail.

### Information

You cannot attach an i-motion with a data size of over 100 Kbytes.

When an i-motion is attached, you cannot attach a big image.

When an i-motion is attached, the number of characters you can enter in the text of the message decreases by the equivalent of 100 full-pitch characters (200 half-pitch characters).

When no i-motion images are stored in the FOMA phone, you cannot attach i-motion images.

You cannot attach i-motion images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA phone to other devices. However, you can attach moving images taken with the camera or received by Ir exchange regardless of the settings for the file restrictions (see page 296).

Some of i-motion cannot be attached to mail or their sizes may change.

Moving images stored in the miniSD Memory Card cannot be attached. Import the moving images. (See page 326)

# Delete Attached File



You can delete selected attachments (melody, image, big image, or i-motion).

## 1 Message Composition display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete att. file ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (Play).



# Displaying Sent/Unsent i-mode Mail

You can save a combined total of 400 sent i-mode mail messages and Short Messages (SMS).  
You can check the sent i-mode mail.

1

**Outbox** **Select the folder to be displayed**

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing ( ) from the Stand-by display.

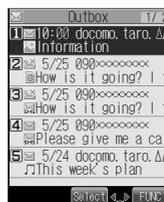


<Outbox Folder List>

2

**Select the i-mode mail to be displayed**

When there are six or more items (11 or more items on 1-line display), use to check the next or previous pages.



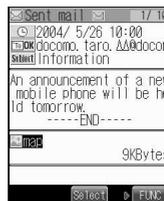
<Outbox List>



Use to check other mail.

When the text of the message is long, you can use to scroll. Also, you can press

or to scroll by page.



<Sent Mail detailed display>

i-mode Mail

Outbox

### Function menu

While the Outbox Folder List is displayed, press (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Auto-sort	p.245
Security ON/OFF	p.229
Delete folder	p.230
Memory info	p.237
Open folder	p.230
Delete all	p.238

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Outbox List is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Move this	p.231
Display all	p.233
Sort	p.233
Filter	p.234
List setting	p.234
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
Unprotect all	p.236
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
UIM operation	p.227
No. of messages	p.237
Delete this	p.239
Delete selected	p.239
Delete all	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Sent Mail detailed display is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit	See this page
Move	p.231
Copy	p.241
Add to address	p.241
Add to phonebook	p.242
Save data	p.189, 190, 193
Save image inMsg	p.189
Add desktop icon	p.243
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
External output	p.243
UIM operation	p.227
Disp. SMS report	p.216
Scroll	p.250
Character size	p.250
Delete	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Editing and Sending Sent i-mode Mail



You can re-edit sent mail and send it again.

### 1 Sent Mail detailed display (**FUNC**) Edit

Next, follow the operations from the step 2 on page 150 to create the mail.

## Saving Composed i-mode Mail to Send Later

### Saving i-mode Mail



While composing or editing mail, you can save it to the Draft box.

#### 1 Message Composition display (FUNC) Save

You cannot save the item when the address, subject and text of the message are all empty and there is no attached file.

### Editing and Sending Saved i-mode Mail



You can edit draft i-mode mail and send it.

You can save up to 10 messages including Short Messages (SMS).

#### 1 Draft

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing  () from the Stand-by display.



<Draft List>

#### 2 Select the i-mode mail to be edited

Next, follow the operations from the step 2 on page 150 to create the mail.

#### Function menu

While the Draft List is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

List setting	p.234
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
No. of messages	p.237
Delete this	p.239
Delete selected	p.239
Delete all	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

You can save up to 1,000 received i-mode mail messages including Short Messages (SMS). You can set the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail by “Select ring tone” (see page 179 of “Basics” manual), and can change the flickering pattern of the Call/Charging Indicator for incoming i-mode mail by “Illumination”. (See page 170 of “Basics” manual)

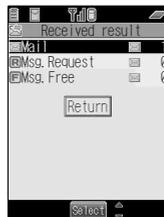
Your FOMA phone can also receive i-mode mail sent from mova service i-mode phones.

**1** When i-mode mail arrives, “ (pink)” blinks and the message “Mail Receiving...” is displayed.



When receiving is completed, the display shows the number of received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F.

You can display the Inbox List by selecting “Mail” and pressing .



The previous display returns if no key is pressed for 15 seconds.

(The actual number of seconds varies depending on the setting for “i-mode ringing time”.)

“ New” appears on the desktop.

Press , select “ New”, and press  again to display the Inbox List.



When previous display was Stand-by display

### Information

When the total number of messages saved in the FOMA phone's Inbox (Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail) exceeds 1,000, the messages will be overwritten in the priority of ①mail in the Trash box folder, and ②oldest received mail. However, unread or protected mail is not overwritten.

When the number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new mail can be received and “ (gray)” is displayed. To be able to receive i-mode mail, delete Inbox mail or open unread mail or release protected mail until “ (gray)” clears, and then perform “Check new message”.

## Information

If you have set to selectively receive i-mode mail, the i-mode center will hold your i-mode mail. (“” will appear at the top of the display.) You can check the titles of the i-mode mail held at the center and select items to receive. (See page 180)

When new i-mode mail is delivered, it will be sent with other i-mode mail and Messages R/F that have been held at the center.

You can send/receive i-mode mail with melody, moving image and still image files attached. Incompatible attachments are deleted automatically at the i-mode center. When an attachment has been deleted, the message “添付ファイル削除 (attached file deleted)” is added to the text of the message.

The i-mode center might not accept extremely bulky i-mode mail, in which case it will be returned to the sender with an error message.

Once you receive i-mode mail, it will be deleted at the i-mode center.

You can restrict the size of incoming i-mode mail in advance. (See page 203)

You can restrict the type of incoming attachments in advance. (See page 196)

When you receive mail from a device that can set To, Cc and Bcc, you can check whether the message was sent to you as To, Cc or Bcc.

The priority for the ring tone and illumination settings when i-mode mail is received is as follows:

① Individual settings of mail address (see page 182 of “Basics” manual)

② Group settings (see page 183 of “Basics” manual)

③ Select Ring Tone (see page 179 of “Basics” manual), Set Illumination (see page 170 of “Basics” manual)

When you receive multiple i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F, the ring tone and illumination work according to the settings for the last received i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS) and Message R/F.

The ring tone does not sound when you receive i-mode mail in the status other than Stand-by display, or “Receiving display” is set to “Operation preferred”. When “Alarm preferred” is set, the ring tone sounds and the Received Result display appears. (See page 252)

When you receive i-mode mail while the FOMA phone is closed, the information will be displayed in the Private Window.

If you receive i-mode mail while an i-motion is played back, the images and the sound might be interrupted.

When the FOMA phone receives i-shot mail from a mova service i-mode phone, this is received as an attachment.



## Receive Option Setting



Setting at purchase  
OFF

You can set whether to select and receive necessary i-mode mail only.

1



Mail settings ▶ Receive option setting

ON .....Receives i-mode mail after selecting.

OFF .....Receives i-mode mail automatically.

## Information

When this function is set to “ON”, you cannot receive i-mode mail automatically. When you have i-mode mail, the i-mode center will hold it for you, and “” will be displayed. To receive it, use “Check new message” or “Receive option”.

Even when “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, you will still receive all mail held at the center if you use “Check new message”. If you do not want to receive all mail, remove a check mark from “Mail”. (See page 183)

You cannot select Short Messages (SMS) to receive them.



# Receiving after Selecting i-mode Mail

You can check the titles of i-mode mail held at the i-mode center and select mail to receive, or delete mail at the center before receiving it.

To use this function, set "Receive option setting" to "ON" beforehand.

## 1 Receive option



- : An image file is attached.
- : A melody file is attached.
- : An i-motion file is attached.

When there are multiple pages, you can select "前ページ (previous)" or "次ページ (next)" to shift to each page.

When "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF", the display to the effect that will be set to "ON" appears. Press to set "Receive option setting".

" > > iMenu > Menu List > Receive Option"; then you can also bring up the display on the right.



## 2 Select from the pull-down menu for each i-mode mail

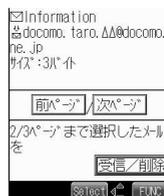
- 受信 (Receive) .....Delivers selected i-mode mail.
- 削除 (Delete) .....Deletes selected i-mode mail.
- 保留 (Hold) .....Holds selected i-mode mail at the center.



## 3 受信 / 削除 (Receive/Delete)

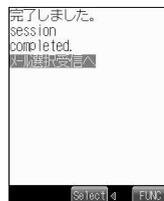
When there are multiple pages, you can select "受信/削除 (Receive/Delete)" midway and press to hold, receive or delete up to that page; the rest of the pages will be held at the i-mode center.

Even if you access the second page, the selection done for the first page is valid.



## 4 決定 (OK)

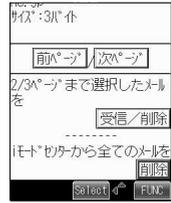
- To cancel, select "キャンセル (Cancel)" and press .
- The confirmation display appears and the operation ends.
- You will soon receive the mail you selected for delivery.



### To delete all i-mode mail held at i-mode center

This operation deletes all mail held for you at the i-mode center, regardless of the number of pages.

1. After step 1 on page 180, select “削除 (Delete)” and press .



### Information

Even when “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, you will still receive all mail held at the center if you use “Check new message”. If you do not want to receive all mail, remove a check mark from “Mail”. (See page 183)

If you use “Receive option” to delete the mail with i-motion attached (pasted), the i-motion is retained at the i-motion mail center. You can delete the i-motion held at the i-motion mail center. (See page 194)



## Checking whether Center Holds i-mode Mail

When i-mode mail and Messages R/F arrive at the i-mode center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA phone, but will be held at the center if your FOMA phone is off, out of the service area, or cannot receive mail because its memory is full.

In this case, " (pink)" is displayed. You can receive mail by checking the i-mode center.

1



### Check new message

The i-mode mail icon ( (pink)) and message icons ( (yellow) and (yellow)) will blink, the message "Mail Checking..." will be displayed, and the i-mode mail and Messages R/F will be delivered.

When the results of checking are displayed, the numbers of the received i-mode mail and Messages R/F are shown.

You can also bring up the display on the right by pressing (envelope icon) for at least one second from the Stand-by display.

To cancel receiving midway, press (cancel icon) for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop receiving the mail.



### Information

You cannot check mail when out of the service area.

When you attempt to check mail without launching i-mode (" (pink)" is not displayed), the checking process will start after i-mode is launched. Consequently, when checking completes, you will be returned to the i-mode Stand-by status (" (pink)" blinks).

When icons such as " (gray)", " (gray)", " (gray)", or " (pink)" are displayed, the FOMA phone cannot receive any more i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F, or open unnecessary unread i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F, or release protection. (Read and unprotected mail and Messages R/F are overwritten automatically in order from the oldest items.)

Sometimes the i-mode center might hold i-mode mail even though " (pink)" is not displayed. (This happens if mail arrives at the center when, for instance, your FOMA phone is off.)

You can select which items to check by setting "i-mode checking".

You cannot use this function to receive Short Messages (SMS). Use "Check new SMS" to receive Short Messages (SMS).



You can use “i-mode checking” to select items to be checked from among i-mode mail, Messages R (Request) and Messages F (Free).

## 1 i-mode connection i-mode checking

### Select the item/s to be checked

“” and “” switch each time you press .

.....Checks.

.....Does not check.



## 2 Press (Finish).

### Information

At purchase, all the items are selected: “ Mail”, “ Msg. Request”, and “ Msg. Free”. If you do not want to receive Messages R (Request) and Messages F (Free), change these settings to “ (not selected)”.



# Reading Received i-mode Mail

When your FOMA phone is in the service area, it automatically receives i-mode mail from the i-mode center. (You can also receive after selecting i-mode mail. See page 180.)

When i-mode mail arrives, "MAIL" (pink) appears at the top of the display.

## 1 Inbox Select the folder to be displayed

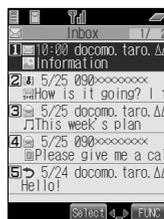
You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing () from the Stand-by display. At purchase, you can only select "Inbox", "Dimo i 絵文字メール (Dimo i pictograph mail)" or "Trash box".



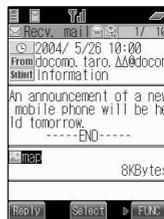
<Inbox Folder List>

## 2 Select the i-mode mail to be displayed

When you select an unread i-mode mail, "MAIL" changes to "MAIL". When there are six or more items (eleven or more items on 1-line display), use to check the following or previous pages.



<Inbox List>



<Received Mail detailed display>

Use to check other mail. When the text of the message is long, you can use to scroll. Also, you can press or to scroll by page. When a melody is attached, it will be played back automatically. (You can change this by "Play melody setting".)



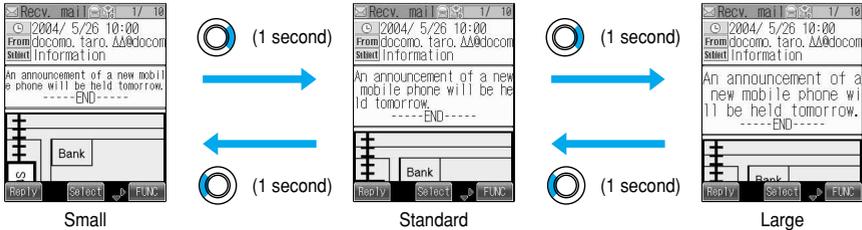
- 1 Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second Use to select
- 2 Use to select "Inbox"
- 3 Use to select the folder to be displayed
- 4 Use to select the i-mode mail to be displayed

## Display light

The display lights for about 15 seconds when you open the FOMA phone, press a key, or send/receive i-mode mail. However, when you display the text of an i-mode mail, the lighting time varies according to the length of the message. (The display does not light when "Lighting" of "Display light" (see page 195 of "Basics" manual) is set to "OFF".)

## Switching i-mode mail display

You can change the size of the font displayed in the i-mode mail detailed display (text of message).



### Information

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will resume automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will resume. When you use the above operation to switch the font size, the setting for "Character size" also changes. You cannot use this function in Viewer style.

### Information

When the number of characters in the main text of received i-mode mail exceeds the maximum, " / " is inserted at the end of the message and the excess part is deleted automatically. Images attached to i-mode mail might not be displayed successfully. The maximum size of image displays is 176 dots horizontally and 396 dots vertically. When the size exceeds the maximum, the image display is trimmed. Some decorations inserted into the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer might not be displayed correctly. The Web To, Phone To, AV Phone To, or Mail To function might not be available to the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer.

## Function menu

While the Inbox Folder List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Add folder	p.228
Auto-sort	p.245
Edit folder name	p.228
Security ON/OFF	p.229
Delete folder	p.230
Memory info	p.237
Open folder	p.230
Delete read	p.238
Delete all	p.239

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Inbox List is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Move this	p.231
Display all	p.233
Sort	p.233
Filter	p.234
List setting	p.234
Read all	p.235
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
Unprotect all	p.236
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
UIM operation	p.227
Mail info	p.236
No. of messages	p.237
Move trash box	p.232
Delete this	p.239
Delete selected	p.239
Delete read	p.240
Delete all SMS-R	p.224
Delete all	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Received Mail detailed display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Reply	p.187
Reply with quote	p.187
Forward	p.188
Move	p.231
Copy	p.241
Add to address	p.241
Add to phonebook	p.242
Save data	p.189, 190, 193
Save image inMsg	p.189
URL	p.195
Add desktop icon	p.243
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
External output	p.243
UIM operation	p.227
Scroll	p.250
Character size	p.250
Move to trash	p.232
Delete	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



## Replying to Received i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS). “Reply with quote” includes the original message in your reply. You cannot use “Reply with quote” for Short Messages (SMS).

### 1 Received Mail detailed display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Reply/Reply with quote

#### Replying (or replying with quote) to multiple addresses

When the display on the right comes up, you can choose whether to reply (reply with quote) to the sender only or to all addresses.

Select “To sender” or “To all” and press

Next, go to step 2.

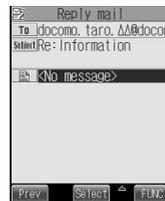


You can reply by pressing (Reply).

### 2 Enter the subject and text of the message and send.

Follow the operations from step 3 on pages 150, 158 or 212 to create mail.

When you send mail, “” changes to “”.



For “Reply”

#### Information

You cannot paste headers, signatures or quotation marks to Short Messages (SMS).

When you cannot reply to the sender (such as when the mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters), “” is displayed.

When the Draft box contains 10 items you cannot reply to mail.

“Re” is prefixed to the title of Reply and Reply with Quote i-mode mail. When the subject (including “Re:”) exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When the title of the received mail starts with “Re:”, the title of your reply will be “Re2:”. When the prefixes “Re2:” to “Re98:” have been used, the next prefixes will be “Re3:” to “Re99:”.) Just one quotation mark (see page 254) is added to the beginning of the quote in the Reply with Quote i-mode mail.

The quotation marks are not added to each line of the text.

If the total of the quotation mark and the text exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, the display appears informing you that the number of characters exceeds the maximum. Then, the display for entering the text appears; you need to delete up to the specified number of characters.

When the Reply with Quote i-mode mail includes an attachment, an alarm sounds and the message “Attached file is deleted” is displayed. Press to delete the file and to return to the previous display.

If the text of i-mode mail contains pasted data, this data cannot be quoted in your reply. Also, the pasted data cannot be quoted when using data link software or Ir exchange. See page 145 for pasted data.

If the text of Decoration mail contains images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, such images will be deleted when the reply is sent.



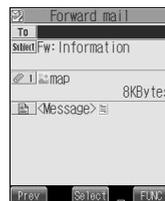
## Forwarding Received i-mode Mail

You can forward the i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS) received by the FOMA phone to others.

**1** Received Mail detailed display ( **FUNC** ) **Forward**

**2** Enter the address and send the mail.

Follow the operations from step 2 on pages 150, or 212 to create mail.  
After you send mail, “” changes to “”.



### Information

You cannot paste headers, signatures or the quotation marks to Short Messages (SMS).

When the Draft box contains 10 items, you cannot forward mail.

“Fw:” is prefixed to the title of Forward i-mode mail. When the subject (including “Fw:”) exceeds 15 full-pitch characters, the excess part is deleted. (When the title of the received mail starts with “Fw:”, the title will be “Fw2:”. When the prefixes “Fw2:” to “Fw98:” have been used, the next prefixes will be “Fw3:” to “Fw99:”.)

You can add the text of the message, edit it, and edit the subject. The Forward i-mode mail can consist of the equivalent of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters maximum, including the received message, added text, header, signature, and attached melodies and images.

If the Forward i-mode mail contains (as attachments or pasted in the text) melodies or images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, the message appears to tell you that those files will be deleted.

Press to delete the melodies or images, and the mail forwarding display appears.

If the text of i-mode mail contains pasted data, this data cannot be quoted in forwarded mail. Also, the pasted data cannot be quoted when using data link software or Ir exchange. See page 145 for pasted data.

If the text of Decoration mail contains images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA phone to other devices, such images will be deleted when the mail is forwarded.

## Displaying/Saving Attached Images

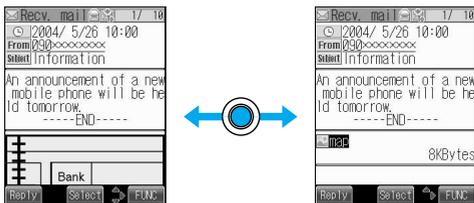
### Display Image



You can display attached images and their file names.

#### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ Select an attached image ▶

Image display and file name display switches each time you press .



#### Information

Images inserted into the text of Deco mail are displayed automatically. Images attached to Deco mail are not displayed automatically.

The image displayed from the i-mode mail and that from the Image viewer might differ. To correctly display the image, you need to once save the image to the "i-mode" folder, and then display it from the image viewer.

In this manual, some displays take file names instead of displaying image.

### Save Data



You can save images attached to i-mode mail to the "i-mode" folder (see page 318). You can set the saved images as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display.

#### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ Select an attached image ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save data ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To set the image to a display such as Stand-by display, see page 187 of "Basics" manual.

### Save Image in Message



You can save the image inserted into the main text of Deco Mail to the "i-mode" folder (see page 318). The saved image can be set for Stand-by display or Wake-up display.

#### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save image inMsg ▶ Select an image ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

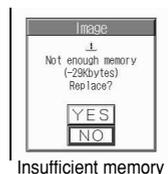
To set the image for a display such as Stand-by display, see page 187 of "Basics" manual.

### When images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of images is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary images and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .
2. Select the folder containing the image to be deleted and press .
3. Change the image to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press  to switch to the gray display.
4. Press  (Finish).  
You cannot use  in Viewer style.
5. Select "YES" and press .
- To cancel, select "NO" and press .



## <Play Melody><Save Melody>

### Playing/Saving Attached Melodies

#### Play Melody



You can play attached or pasted melodies.

- 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ Select an attached or pasted melody ▶ 

#### Information

You cannot play back melodies during a call.

#### Save Data



You can save melodies attached or pasted to i-mode mail to "Original tone" (see page 388). You can then set the saved melodies as ring tones.

When the sender's device is not a FOMA P900iV, received melodies might not be played back successfully.

- 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ Select an attached or pasted melody ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Save data ▶ YES

Next, follow the operations from step 3 on page 70 to set melodies as ring tones.

When multiple melodies are attached or pasted, use  to select the image to be saved, and then proceed.

#### Information

When "Pasted melody" is set to "Invalid", you cannot play back or save melodies using data pasted in the text of i-mode mail.

When the pasted melody is larger than 10,000 bytes, "  " is displayed and the melody cannot be played back or saved.

When multiple data items are pasted, the pasted data itself might not be displayed even when "Pasted melody" is set to "Valid".

## Downloading i-motion from i-motion Mail

### Download i-motion



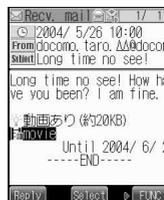
By selecting the icon in received i-motion mail, you can download the i-motion held at the i-motion mail center.

1

**Inbox** ▶ **Select the folder to be displayed** ▶

▶ **Select mail with i-motion pasted** ▶

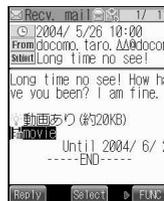
Display mail that has the " " icon.



2

**Select the pasted i-motion** ▶

If " " is displayed, you cannot download the i-motion.



i-motion downloading begins.

To cancel downloading midway, press for at least one second. However, this might be too late to stop downloading the i-motion.



### 3 Press .



When " " is displayed, press  to play it back.  
For the operations during playback, see page 358.  
For saving i-motion, see page 193.  
If " " is displayed, you cannot play back or save the i-motion.



#### Information

When "Pasted i-motion" is set to "Invalid", you cannot download i-motion using data pasted into the text of i-mode mail.  
When multiple data items are pasted, the pasted data itself might not be displayed even when "Pasted i-motion" is set to "Valid".  
Even when you use Reply or Forward to send mail with i-motion pasted, you cannot quote pasted i-motion. Also, you cannot quote the pasted i-motion when using data link software or Ir exchange.  
You cannot download i-motion in ASF format.



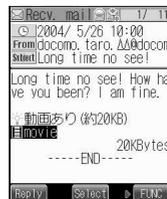
You can save downloaded i-motion pasted to i-mode mail to the “i-mode” folder (see page 356).

## 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display

▶ Select a downloaded i-motion ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save data

▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

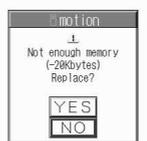


### When i-motion files are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of i-motion files is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary i-motion files and then save new ones.

1. Select “YES” and press .
  2. Select the folder containing the i-motion file to be deleted and press .
  3. Change i-motion file to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press to switch to the gray display.
  4. Press (Finish).  
You cannot use in Viewer style.
  5. Select “YES” and press .
- To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Insufficient memory



You can delete i-motion held at the i-motion mail center. You can delete i-motion left at the i-motion center in deleting i-motion mail by “Receive option”, or can delete i-motion pasted to i-motion mail.

**1** **iMenu** ▶ **メニューリスト (Menu List)** ▶ **i モーションメール動画削除 (Delete i-motion)**

**2** Put the check marks for the i-motion to be deleted.

“” and “” switch each time you press .  
 .....Deletes.  
 .....Does not delete.



**3** “選択したメールの動画を「削除」(Delete the i-motion of selected mail)”  
 ▶ **決定 (OK)**

To cancel, select “キャンセル (Cancel)” and press .

#### To delete all i-motion held at the i-motion mail center

1. After step 1 on this page, select “全てのメールの動画を削除”(Delete i-motion of all mail)” and press .

2. Select “決定 (OK)” and press .

To cancel, select “キャンセル (Cancel)” and press .



#### Information

You can receive the text of i-motion mail even if the i-motion pasted to the i-motion mail has been deleted at the i-motion mail center. Moreover, even if the i-motion has been deleted, “動画あり(約 x x KB)(i-motion exists (approx.XX KB))” and i-motion icon are indicated in the received mail. If you select the icon and try to download the i-motion data, an error message appears.



You can display the URL of the site of the i-motion pasted to i-mode mail. Up to 100 half-pitch characters can be displayed.

### 1 Received Mail detailed display ▶ Select an i-motion

▶ (FUNC) ▶ URL

If "📧" or "📧" is displayed, the URL cannot be displayed.

Select "OK" and press to return to the previous display.



## i-motion auto play



Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set i-motion to be played back automatically after downloading. Also, you can set it to be played during downloading.

### 1 ▶ Mail settings ▶ i-motion auto play

ON .....Plays automatically during or after downloading.

OFF .....Does not play automatically during or after downloading.



# Setting whether to Receive Attached Files

Setting at purchase  
All ON

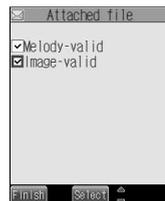
You can set whether to receive the attached files. Set for images and melodies, respectively.

**1** **Mail settings** **Attached file** **Put check marks**  
**for the attached file to receive**

"" and "" switch each time you press .

.....Receives.

.....Does not receive.



**2** Press (**Finish**).

### Information

When an attachment is sent to you while the check box is set to "", the attachment will be deleted at the i-mode center.

You can receive melodies if you have checked "Melody-valid", but they might not be played back successfully if they are sent from devices other than FOMA P900iV.



## Setting whether to Play Melodies Automatically

Setting at purchase  
ON

You can set whether to play back the attached or pasted melodies automatically for when you display the text of received mail.

1



▶ Mail settings ▶ Play melody setting

ON .....Plays melody automatically.

OFF.....Does not play melody automatically.

### Information

Even when "Play melody setting" is set to "ON", melodies might not be played back successfully if sent from devices other than FOMA P900iV.

## Performing Settings such as Mail Address Change or Mail Rejection

### Change Mail Address



You can change the part of your mail address preceding the “@” mark (the underlined part of docomo. ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp). You can enter from 3 to 30 half-pitch alphanumerics plus the punctuation marks “\_” (underbar), “.” (period), and “-” (hyphen). The first character must be a letter of the alphabet.

**When changing your address, it is advisable to make it as long as possible, and to mix letters of the alphabet with numbers so that it is not easily guessed.**

**1** iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ Change Mail Address

**2** Select the “1st preference” text box   
 ▶ Enter your first preference mail address

You cannot change the part after the “@” mark.

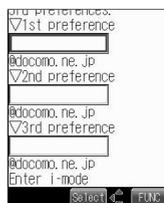
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.

You can use half-pitch alphanumerics plus “\_”, “.” and “-”, but be sure to use a letter of the alphabet for the first character. Further, mail cannot be sent to or received from some providers when the address includes consecutive “.” or ends with “.”.

There is no difference in upper- and lower-case for entering English characters.

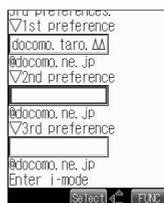
You can enter from 3 to 30 characters.

You cannot use spaces.



**3** Follow the same procedure as above to enter your 2nd and 3rd preferences.

If you do not need to enter your second and third preferences, go to step 4.



## 4 Select the text box for i-mode password ▶

### ▶ Enter your i-mode password ▶



The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\* ”.  
At purchase, your i-mode password is “0000”.  
See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



## 5 Enter

The address change is completed when the changed address is displayed.  
As soon as you complete changing the address, you can use the new one. Note, however, that any mail to your former mail address will not be deliverable and will be returned to the sender with an error message.  
The mail held at the i-mode center before changing its address can be received even after its address was changed.



### Information

Note that once you change your mail address, you might not be able to revert to the former one at a later time.  
If you change your mail address to the format “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, perform “Reset Mail Address”.  
If you have been using i-mode with the mova service, you can continue to use the mail address as is.

## Confirm Mail Address



You can check what your current mail address is.

1



iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings

▶ Confirm Mail Address



## Register a Secret Code



When using a mail address with the format “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, you can register a secret code (four digits) so that any mail without the code is rejected and an error message is returned to the sender. This function helps block unwanted mail. After you register the secret code, it is hidden in mail you send so that receivers cannot display it.

You can register the secret code only when your mail address is a phone number.

Perform “Reset Mail Address” on the mail setting display and then register.

1



iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings

▶ Other Settings (for Mail Address) ▶ Register a Secret Code

2

Select the Secret Code text box



▶ Enter the secret code

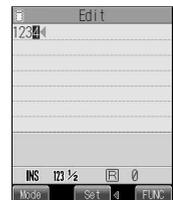


The entry mode is “Numeric”.

Set four numbers as your secret code.

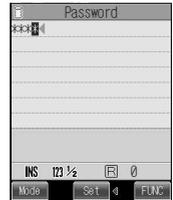
You cannot set “0000”.

When you send mail the secret code is hidden, so the recipient cannot send Reply mail to the sender as is.



### 3 Select the text box for i-mode password ▶

▶ Enter your i-mode password ▶



The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.\*.  
At purchase, your i-mode password is “0000”.  
See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.

### 4 Enter



Your new mail address is displayed.

The four-digit number after the phone number is the secret code that you have set.

As soon as you complete the change, you can use your new mail address. Note, however, that any mail to your former mail address will not be deliverable and will be returned to the sender with an error message.

The mail held at the i-mode center before registering the secret code can be received even after it was changed.

#### Information

To cancel the registered secret code, perform “Reset Mail Address”.

If you send mail to the mail address other than that of DoCoMo mobile phone, you may not receive an error message telling that the address is indefinite.

Even if you register the secret code, you will still be able to receive Short Messages (SMS).



This function is for changing your mail address into the format “phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

Note that once you reset your mail address, you might not be able to revert to the former one at a later time.

- 

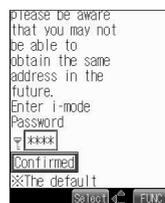
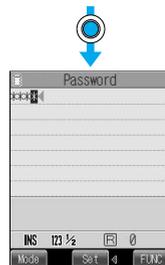
**iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings**  
**▶ Other Settings (for Mail Address) ▶ Reset Mail Address**

- Select the text box for i-mode password**   
**▶ Enter your i-mode password** 

The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.

At purchase, your i-mode password is “0000”.

See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



- Confirmed**

The display appears for confirming, and Reset Mail Address is completed.

As soon as you complete the change, you can use your new mail address. Note, however, that any mail to your former mail address will not be deliverable and will be returned to the sender with an error message.

The mail held at the i-mode center before resetting the address can be received even after it was reset.

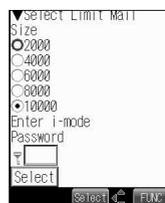


You can set a limit to the data size of the text of i-mode mail you receive.

- iMenu** ▶ **English** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Mail Settings**

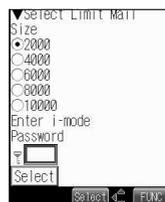


Press to change to .  
Initial setting is "10000".



- Select the text box for i-mode password**

▶ **Enter your i-mode password**



The entered i-mode password is displayed as " \* ".  
At purchase, your i-mode password is "0000".  
See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



- Select**

The display appears for confirming, and the mail size limit is set.



## Information

When the number of characters in the text of i-mode mail exceeds the set limit, the i-mode center inserts “/” or “//” at the end of the message and deletes the excess part. You cannot view the deleted part.

When the number of characters in the text of received mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode center deletes any melody data, i-cppli data and i-motion data that is pasted into the text of the i-mode mail. If the volume of data pasted to received mail exceeds the data volume equivalent to the set limit, these will be deleted as well.

## Mail Rejection



You can use the reject mail settings to block mail.

### Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail

- You can receive or reject mail that contains the header “未承諾広告” (“unsolicited ad”) in its subject field. This means you can block unwelcome advertising and promotion mail. **The default setting is “Reject” so you do not need to set this function if you want to reject unsolicited ads.** (Senders of unsolicited mail are legally obliged to prefix the subject with “未承諾広告” (six full-pitch characters).)

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

The mail held at the i-mode center before setting Mail rejection can be received even after it was set.

### Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders

- You can reject receiving i-mode mail sent from a single i-mode phone (including the mova) per day from 200th times and onward. **The default is “Reject” so you do not need to set this function to reject mass i-mode mail senders.**

For details, see “FOMA i-mode User’s Manual”.

### Receive/Reject only i-mode mail

- Receive mail from i-mode phones only. (You will not receive mail sent via the Internet.)
- Reject mail from i-mode phones. (You will not receive mail sent from i-mode phones.)

### Receive/Reject Selected Mail

- Receive mail from specified addresses only.
- Reject mail from specified addresses.

### Receive from Selected Domain

- Receive mail from i-mode phones, other mobile phones, PHSs (except DoCoMo’s Paldio E-mail and ASTEL group) and specified domains.

You can set Mail rejection separately for other mobile phones and PHSs.

A domain refers to the part of the mail address after the “@” mark (e.g. the underlined part of □□□□@△△△△.ne.jp).

### Receive/Reject only i-mode mail

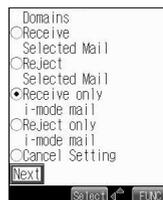
1



iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings

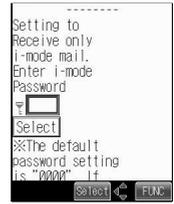
▶ Reject/Receive Mail Settings ▶ Receive only i-mode mail/Reject only i-mode mail ▶ Next

Press to change to .

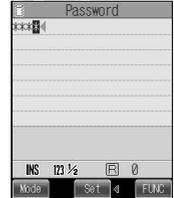


## 2 Select the text box for i-mode password ▶

▶ Enter your i-mode password ▶



The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.\*  
At purchase, your i-mode password is “0000”.  
See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



## 3 Select

The display appears for confirming, and the setting is completed.

The mail held at the i-mode center before setting Mail rejection can be received even after it was set.



### Information

Once this setting is done, any mail set for rejection will not be delivered; it will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

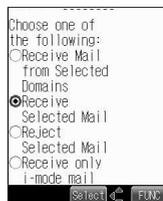
You cannot use “Receive/Reject only i-mode mail”, “Receive/Reject Selected Mail”, and “Receive Mail from Selected Domains” at the same time. You can use “Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail” at the same time as the other settings.

If you set “Receive only i-mode mail”, you might not be able to receive NTT DoCoMo’s charge notice report services or the e-billing service.

Even if you set “Reject only i-mode mail”, you will still be able to receive mail from “Friend Mail 12” of “i-mode mail plus”.

**1**   **iMenu** **English** **Options** **Mail Settings**  
**▶ Reject/Receive Mail Settings ▶ Receive Selected Mail/Reject Selected Mail ▶ Next**

Press  to change to .



**2** **Select a text box for specifying an address**   
**▶ Enter an address**  **Register**

You can specify up to 20 addresses for selected receiving/rejecting.

Select "AllClear" and press : then the address is cleared.



See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



**3** **Select the text box for i-mode password**   
**▶ Enter your i-mode password** 

The entered i-mode password is displayed as " \* ".

At purchase, your i-mode password is "0000".

See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



# 4 Select



The display appears for confirming, and the setting is completed.

The mail held at the i-mode center before setting can be received even after it was set.

## Information

When specifying i-mode phones, you do not need to enter the part after the "@" mark.

You cannot set addresses and domains in Japanese characters.

You cannot use "Receive/Reject only i-mode mail", "Receive/Reject Selected Mail", and "Receive Mail from Selected Domains" at the same time. You can use "Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail" at the same time as the other settings.

Once this setting is done, any mail set for rejection will not be delivered; it will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

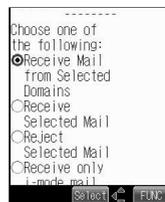
If you have been using some information delivery service by mail, you cannot receive such mail after you set Receive Selected Mail. Register the mail address for the service.

For using i-mode sites, you may need to receive mail for confirming the use of the contents. Set the mail addresses of such sites beforehand so that you can receive mail from them.

You cannot use this function to reject Short Messages (SMS).

## Receive Mail from Selected Domains

- 1   iMenu ▶ English ▶ Option ▶ Mail Settings ▶ Reject/Receive Mail Settings ▶ Receive Mail from Selected Domains ▶ Next



- 2 Put check marks for other mobile phones or PHSs than DoCoMo you want to receive mail from.

"

.....Receives.

.....Does not receive.

If you do not specify the domain name or mail address you want to receive mail from select "Register", press  and skip to step 4.



### 3 Select the text box for domains/addresses you wish to receive ▶ ▶ Enter domains/addresses you wish to receive ▶ ▶ Register

You can specify up to 20 domains/addresses.

Select "AllClear" and press  : then the address is cleared.

Enter the domain name to the field after @ of mail address.

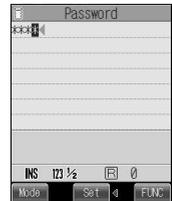
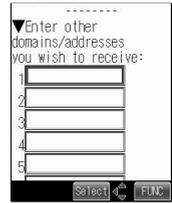
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.

### 4 Select the text box for i-mode password ▶ ▶ Enter your i-mode password ▶

The entered i-mode password is displayed as "\*" .

At purchase, your i-mode password is "0000".

See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



## 5 Select



The setting is completed when the confirmation display appears.

The mail held at the i-mode center before setting can be received even after it was set.

### Information

You cannot set addresses and domains in Japanese characters.

You cannot use "Receive/Reject only i-mode mail", "Receive/Reject Selected Mail", and "Receive Mail from Selected Domains" at the same time. You can use "Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail" at the same time as the other settings.

If you specified a domain, you will receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, charge notice report services, and e-billing service, so you will not have to specify the domains such as "docomo.ne.jp". If you specify the domains above, you will receive nuisance mail pretended to be sent from i-mode phones.

If you have specified domains, you will receive mail only from addresses ending in a specified domain.

Once this setting is done, any mail set for rejection will not be delivered; it will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

If you have been using some information delivery service by mail, you cannot receive such mail after you set Receive from Specified Domain. Register the mail address or domain for the service.

When you are using i-mode sites, you may need to receive mail for confirming the use of the contents. Set the mail addresses or domains of such sites beforehand so that you can receive mail from them.

You cannot use this function to reject Short Messages (SMS).

### Confirm Rejection Settings



You can confirm the current settings such as for mail rejection.

1



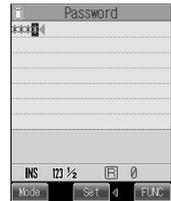
iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ Confirm Settings



If you do not intend using the i-mode mail, you can suspend the Mail function at the i-mode center. Once you suspend the Mail function, any mail to your address will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

**1**   iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail settings ▶ Suspend Mail

**2** Select the text box for i-mode password   
 ▶ Enter your i-mode password 



The entered i-mode password is displayed as “\*”.  
 At purchase, your i-mode password is “0000”.  
 See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.



**3** Select

When the display appears for confirmation, the Mail function is suspended.  
 The Mail function is suspended as soon as the setting is completed.  
 Note that while the Mail function is suspended, any mail to you will be undeliverable and will be returned to the sender with an address unknown error message.

## Information

Any i-mode mail held at the i-mode center before suspending the Mail function will be kept for 30 days (720 hours) from the time that it arrived, so you can receive it by "Check new message".

While the Mail function is suspended, no new mail will be kept at the i-mode center.

Note that if you send mail or perform "Check new message" while the Mail function is suspended, you will be charged the packet transmission fee for connecting to the center.

If you resume the Mail function after suspending it, you might not be able to use your former address.

## Reactivate Mail Functions

You can resume the Mail function after you have suspended it.

When you resume the Mail function, your mail address will be "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".

**1**   **iMenu ▶ English ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings**

**2** **Select the text box for your i-mode password**   
**▶ Enter your i-mode password** 

The entered i-mode password is displayed as " \* ".

At purchase, your i-mode password is "0000".

See page 35 for information about the i-mode password.

**3** **Select**

The display appears for confirming, and the Mail function is reactivated.



i-mode Mail

i-mode Mail Settings

## Information

The Reject Mail settings remain as they were before you suspended the Mail function.



# Composing Short Messages (SMS) to Send

You can compose and send new Short Messages (SMS).

(Short Messages (SMS) can be sent only to the FOMA phones.)

<Example>

Address:090XXXXXXX

## 1 Compose SMS

If the Draft box already contains 10 items, you cannot compose Short Messages. Send or delete the draft mail and then compose the message.

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing ( ) from the Stand-by display.



<Short Message (SMS) Composition display>

## 2 Select the address field Enter the destination phone number

Only one address can be specified.

See page 153 to enter the address using the Phonebook or records.

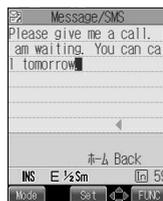


## 3 Select the text field of the message Enter the message

You can send the text up to 70 full-pitch characters (up to 160 when alphanumerics are only used).

You can enter up to 80 full-pitch or 160 half-pitch characters; however the number of characters you can send is up to 70 full-pitch or 160 half-pitch characters (except . , ' , ' , { , } [ , ] , | , ~ , ~ , ~ , ~ , ^ , ~ , ~).

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## 4 Press ().

You can also send the message by pressing (), selecting "Send" from the Function menu, and pressing .

The animation display to indicate sending appears.



## 5 OK



## Information

Depending on the signal status, the characters might not be sent successfully to the destination.

When the number of sent mail items exceeds the FOMA phone's storage maximum, they will be overwritten starting from the oldest sent mail. However, protected sent mail cannot be overwritten.

If you do not send the mail and instead press (キャンセル) or (送信), the message "Cancel and discard work in progress?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press (決定) to delete all the text entered so far. Select "NO" and press (戻る) to return to the previous display.

If you attempt to send the Short Message (SMS) to a phone number headed by "184" or "186", the message "Send without prefix numbers?" will be displayed. Select "YES" and press (決定) to delete "184" or "186" and send the mail. Select "NO" and press (戻る) to return to the previous display.

Even if "Notify Caller ID" is set to "OFF" (see page 301 of "Basics" manual), the Caller ID is notified to the other party you have sent Short Message (SMS).

You cannot send the message to addresses that include any characters other than numbers, "\*" and "#".

You can enter line feeds while editing the text of the message. Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character. Each space is counted as a character.

### Function menu

While the Short Message (SMS) Composition display is displayed, press (F) (FUNC) to display the following items.

Send	p.212
Preview	See this page
Save	p.217
Look-up address	p.153
SMS report req.	p.225
SMS valid. per.	p.225
Erase message	p.156
Delete	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Preview



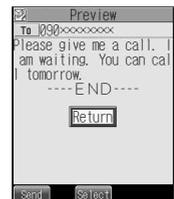
Before sending the message, you can check the contents of the address and text of the message.

### 1 Short Message (SMS) Composition display ▶ (F) (FUNC)

#### ▶ Preview

After checking, press (決定).

Press (送信) (Send) to send the message.



## Delete



You can delete the Short Message (SMS) during editing.

### 1 Short Message (SMS) Composition display ▶ (F) (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (決定).



# Displaying Sent/Unsent Short Messages (SMS)

You can save a combined total of 400 sent messages (Short Messages and i-mode mail). You can check the sent Short Messages (SMS).

1



▶ **Outbox** ▶ Select the folder to be displayed ▶



You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing from the Stand-by display.



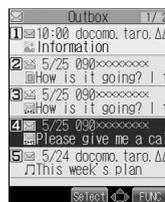
<Outbox Folder List>

2

▶ **Select the Short Message (SMS) to be displayed** ▶



When there are six or more items (11 or more items if 1 line display is set), use to display the next or previous pages.



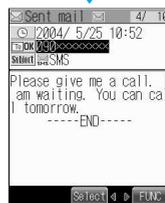
<Outbox List>

Use to check other messages.

When the text of the message is long, you can use to scroll. Also, you can press



to scroll by page.



<Sent Mail detailed display>

### Function menu

While the Outbox Folder List is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Auto-sort	p.245
Security ON/OFF	p.229
Delete folder	p.230
Memory info	p.237
Open folder	p.230
Delete all	p.238

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Outbox List is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

<a href="#">Move this</a>	p.231
<a href="#">Display all</a>	p.233
<a href="#">Sort</a>	p.233
<a href="#">Filter</a>	p.234
<a href="#">List setting</a>	p.234
<a href="#">Protect ON/OFF</a>	p.235
<a href="#">Unprotect all</a>	p.236
<a href="#">Ir exchange</a>	p.402
<a href="#">Export to SD</a>	p.410
<a href="#">UIM operation</a>	p.227
<a href="#">No. of messages</a>	p.237
<a href="#">Delete this</a>	p.239
<a href="#">Delete selected</a>	p.239
<a href="#">Delete all</a>	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Sent Mail detailed display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

<a href="#">Edit</a>	p.216
<a href="#">Move</a>	p.231
<a href="#">Copy</a>	p.241
<a href="#">Add to address</a>	p.241
<a href="#">Add to phonebook</a>	p.242
<a href="#">Save data</a>	p.189, 190, 193
<a href="#">Save image inMsg</a>	p.189
<a href="#">Add desktop icon</a>	p.243
<a href="#">Protect ON/OFF</a>	p.235
<a href="#">External output</a>	p.243
<a href="#">UIM operation</a>	p.227
<a href="#">Disp. SMS report</a>	p.216
<a href="#">Scroll</a>	p.250
<a href="#">Character size</a>	p.250
<a href="#">Delete</a>	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



## Saving Composed Short Messages (SMS) to Send Later

### Saving Short Messages (SMS)



When you are composing or editing a Short Message (SMS), you can save it to the Draft box.

#### 1 Short Message (SMS) Composition display (FUNC) Save

You cannot save an item when the address and text of the message are empty.

### Editing/Sending Saved Short Messages (SMS)



You can edit a draft Short Message (SMS) and send it.

You can save up to 10 messages including i-mode mail.

#### 1 Draft

You can also display "Mail menu" by pressing (MAIL) from the Stand-by display.



<Draft List>

#### 2 Select the Short Message (SMS) to be edited

Next, follow the operations from step 2 on page 212 to create the message.

#### Function menu

While the Draft List is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

List setting	p.234
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
No. of messages	p.237
Delete this	p.239
Delete selected	p.239
Delete all	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## <Receiving Short Messages (SMS)>

### Receiving Short Messages (SMS) Automatically

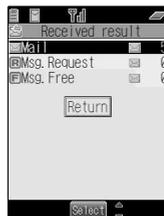
You can save up to 1000 received Short Messages (SMS) including i-mode mail. You can set the ring tone for incoming Short Messages (SMS) with “Select ring tone” (see page 179 of “Basics” manual), and can change the flickering pattern of the Call/Charging Indicator for incoming Short Messages (SMS) with “Illumination” (see page 170 of “Basics” manual).

- 1** When a Short Message (SMS) arrives, “ (pink)” lights and the message “Mail Receiving...” is displayed.



When receiving ends, the display shows the number of received Short Messages (SMS).

You can display the Inbox List by selecting “Mail” and pressing .



The previous display returns if no key is pressed for 15 seconds.

(The actual number of seconds varies depending on the setting for “i-mode ringing time”.)

“” appears on the desktop.

Press , select “”, and press  to display the Inbox List.



When previous display was Stand-by display

## Information

When the total number of messages held in the FOMA phone's Inbox (the total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail) exceeds 1000, the messages will be overwritten in the priority of ① mail in "Trash box", and ② oldest received mail. However, unread or protected mail is not overwritten.

When the number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new messages can be received and "📧 (gray)" is displayed. To be able to receive Short Messages (SMS), delete mail in the Inbox or open unread mail or release protected mail until "📧 (gray)" clears, and then perform "Check new SMS".

The priority for the ring tone and illumination settings when a Short Message (SMS) is received is as follows:

- ① Individual settings of address (phone number) (see page 182 of "Basics" manual)
- ② Group settings (see page 183 of "Basics" manual)
- ③ Select Ring Tone (see page 179 of "Basics" manual), Illumination (see page 170 of "Basics" manual)

If you receive multiple i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F at a time, the ring tone sounds and illumination flickers in accordance with the terms set for the last i-mode mail messages, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F.

The ring tone does not sound when you receive a Short Message (SMS) in the status other than Stand-by display with "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred". When "Alarm preferred" is set, the ring tone sounds and the Reception Result display appears. (See page 252)

When you receive a Short Message (SMS) while the FOMA phone is closed, the information will be displayed in the Private Window.

If you receive a Short Message (SMS) while an i-motion is being played back, the images and the sound might be cut off.





## Checking whether Center Holds Short Messages (SMS)

When Short Messages (SMS) arrive at the Short Message Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA phone, but will be held at the center if your FOMA phone is off, out of the service area, or cannot receive messages because its memory is full.

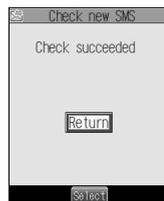
You can receive the messages by checking the Short Message Center.

### 1 Check new SMS

If the Short Message Center has any messages for you, they will be delivered automatically.



### 2 Press .



#### Information

Sometimes, Short Messages (SMS) are not delivered immediately after checking.

You cannot check messages when out of the service area.

When icons such as  (gray) or  are displayed, the FOMA phone cannot receive any more Short Messages (SMS). Delete unnecessary mail, or open unnecessary unread mail, or release protection. (Read and unprotected messages are overwritten automatically in order from the oldest items.)

You cannot use this function to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Use "Check new message" to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F.



# Reading Received Short Messages (SMS)

When your FOMA phone is in the service area, it automatically receives Short Messages (SMS) and SMS Reports from the Short Message Center.

When a Short Message (SMS) arrives, “ (pink)” appears at the top of the display.

**1**

**Inbox** **Select the folder to be displayed**

You can also display “Mail menu” by pressing () from the Stand-by display. At purchase, you can only select “Inbox”, “Dimo i 絵文字メール (Dimo i pictograph mail)” and “Trash box”.



<Inbox Folder List>

**2**

**Select the Short Message (SMS) to be displayed**

When you select an unread Short Message (SMS), “” changes to “”.

When there are six or more items (11 or more items, if 1 line display is set), use to display the next or previous pages.



<Inbox List>



Use to check other mail.

When the text of the message is long, you can use to scroll. Also, you can press

or to scroll by page.



<Received Mail detailed display>

Inbox

Short Message (SMS)



- 1** Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second Use to select
- 2** Use to select “Inbox”
- 3** Use to select the folder to be displayed
- 4** Use to select the Short Message (SMS) to be displayed

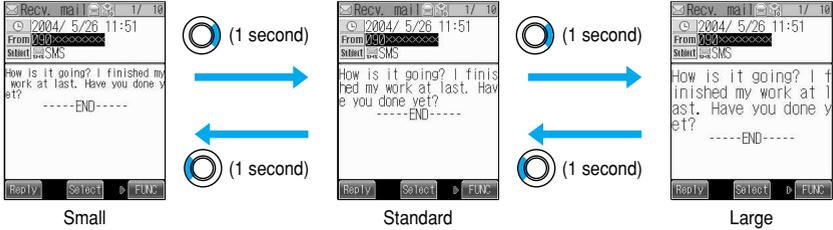
### Display light

The display lights for about 15 seconds when you open the FOMA phone, press a key, send or receive Short Messages (SMS).

(The display does not light when "Lighting" of "Display light" (see page 195 of "Basics" manual) is set to "OFF".)

### Switching Short Message (SMS) display

You can change the size of the font of the Short Message (SMS) detailed display (text of message).



### Information

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will resume automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will be resumed.

When you use the above operation to switch the font size, the setting for "Character size" also changes.

You cannot use this function in Viewer style.

### Information

Spaces will be displayed in the received Short Message (SMS) whenever it contains characters other than half-pitch alphanumeric and symbols (except 。 「 」 { } [ ] | \ . \* ^ ` ~) including Russian and Greek letters, certain symbols, and full-pitch characters that are not in the Kuten Code List. (See page 350 of "Basics" manual)

While the phone number of the sender is highlighted, you can press  to dial it (the Phone To function).

Further, if the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In this case you can dial the phone number in the same way.

SMS Reports are delivered only if you have requested delivery in the SMS Report Request setting.

You can also check by "Confirming Result of a Sent Short Message (SMS)" of Sent Mail. (See page 216)

The FOMA phone receives Short Mail as Short Messages (SMS). When the Caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed on the sender's side.

### Function menu

While the Inbox Folder List is displayed, press  (  ) to display the following items.

Add folder	p.228
Auto-sort	p.245
Edit folder name	p.228
Security ON/OFF	p.229
Delete folder	p.230
Memory info	p.237
Open folder	p.230
Delete read	p.238
Delete all	p.239

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the Inbox List is displayed, press  (  ) to display the following items.

Move this	p.231
Display all	p.233
Sort	p.233
Filter	p.234
List setting	p.234
Read all	p.235
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
Unprotect all	p.236
Ir exchange	p.402
Export to SD	p.410
UIM operation	p.227
Mail info	p.236
No. of messages	p.237
Move trash box	p.232
Delete this	p.239
Delete selected	p.239
Delete read	p.240
Delete all SMS-R	p.224
Delete all	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can delete all the SMS Reports in the Inbox folder.

**1** **Inbox List** ( **FUNC** ) **Delete all SMS-R** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

You cannot delete protected SMS Reports.

If you perform "Delete all SMS-R" after displaying SMS Reports using the Filter function, only the displayed SMS Reports will be deleted.

### Function menu

While the Received Mail detailed display is displayed, press ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Reply	p.187
Reply with quote	p.187
Forward	p.188
Move	p.231
Copy	p.241
Add to address	p.241
Add to phonebook	p.242
Save data	p.189, 190, 193
Save image inMsg	p.189
URL	p.195
Add desktop icon	p.243
Protect ON/OFF	p.235
External output	p.243
UIM operation	p.227
Scroll	p.250
Character size	p.250
Move to trash	p.232
Delete	p.240

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Setting Details for Short Messages (SMS)

### SMS Report Request



Setting at purchase  
OFF

You can set whether to request an SMS Report (delivery report) for when sending Short Message (SMS). The SMS Report lets you know whether your Short Message (SMS) was delivered to the destination.

#### 1 Mail settings ▶ SMS report request (SMS report req.)

ON .....Reports when a Short Message (SMS) is delivered to its destination.

OFF .....Does not report when a Short Message (SMS) is delivered to its destination.

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can press  () and select "SMS report req."

#### Information

You can check the Inbox for received SMS Reports.

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can set this setting by "SMS report req." of the Function menu.

### SMS Validity Period



Setting at purchase  
3 days

You can set the length of time that Short Messages (SMS) are held at the Short Message Center.

#### 1 Mail settings ▶ SMS validity period (SMS valid. per.)

None .....Does not keep Short Messages.

1 day .....Keeps Short Messages for one day.

2 days .....Keeps Short Messages for two days.

3 days .....Keeps Short Messages for three days.

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can press  () and select "SMS valid. per."

#### Information

While you are composing a Short Message (SMS), you can set this setting by "SMS valid. per." of the Function menu.



Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

You can set the address and “Type of Number” for Short Messages center.

This setting is for the case you want to change from using the present SMS service you use to a different service.

- 1**   **i-mode connection**  **SMS center selection**  
 **User defined**  **Enter the address**  

You can enter up to 20 half-pitch characters.

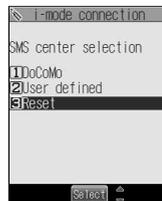
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



- 2** Select “International” or “Unknown”.

#### To reset the user setting

- In step 1 above, select “Reset” and press .
- Enter the Terminal Security Code and press .
- Select “YES” and press .  
To cancel, select “NO” and press .



#### Information

After resetting, the SMS connection center will be “DoCoMo”.



# Saving Short Messages (SMS) to UIM

You can move or copy the sent or received Short Messages (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the UIM and vice versa.

The UIM can store a combined total of 20 received and sent messages.

## 1 Outbox List/the Sent Mail detailed display/the Inbox List/the Received Mail detailed display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ UIM operation

- Move to UIM ..... Moves a Short Message (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the UIM.
- Copy to UIM ..... Copies a Short Message (SMS) from the FOMA phone to the UIM.
- Move from UIM ..... Moves a Short Message (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone.
- Copy from UIM ..... Copies a Short Message (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone.

## 2 YES

- "SMS" indicates a Short Message (SMS) in the FOMA phone.
  - "i" indicates a Short Message (SMS) in the UIM.
- To cancel, select "NO" and press .



When "Copy to UIM" is selected.

### Information

You cannot protect Short Messages (SMS) you have moved or copied to the UIM. If you copy or move protected Short Messages (SMS) to the UIM, Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM are unprotected. Also, the Reply and Forward symbols become Read symbols.

When the UIM already contains 20 Short Messages (SMS), no more can be moved or copied to it.

When the FOMA phone already contains the maximum number or volume of i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS), no more can be moved or copied to it.

If Short Messages (SMS) in the added folders or the Trash box are moved or copied from the FOMA phone to the UIM, you can check them in the Inbox folder.

When you move or copy Short Messages (SMS) from the UIM to the FOMA phone, they are moved or copied to the Inbox or Outbox folder.

## Managing Mail Messages

### Add Folder



You can add new folders to the Inbox Folder List. After adding, you can set so that mail from the addresses and phone numbers set in “Auto-sort” will be automatically saved to the specified folder. You can add up to 23 folders in addition to the “Inbox” folder, “Trash box” folder, and i-αpli mail folder.

- 1 **Inbox Folder List** ( **FUNC** ) **Add folder**
- ▶ **Enter the folder name**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



#### Information

You cannot add folders to the Outbox folder list following the above step. However, the folder for i-αpli mail is automatically created if you download mail-linked i-αpli.

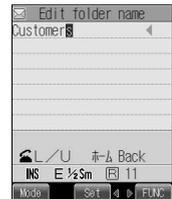
### Edit Folder Name



You can edit the name of a selected folder.

- 1 **Inbox Folder List** ( **FUNC** ) **Edit folder name**
- ▶ **Edit the folder name**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



#### Information

You cannot edit the name of the “Inbox” folder, “Trash box” folder, and i-αpli mail folder.



You can set the security for a selected folder so that it cannot be viewed by others.  
If security has already been set for the selected folder, that setting will be released.

## 1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (FUNC) Security ON/OFF Enter the Terminal Security Code YES

"" indicates that security is set for the folder.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.



### Displaying the contents of a security-activated folder

You need to enter the Terminal Security Code to view the contents of a security-activated folder.

1. Select the folder to be displayed and press .

2. Enter the Terminal Security Code and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

The folder contents will be displayed.

#### Information

When security is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu (see page 252), you need to enter the Terminal Security Code to display the Inbox Folder List and the Outbox Folder List, so do not need to enter it again to display the contents of a security-activated folder.

#### Information

You cannot delete a security-activated folder or edit its name.

## Delete Folder



You can delete a selected folder. All mail in the folder will be deleted as well.

- 1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (FUNC) Delete folder  
▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

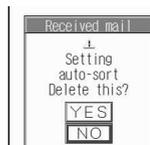
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### When "Auto-sort" is set

When "Auto-sort" is set for the folder, the display on the right comes up.

1. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Information

"Auto-sort" is released for deleted folders.

### Information

You cannot delete folders that contain protected mail or are set the security. Unprotect the mail or release the security and then delete it.

You cannot delete an i-appli mail folder if compatible mail-linked i-appli exists. If the software does not exist, you can delete the i-appli mail folder, but this will delete both folders created in the Outbox Folder List and Inbox Folder List.

## Open Folder



You can display mail in a selected folder. You can display mail in i-appli mail folder without running i-appli by executing "Open folder".

- 1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (FUNC) Open folder



You can move the received or sent mail to other folders.

# 1 Outbox List/Sent Mail detailed display/Inbox List/Received Mail detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Move this (Move) ▶ Select the destination folder ▶

## When moving mail from Outbox List or Inbox List

- Put check marks for the mail to be moved.

"

.....Moves.

.....Does not move.

Press (FUNC), select "Select all", and press to put check marks for all mail items.

Select "Release all" and press to remove all check marks.

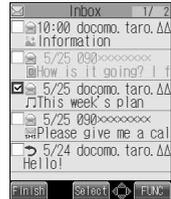
Press (FUNC), select "List setting", and press ;

then you can switch between display of name and display of mail address (phone number).

- Press (Finish), select "YES" and press .

You cannot use in Viewer style.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Information

You cannot move Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM and SMS Reports.



You can select mail and move it to the Trash box folder. Mail moved to the Trash box is preferentially overwritten (deleted).

**1** Inbox List/Received Mail detailed display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Move trash box (Move to trash)

**2** YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press (O) .

### When moving mail from Inbox List

1. Put check marks for the mail to be moved to the Trash box.

"" and "" switch each time you press (O) .

.....Moves.

.....Does not move.

Press (i) (FUNC), select "Select all", and press (O) to put check marks for all mail items.

Select "Release all" and press (O) to remove all check marks.

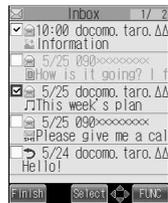
Press (i) (FUNC), select "List setting", and press (O) ;

then you can switch between display of name and display of mail address (phone number).

2. Press (M) (Finish), select "YES" and press (O) .

You cannot use (M) in Viewer style.

To cancel, select "NO" and press (O) .



### Information

Protected mail, Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM and SMS Reports cannot be moved to the Trash box.

If you move unread mail to the Trash box, it will be changed to read mail.

If you perform "Move trash box" after displaying mail using the Filter function, only the displayed mail will be moved to the Trash box.

## Display All



You can use this function to display all mail after executing the Sort or Filter function. After executing this function, mail will be displayed in “Chronological” order.

**1** Outbox List/Inbox List > (FUNC) > Display all

## Sort



You can change the order in which mail is displayed in the Inbox List and Outbox List.

**1** Outbox List/Inbox List > (FUNC) > Sort

- Chronological .....Sorts chronologically from the most recent item.
- Chronological .....Sorts chronologically from the oldest item.
- By address .....Sorts by sender’s addresses in numeric and then alphabetic order (ascending).
- By address .....Sorts by sender’s addresses in alphabetic and then numeric order (descending).
- By subject .....Sorts by subject, in order from no subject, numerals, letters of the alphabet, katakana, hiragana, kanji and pictographs (ascending).
- By subject .....Sorts by subject, in order from pictographs, kanji, hiragana, katakana, letters of the alphabet, numerals and no subject (descending).

### Information

You can use the Filter and Sort functions together. For example, to display just the unread mail in order from the oldest item, select “Unread” of the Filter function and then select “Chronological”. (To return to the former status, select “Display all”.)

Once you close each mail list, it will return to the order for “Display all” when you display the list next time.

You can also return by executing “Display all”.



You can change the type of mail displayed in the Inbox List or Outbox List. You can set the type of mail up to three times in succession.

## 1 Outbox List/Inbox List > (i) (FUNC) > Filter

- Unread <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>.....Displays unread mail only.
- Read <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>.....Displays read mail only.
- Protect (Protected) <sup>2</sup>.....Displays protected mail only.
- Melody.....Displays mail with attached melodies only.
- Image.....Displays mail with attached images only.
- i-motion.....Displays mail with attached i-motion only.
- i-αppli <sup>1</sup>.....Displays mail with pasted i-αppli only.
- SMS.....Displays Short Messages (SMS) and SMS Reports only.
- Failed <sup>3</sup>.....Displays only mail that was not sent successfully.
  - 1 Cannot be displayed when the Outbox List is selected.
  - 2 Cannot be selected when the Trash box is selected from the Inbox List.
  - 3 Cannot be displayed when the Inbox List is selected.

### Information

The selectable Filter functions for the Inbox differ from those for the Outbox.  
Once you close a filtered mail list, it will return to the list for "Display all" when you display the list next time.  
You can also return by executing "Display all".

## List Setting



You can switch between the name stored in the Phonebook and the mail address/phone number for when displaying the sender of received mail or the destination of sent mail/draft mail.

## 1 Outbox List/Draft List/Inbox List > (i) (FUNC) > List setting

### <2-line display>

- Name.....Displays the name stored in the Phonebook.
- Address.....Displays the mail address or phone number.

### <1-line display>

- Subject.....Displays the title.
- Name.....Displays the name stored in the Phonebook.
- Address.....Displays the mail address or phone number.

### Information

You can also switch among "Subject", "Name", and "Address" by pressing (#) while Inbox List, Outbox List or Draft List is displayed.



You can change unread mail in the displayed folder to read mail.

**1** Inbox List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Read all ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

**Information**

If you perform "Read all" after displaying mail using Filter function, only the displayed mail will be changed to read mail.

Protect ON/OFF



You can protect selected mail so that it is not overwritten and deleted.

If you select already protected mail, it will become unprotected.

You can protect a maximum of 500 received mail messages and a maximum of 200 sent mail messages (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail).

**1** Outbox List/Sent Mail detailed display/Inbox List/Received Mail detailed display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Protect ON/OFF

Protected mail is indicated by " ".



**Information**

When the number of received messages or sent messages in the FOMA phone (total of Short Messages (SMS) and i-mode mail) reaches the maximum, unprotected and read messages are overwritten in order from the oldest items.

You cannot protect Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.

You cannot protect messages in the Trash box folder.

## Unprotect All



You can release protection for all mail.

**1** **Outbox List/Inbox List** ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Unprotect all** ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Information

If you perform "Unprotect all" after displaying mail using the Filter function, only the displayed mail will be unprotected.

## Mail Information



You can check the sender's mail address or phone number, subject, and reception date/time of the mail selected in the Inbox List.

**1** **Inbox List** ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Mail info**

After checking, press .



You can check the number of messages stored in the Inbox folder, Trash box folder, Outbox folder, Draft box, and UIM.

### 1 Outbox List/Draft List/Inbox List (FUNC) No. of messages

#### Inbox

- In folder .....Total messages in folder. <sup>1</sup>
- Unread .....Total unread messages in folder. <sup>1</sup>
- Protected .....Total protected messages in folder.

#### Outbox

- In folder .....Total messages in folder. <sup>2</sup>
- Protected .....Total protected messages in folder.

#### Draft

- All .....Total messages in Draft box.

#### UIM

- Received .....Total received Short Messages (SMS) in UIM.
- Sent .....Total sent Short Messages (SMS) in UIM.

- 1 When you select the Inbox folder, the count includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.
- 2 When you select the Outbox folder, the count includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM.

After checking, press .



You can check the total of messages stored in all the Inbox/Outbox folders, as well as the total of unread messages, protected messages, and Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM's Inbox/Outbox.

### 1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (FUNC) Memory info

#### Inbox

- All .....Total messages in all Inbox folders. <sup>1</sup>
- Unread .....Total unread messages in all Inbox folders. <sup>1</sup>
- Protected .....Total protected messages in all folders.

#### Outbox

- All .....Total messages in all Outbox folders. <sup>1</sup>
- Protected .....Total protected messages in all Outbox folders.

#### UIM

- Received .....Total received Short Messages (SMS) in UIM.
- Sent .....Total sent Short Messages (SMS) in UIM.

- 1 Includes the Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM, and the messages in the Trash box folder and i-copli mail folders.

After checking, press .

## Deleting Mail Messages

You can delete mail in the Inbox, Outbox and Draft box. The methods of deleting messages are set out below. If you perform a Delete function after displaying mail using the Filter function, only the displayed mail will be deleted.

Deleting method	Mail that can be deleted	Display where deleting can be done
Delete all in Outbox	Mail in all Outbox folders	Folder List
Delete all read	Read mail in all Inbox folders	Folder List
Delete all in Inbox	Mail in all Inbox folders	Folder List
Delete this	Mail selected in the mail list	Mail List
Delete selected	Selected mail	Mail List
Delete read	Read mail in folders	Mail List
Delete all	All mail in displayed folder	Mail List
Delete	Mail displayed in Mail detailed display	Mail detailed display

### Delete All in Outbox



You can delete all sent messages in all Outbox folders. All sent Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will be deleted as well.

**1** Outbox Folder List (FUNC) Delete all Enter the Terminal Security Code YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM will be deleted. Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will not be deleted.

### Delete All Read



You can delete all read messages in all Inbox folders. All read Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will be deleted as well.

**1** Inbox Folder List (FUNC) Delete read YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

All unprotected read i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will be deleted.

## Delete All in Inbox



You can delete all received messages in all Inbox folders. All received Short Messages (SMS) in the UIM will be deleted as well.

### 1 Inbox Folder List (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

Unread mail will be also deleted. Short Messages (SMS) stored in the UIM will be also deleted. Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will not be deleted.

## Delete This



You can delete a selected message.

### 1 Outbox List/Draft List/Inbox List (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

Unread i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will be deleted.

Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) (Inbox and Outbox) will not be deleted. Release protection and then delete them.

## Delete Selected



You can delete multiple selected messages.

### 1 Outbox List/Draft List/Inbox List (FUNC) ▶ Delete selected ▶ Put check marks for messages to be deleted

and  switch each time you press .

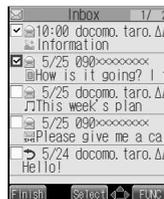
.....Deletes.

.....Does not delete.

Press (FUNC), select "Select all" and press to check all items.

Select "Release all" and press to uncheck all items.

Press (FUNC), select "List setting", and press to switch displays by name and by mail address (phone number).



### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) (Inbox and Outbox) cannot be selected.

## Delete Read



You can delete read received mail.

**1** **Inbox List** ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Delete read** ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Information

All unprotected read i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will be deleted.

## Delete All



You can delete all messages in a displayed folder.

**1** **Outbox List/Draft List/Inbox List** ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Delete all** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶ ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

Unread i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will be also deleted.

Protected i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS) will not be deleted.

## Delete



You can delete a displayed message.

**1** **Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display** ▶ ( **FUNC** ) ▶ **Delete** ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

# Useful Functions

## Copy



You can copy the text, subject, and address.

### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display (FUNC)

#### ▶ Copy

Message .....Copies the text of the message.

Subject .....Copies the subject of the message.

Address .....Copies the address or phone number.

See page 329 of “Basics” manual for details on how to copy.

If there are multiple senders (and other receivers) or destinations, use  to select the mail address or phone number to be copied, and press .

### Information

If you copy the text of the message of Deco mail while composing, the information about the decoration mail is also copied.

## Add to Address



You can store the sender (and other receivers) of the received mail and destinations of the sent mail in the Phonebook.

### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display (FUNC)

#### ▶ Add to address ▶ YES

Phone .....Stores to the Phonebook in the FOMA phone.

UIM .....Stores to the Phonebook in the UIM.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

#### For multiple senders (and other receivers) or addresses

The display on the right comes up so that you can store a sender or destination.

Use  to select the mail address or phone number to be stored and then press .

Next, go to step 2.



## 2 New/Add

New .....Stores the data in a new Phonebook entry.

Add .....Stores the data in an existing Phonebook entry.

When you select to store the data in the UIM's Phonebook, "[2] Overwrite" appears.

The mail address or phone number will be entered in the Add to Phonebook display; enter any other necessary items and store in the Phonebook.

Next, perform the operations on pages 122 to 128 of "Basics" manual to store the Phonebook entry.

See page 132 of "Basics" manual for adding (or overwriting) data to Phonebook entries.



When "New" is selected

### Information

The sender's or destination address to be stored should be within 50 half-pitch characters.

## Add to Phonebook



You can store addresses and phone numbers in the text of messages into the Phonebook.

## 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display ▶ (i) (FUNC)

### ▶ Add to phonebook ▶ YES

Phone .....Stores in the Phonebook in the FOMA phone.

UIM .....Stores in the Phonebook in the UIM.

Select the address or phone number from the text of the message and then perform this operation.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## 2 New/Add

New .....Stores the data in a new Phonebook entry.

Add .....Stores the data in an existing Phonebook entry.

When you select to store the data in the UIM's Phonebook, "[2] Overwrite" appears.

The mail address or phone number will be entered in the Add to Phonebook display; enter any other necessary items and store in the Phonebook.

Next, perform the operations on pages 122 to 128 of "Basics" manual to store the Phonebook entry.

See page 132 of "Basics" manual for adding (or overwriting) data to Phonebook entries.



When "New" is selected

### Information

You cannot add an item to the Phonebook during PIM Lock (see page 218 of "Basics" manual) or Keypad Dial Lock (see page 219 of "Basics" manual) or when any phone number has been specified for "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual).

If the data contains characters that cannot be stored in the Phonebook, those characters may become spaces.

## Add Desktop Icon



By pasting icons of senders and destinations to the desktop, you can compose mail easily with the address or phone number already entered for destination. For details, see page 201 of “Basics” manual.

### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display (FUNC)

#### ▶ Add desktop icon ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

##### For multiple senders (and other receivers) or addresses

The display on the right comes up so that you can store a sender or destination.

Use to select the mail address or phone number to be pasted and then press .

Next, select “YES”.



##### To compose new mail using the icon pasted on the desktop

1. From the Stand-by display, press .
2. Use to select an icon and press .

You cannot use in Viewer style.



“” appears when the sender or destination address of Short Message (SMS) is pasted.

Next, perform the operation from step 3 on pages 150, 158 or 212 to compose mail.



### Information

You can paste icons for only mail senders and destinations. You cannot paste mail addresses or phone numbers in the text of a message.

See page 205 of “Basics” manual for how to delete the pasted icon.

## External Output



You can send displayed mail via infrared or save it to the miniSD memory card.

### 1 Sent Mail detailed display/Received Mail detailed display (FUNC)

#### ▶ External output

Send Ir data.....Sends via Ir (see page 402).

Export to SD.....Saves to miniSD memory card (see page 410).



# Setting Ringing Duration for Mail and Messages R/F

Setting at purchase  
5 seconds

You can set the length of time the ring tone sounds for incoming i-mode mail, Short Messages (SMS) and Messages R/F.

1



## Incoming call ▶ i-mode ringing time

ON .....Sets i-mode ringing time.

OFF.....Disables the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator and display light for incoming messages.

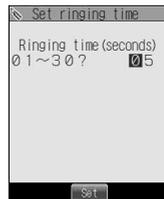
If you selected "OFF", the operation will be completed.

2

## Enter the ringing time (seconds).

Enter a two-digit number from "01" to "30".

The i-mode ringing time is set.



### Information

When "OFF" is set, "☎" will appear in the Stand-by display, and the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator and display light will not work for incoming messages.



# Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder

Mail that matches a set condition can be saved automatically to the specified folder.

To use this function, you need to add a new folder to the Inbox Folder List beforehand.

## 1 Outbox Folder List/Inbox Folder List (i) (FUNC) Auto-sort



<Auto-sort setting display (for All sort)>



<Auto-sort setting display (Address sort)>

If you select a folder for which no Auto-sort conditions have been set, the Auto-sort menu comes up.

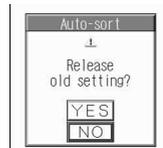


<Auto-sort Menu display>

Next, follow the operations on pages 246 to 249.

### To change the setting

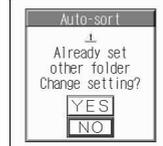
When you change a previously set condition, a confirmation display comes up. Select "YES" and press (i) to replace the set condition with the new one.



### When the same condition is set for another folder

When the same condition is set for another folder, a confirmation display comes up. Select "YES" and press (i) to release the condition set for the other folder and change the setting.

You cannot change the setting set for a security-activated folder.



### Information

From the Outbox Folder List, you can select only "All sort" to sort all messages into the i-appli mail folder.

## Information

You can store up to 700 addresses per folder. Also, you can store a total of 700 addresses in all folders.

You cannot set automatic sorting for the Inbox folder and the Trash box folder in the Inbox Folder List.

If security is activated for the Inbox and Outbox of the Mail menu (see page 252), "🔒" will be displayed for "Inbox" and "Outbox" of the Mail menu. In this case you will need to enter the Terminal Security Code.

If security is activated for an added folder (see page 229), you will need to enter the Terminal Security Code after step 1.

When multiple conditions match, sorting is done in the priority below.

- ① All sort
- ② Subject sort
- ③ Reply impossible
- ④ Address sort (Look-up address entry and direct entry)
- ⑤ Address sort (Look-up group)

### Function menu

While the Auto-sort setting display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

Address sort	See this page, p.247
Subject sort	p.247
Reply impossible	p.248
All sort	p.248
Edit add/sub	p.248
List setting	p.248
Release this	p.249
Release selected	p.249
Release all	p.249

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Address Sort (Look-up Address)



To the selected folder, you can sort the mail from the specified mail addresses or phone numbers. Enter the mail addresses or phone numbers from the Phonebook or Received/Sent Address List.

### 1 Auto-sort setting display (FUNC) ▶ Address sort ▶ Look-up address

From the Auto-sort menu, select "Address sort" and then "Look-up address".

Next, follow the relevant instruction.

Phonebook .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Phonebook)" on page 153

Received address .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

Sent address .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

## Address Sort (Look-up Group)



To the selected folder, you can sort the mail from mail addresses or phone numbers stored in specified groups.

- 1 Auto-sort setting display** (FUNC) **Address sort** **Look-up group**  
**Select a group**

From the Auto-sort menu, select "Address sort" and then "Look-up group".

### Information

You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the UIM.

## Address Sort (Enter Address)



You can directly enter the mail addresses or phone numbers of the mail to be sorted to the selected folder.

- 1 Auto-sort setting display** (FUNC) **Address sort** **Enter address** **Enter the mail address or phone number**

From the Auto-sort menu, select "Address sort" and then "Enter address".

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters for the address or phone number.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

Enter the mail address correctly up to domain (after @). However, for the mail address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only.

## Subject Sort

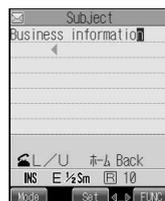


To the selected folder, you can sort i-mode mail of the specified subject.

- 1 Auto-sort setting display** (FUNC) **Subject sort** **YES**  
**Enter the title**

From the Auto-sort menu, select "Subject sort" and then enter the title.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

When the title matches a sort condition for multiple folders, it is sorted to the folder nearest the Inbox folder.

Only one title can be set per folder.

Even if you set "No title" for subject sorting, i-mode mail whose title is "No title" because of no entry cannot be sorted.

Short Messages (SMS) cannot be sorted by subject.

## Reply Impossible



You can automatically sort the reply-impossible mail to the selected folder.

### 1 Auto-sort setting display > (i) (FUNC) > Reply impossible > YES

From the Auto-sort menu, select "Reply impossible".

#### Information

You can set "Reply impossible" for only one folder.

## All Sort



You can sort all mail to the selected i-appli mail folder.

### 1 Auto-sort setting display > (i) (FUNC) > All sort > YES > YES

From the Auto-sort menu, select "All Sort" and then select "YES".

#### Information

You cannot sort SMS Reports and Short Messages (SMS) that have been received directly in the UIM.

"All sort" can be set for only one Inbox and one Outbox i-appli mail folder.

When "All sort" is set, other Auto-sort setting is disabled.

## Edit Address/Subject



You can edit the selected mail address, phone number or subject.

Also, you can store new mail addresses, phone numbers or subject.

### 1 Auto-sort setting display > (i) (FUNC) > Edit add/sub

> Edit the mail address, phone number or subject > (O)



## List Setting



You can switch whether to display the addresses of mail in the folder by any of the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address or phone number.

### 1 Auto-sort setting display > (i) (FUNC) > List setting

Name .....Displays names for addresses.

Address.....Displays addresses or phone numbers for mail addresses.

#### Information

You can also press (#) to switch between name display and mail address (phone number) display on the Auto-sort setting display.

## Release This



You can release the setting for a selected mail address, phone number or subject. (The item is deleted from the “Auto-sort setting display”.)

### 1 Auto-sort setting display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Release this ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

## Release Selected



You can select mail addresses, phone numbers and subjects, and release the settings for them. (The items are deleted from the “Auto-sort setting display”.)

### 1 Auto-sort setting display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Release selected ▶ Put check marks for the mail addresses, phone numbers and subjects to be released.

“” and “” switch each time you press .

.....Releases.

.....Does not releases.

You can check all items or uncheck all items by pressing ⓘ (FUNC) and selecting “Select all/Release all”, and pressing .

You can switch between name display and mail address (phone number) display by pressing ⓘ (FUNC), selecting “List setting”, and pressing . (You can switch displays by pressing .)



### 2 (Finish) ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

## Release All



You can release the settings for all mail addresses, phone numbers and subjects. (The items are deleted from the “Auto-sort setting display”.)

### 1 Auto-sort setting display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Release all ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

## <Mail Settings>

# Detailed Settings for i-mode Mail and Short Messages (SMS)

### Scroll



Setting at purchase  
1 line

You can set the number of lines that are scrolled at a time when you press  on the text display of i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS).

# 1



## Mail settings ▶ Scroll

- 1 line .....Scrolls one line at a time.
- 3 lines .....Scrolls three lines at a time.
- 5 lines .....Scrolls five lines at a time.

While received or sent mail is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to select "Scroll".

### Information

You can also set "Scroll" from the Function menu while the text of a message is displayed. In this case the setting for this function changes as well.

### Character Size



Setting at purchase  
Standard

You can change the size of the font displayed for the text of i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS).

# 1



## Mail settings ▶ Character size

- Standard .....Displays characters in standard size.
- Small .....Displays characters in small size.
- Large .....Displays characters in large size.

While sent or received mail is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to select "Character size".



Standard



Small



Large

### Information

While the text of a message is displayed, you can change character size by pressing and holding  for at least one second (see pages 185, 222). Also, you can set character size using "Character size" from the Function menu. In this case, the setting here will also change.

If you bring up a display other than a detailed display, the standard size will resume automatically even when small or large size was selected. However, if you return to the detailed display, small or large size will be resumed.

## Mail List Display



Setting at purchase  
2 lines

You can set the number of lines for the mail item displayed in the **Outbox List**, **Inbox List** and **Draft List**.

### 1 **Mail settings** ▶ **Mail list disp.**

2 lines .....Displays two lines.

1 line .....Displays one line.

#### Information

When "2 lines" is set, the listing switches to the Name display.

When "1 line" is set, the listing switches to the Subject display.

## Message Display



Setting at purchase  
Standard

You can set whether to display received mail in standard display (from the top) or from the text of the message.

### 1 **Mail settings** ▶ **Message display**

Standard .....Displays from the top.

From message .....Displays from the text of the message.



Standard display



Display from message

#### Information

Even if "From message" is selected, the message might not be displayed from the text body depending on the number of characters used for the message.



You can set the Security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft box of the Mail menu to prevent mail from being seen by others.

To display the contents of security-activated boxes, you need to enter the Terminal Security Code.

- 1** **Mail settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code** ▶ ▶ **Put check marks for the boxes to be set with the security function.**

“” and “” switch each time you press .

.....Activates security.

.....Does not activate security.

See page 208 of “Basics” manual for the Terminal Security Code.



- 2** Press (Finish).

### Information

When security is activated, “” appears in front of the set box in the Mail menu.

If you set the security for the outbox and the inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address List and Received Address List.

You can also set the security for each folder inside the Inbox (see page 229).

## Receiving Display



You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays when you receive mail, even during operation of another function.

- 1** **Mail settings** ▶ **Receiving display**

Alarm preferred .....Prioritizes the Message Receiving and Receiving Result displays when you have new mail.

Operation preferred .....Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.

## Photo Auto Display



You can set whether to automatically display the photo (still image) received during a call.

- 1** **Mail settings** ▶ **Photo auto display**

ON .....Displays the still image automatically.

OFF .....Does not display the still image automatically.

## Pasted Melody



Setting at purchase  
Valid

You can set whether to validate (enable you to play back and store) the melodies pasted to i-mode mail.

### 1 Mail settings ▶ Pasted melody

Valid ..... Enables melodies to be played back (and stored).

(“” appears in the Mail List and “” in the Mail detailed displays.)

Invalid ..... Disables melodies from being played back (and stored).

(“” appears in the Mail List and a text string appears at the end of the text of the message in the Mail detailed displays.)

#### Information

Received melodies might not be played back successfully even when “Valid” is set.

When multiple data items are pasted, the pasted data itself cannot be displayed even if “Valid” is set.

## Pasted i-motion



Setting at purchase  
Valid

You can set whether to enable downloading of i-motion from i-motion mail.

### 1 Mail settings ▶ Pasted i-motion

Valid ..... Enables downloading. (“” appears in the Mail List and detailed displays.)

Invalid ..... Disables downloading. (“” appears in the Mail List and detailed displays. Pasted data cannot be displayed as characters.)

#### Information

When multiple data items are pasted, the pasted data itself cannot be displayed even if “Valid” is set.

## “i-αppli To” Setting



Setting at purchase  
Valid

You can set whether to enable i-αppli starting up from a URL (link) which can start up i-αppli in the text of i-mode mail.

### 1 Mail settings ▶ “i-αppli To”

Valid ..... Enables i-αppli starting up. (“” appears in the Mail Lists.)

Invalid ..... Disables i-αppli starting up. (“” appears in the Mail Lists. Pasted data cannot be displayed as characters.)

#### Information

When multiple data items are pasted, the pasted data itself cannot be displayed even if “Valid” is set.



Header .....Not entered, automatically inserted

Signature .....Not entered, automatically inserted

Quotation mark &gt;&gt;

You can store a header, signature and quotation marks.

If you store a header and signature in advance, it is easy to paste them.

Also, if you put a check mark for “Insert”, the header and signature will be automatically pasted to new i-mode mail you compose and to Reply and Forward mail.

**1** **Mail settings** **Header/Signature**

**2** **Select the header field**

The header is the sentence such as greeting at the beginning of a message.

If you do not want the header to be pasted automatically, select “Insert” and press to change “” to “”.

If you do not create a header, go to step 4.

**3** **Enter the header**

You can enter up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



**4** **Select the signature field**

The signature is your name or similar, placed at the end of a message.

If you do not want the signature to be pasted automatically, select “Insert” and press to change “” to “”.

If you do not create a signature, go to step 6.

**5** **Enter the signature**

You can enter up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



**6** **Select the quotation mark field**

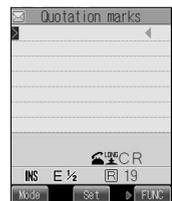
The quotation mark is the symbol indicating a quote from received mail.

If you do not create a quotation mark, go to step 8.

**7** **Enter the quotation mark**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



## 8 Press (Finish)

To cancel, press  or , select "YES", and press .

### Information

Even when you have put a check mark for "Insert", the header and signature cannot be pasted when you compose i-mode mail from Photo-sending or i-appli.

## Check Settings



You can confirm the individual mail settings.

**1**   **Mail settings**  **Check settings**

After checking, press .

## Reset Settings



You can return the individual mail settings to their default settings.

**1**   **Mail settings**  **Reset settings**  **Enter the Terminal Security Code**  **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Contents of settings after "Reset settings"

Reset item	Setting after resetting
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Mail list display	2 lines
Message display	Standard
Security	All OFF
Play melody setting	ON
Attached file	All Valid
Receive option setting	OFF
Header/Signature	Header: Blank (Automatically Inserted) Signature: Blank (Automatically Inserted) Quotation mark: >
Receiving display	Alarm preferred
i-motion auto play	ON
Photo auto display	ON
Pasted melody	Valid
Pasted i-motion	Valid
"i-appli To"	Valid
SMS report request	OFF
SMS validity period	3 days



# Displaying Sent Address Record

When you send i-mode mail or Short Messages (SMS), these transmissions are recorded in the Sent Address List, so you can use this to check the destination mail addresses and phone numbers.

Up to 30 items can be kept in the Sent Address List.

## 1 Dialed calls (FUNC)

You can also bring up "Sent address" after bringing up "Redial" by pressing from the Stand-by display.

- ..... Short Message (SMS) that was sent successfully.
- ..... i-mode mail that was sent successfully.
- ..... Short Message (SMS) that was not sent successfully.
- ..... i-mode mail that was not sent successfully.

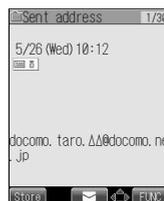


<Sent Address List>

## 2 Select the record to be displayed

To send mail to the displayed address or phone number, press . (See page 257)

To store to the Phonebook, press (Store). (See page 132 of "Basics" manual)



<Sent Address detailed display>

### Information

When the displayed address or phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the name is displayed.

You cannot display the record when "Redial/Dialed calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF" (see page 220 of "Basics" manual).

### Function menu

While the Sent Address List or Sent Address detailed display is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Add to phonebook	See page 132 of "Basics" manual
Add desktop icon	p.257
Compose message	p.257
Compose SMS	p.257
Redial	p.258
Dialed calls	p.258
Delete this	p.258
Delete all	p.258
Dialing	p.259

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can paste selected addresses and phone numbers to the desktop as icons. For details about pasting icons, see page 201 of “Basics” manual.

### 1 Received Address List/Received Address detailed display/Sent Address List/Sent Address detailed display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add desktop icon ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

#### Composing new mail using icon pasted to desktop

1. From the Stand-by display, press .
2. Use to select an icon and press .

You cannot use in Viewer style.

“” appears if you have pasted the phone number of Short Message (SMS).

Next, perform the operation from step 3 on page 150, 158 or 212 to compose the message.



#### Information

See page 205 of “Basics” manual for how to delete the pasted icon.

## Compose Message/Compose SMS



You can send i-mode mail or a Short Message (SMS) to the selected address or phone number.

### 1 Received Address List/Received Address detailed display/Sent Address List/Sent Address detailed display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Compose message/Compose SMS

The address or phone number is entered in the address field.

Next, perform the operation from step 3 on page 150, 158 or 212 to compose the message.

You can also bring up the display on the right by pressing from the Received Address detailed display or Sent Address detailed display.



For “Compose message”

Sent Address

#### Information

When the selected record is for i-mode mail, the display for composing i-mode mail comes up. When the selected record is for a Short Message (SMS), the display for composing a Short Message (SMS) comes up.

Setting Mail Functions

## Redial/Dialled Calls



You can display the Redial List or Dialled Call List.

- 1 Received Address List/Sent Address detailed display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Redial/Dialled calls

## Delete This



You can delete a selected received address record or sent address record.

- 1 Received Address List/Received Address detailed display/Sent Address List/Sent Address detailed display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Delete this ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press

## Delete All



You can delete all received address records or sent address records.

- 1 Received Address List/Received Address detailed display/Sent Address List/Sent Address detailed display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press



If a selected mail address has been stored in the Phonebook, you can dial the phone number stored in the Phonebook.

## 1 Sent Address List/Sent Address detailed display/Received Address List/Received Address detailed display > (FUNC) > Dialing

### When multiple phone numbers are stored in the Phonebook entry

The display on the right appears.

Use  to select a phone number to be called and press .

Next, perform the operation from step 2.



## 2 Voice-phone/Video-phone at 32K/Video-phone at 64K/Select image

Voice phone .....Dials a voice call.

V-phone at 32K .....Dials a 32K video-phone call.

V-phone at 64K .....Dials a 64K video-phone call.

Select image .....Select an image to send during video-phone calls from among "Me", "Pre-installed", "Original", and "Chara-den".

## 3 Dial

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .

To notify your Caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press .

To withhold your Caller ID, select "Don't notify ID" and press .

To cancel dialing midway, press .

&lt;Received Address&gt;



## Displaying Received Address Record

When you receive i-mode mail and Short Messages (SMS), these transmissions are recorded in the Received Address List, so you can use this to check the sender's addresses and phone numbers.

Up to 30 items can be kept in the Received Address Record.

# 1



Received calls ▶ All calls ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Received address

You can also bring up "Received calls" by pressing from the Stand-by display.

If you have selected "Missed calls", you can bring up "Received Address List" by performing similar procedure.



.....Indicates a Short Message (SMS).



.....Indicates i-mode mail.



<Received Address List>

# 2

## Select the record to display

To send mail to the displayed address or phone number, press . (See page 257)

To store to the Phonebook, press (Store). (See page 132 of "Basics" manual)



<Received Address detailed display>

### Information

When the displayed mail address or phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the name is displayed.

You cannot display the record when "Received calls" of "Record display set" (see page 220 of "Basics" manual) is set to "OFF".

### Function menu

While the Received Address List or Received Address detailed display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

Add to phonebook	See page 132 of "Basics" manual
Add desktop icon	p.257
Compose message	p.257
Compose SMS	p.257
Received calls	See this page
Delete this	p.258
Delete all	p.258
Dialing	p.259

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Received Calls



You can display the Received Call Record List.

- 1** Received Address List/Received Address detailed display  ()  
▶ Received calls

### Information

"All calls" (all received call records) are displayed by this function.

&lt;Mail Member&gt;



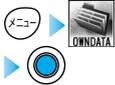
## Creating Mail Member

You can store mail addresses in each group. This is useful for mailing to a regular list of members.

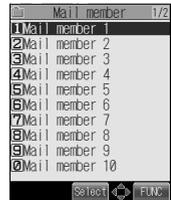
You can store up to five addresses per group.

You can store up to 20 groups.

1



Mail member ▶ Select the members to be stored



&lt;Mail Member List&gt;

2

<Not stored> ▶ (Edit)

You can operate by selecting <Not stored> and then selecting "Edit address" from the Function menu.

If you select a already stored mail address and press , the confirmation display appears.

Press (Edit) to bring up the Mail Address Edit display.

See page 264 for retrieving addresses from the Phonebook or records.



&lt;Mail Address List&gt;

3

Enter a mail address ▶

Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store multiple addresses.

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

During PIM Lock (see page 218 of "Basics" manual), you cannot display Mail Member.

If you store the same mail address in the Mail Member and try to send a message, the message "Same address is entered Send?" appears. Select "YES" and press : the duplicated addresses are deleted and the message is then sent. To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Function menu

While the Mail Member List is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Edit member name	p.263
Compose message	p.263
Reset mem. Name	p.263

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

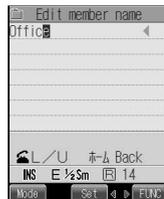
## Edit Member Name



You can edit the name of a selected Mail Member.

- 1 Mail Member List (FUNC) Edit member name  
▶ Enter the name of the Mail Member

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## Compose Message

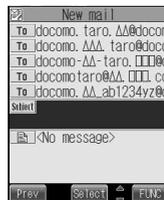


You can compose i-mode mail and send it to the addresses in a selected Mail Member.

- 1 Mail Member List (FUNC) Compose message

The mail addresses is entered in the address field.  
Next, perform the operations from step 3 on page 150 to compose the message.

You can also bring up the same display by pressing ( ) from the Mail Member List.



## Reset Member Name



You can reset the Mail Member name to the setting at purchase.

- 1 Mail Member List display (FUNC) Reset mem. Name ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Function menu

While the Mail Address List or Mail Address Confirmation display is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Edit address	p.264
Look-up address	p.264
Delete this	p.264
Delete all	p.264

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Edit Address



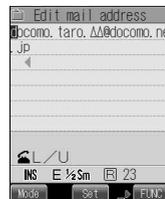
You can enter a new mail address or edit a previously entered one.

### 1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit address

Next, perform the operation from step 3 on page 262.

You can also bring up the same display by pressing (Edit) from the Mail Address List or Mail Address Confirmation display.



## Look-up Address



You can look up an address from the Phonebook, Sent Address or Received Address List to add to Mail Member.

### 1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Look-up address

Phonebook .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Phonebook)" on page 153

Sent address .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

Received address .....Step 2 of "Look-up Address (Sent/Received Address)" on page 153

If you selected an address that is already stored in the Mail Address List or Mail Address Confirmation display, the message "Overwrite mail address?" appears. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

You cannot display the Sent Address List when "Redial/Dialled calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF" (see page 220 of "Basics" manual).

You cannot display the Received Address List when "Received calls" of "Record display set" is set to "OFF" (see page 220 of "Basics" manual).

## Delete This



You can delete a selected mail address.

### 1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Delete this ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete All



You can delete all mail addresses in the selected Mail Member group.

### 1 Mail Address List/Mail Address Confirmation display ▶ (FUNC)

▶ Delete all ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

The background features a light blue gradient with several overlapping white circular rings of varying sizes and orientations, creating a sense of depth and movement. A white rectangular box with a thin blue border is centered horizontally, containing the word "Multimedia" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font.

# Multimedia

## Before Using Cameras

### Using Still Images/Moving Images Shot and Saved

You can take still (snapshots or continuous shots) or moving images using the cameras.

As well as you can display or play back the shot still or moving images on the screen, you can do the following:

- Storing in the Phonebook .....See pages 327, 362
- Storing to the Stand-by display.....See pages 321, 364
- Sending as i-mode mail attachment .....See pages 323, 361
- Sending via data transmission .....See pages 402, 494
- Editing.....See pages 329, 367
- Saving to the miniSD memory card .....See page 325

### Notes for when Shooting Images

- Check the lens for any stain. If the lens is stained, clean the lens with a soft cloth. If the lens is stained with fingerprints or something oily, you will not be able to focus on a subject, or the stains are reflected still or moving images shot.
- Make sure that you do not let fingers, hairs, or the strap overlap the lens when taking a shot.
- Make sure that you hold the FOMA phone securely with the hands so that it does not move when taking a shot. Otherwise, the image may be blurred, especially in a dark place.
- Do not leave the FOMA phone with the lens pointing direct to the sunlight. Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.
- If you take a shot under a fluorescent lamp, mercury lamp, or sodium lamp flickering at high speeds, "Flicker symptom" may result making the display bright or dark. The color tone for the image may vary depending on a shooting timing.
- The image shot by the cameras might differ from actual subject in color tone and brightness.
- When the battery level becomes low, you may not be able to save still or moving shot images.

## Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

You are not allowed, by the Copyrights Act, to use the images shot by FOMA phone and information provided by sites (programs) or the Web pages without permission from the copyright holder except for personal use. If you duplicate or edit a file containing material downloaded from the site or Web page or use the duplicated or edited file notwithstanding you do not have copyright of the target material or permission from copyright holder, you are infringing on the copyright. Note that in such a case, the copyright holder might go to law for damages incurred by your illegal use of the file.

Also, when duplicating or editing image files such as photographs, you should refrain from using those in a way to infringe on the copyright described above as well as refrain from using or modifying the other person's portrait in a way to infringe on the right of portrait.

Pay attention to that some shows on stage, performances, or exhibitions put restrictions on taking a shot or recording even for personal use.

Pay enough attention for distributing the file containing the picture you took or recorded on the Web pages about copyrights and rights of portrait.

If you give others serious inconvenience or mischief, you may be put to prosecution under laws and acts (such as Local Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Using Camera

You can use the cameras to take a shot of still or moving images.

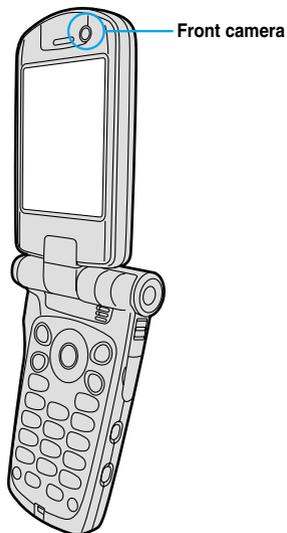
The cameras are located at the front (Front camera) and side (Side camera). You can change the style to use each camera. See page 14 for how to switch the style.

### Normal style

Front camera can be used to take yourself.



<Normal style display>



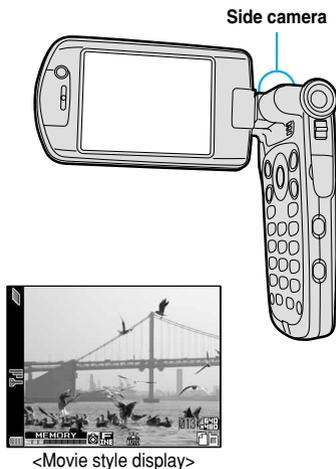
### Keys used for shooting

	Shutter/Save
	Tele
	Wide
	Function menu callout
	Shooting mode switch
	Help
	Tone Change
	White Balance
	Brightness
	Auto timer
	Night mode
	Camera exit/Return

## Movie style

Side camera can be used to take pictures of persons and/or landscapes.

If you switch to Movie style with “Work with style” set to “ON” while Stand-by display is displayed, Side camera starts. When you take images in the Movie style, hold the FOMA phone to protect it from dropping.



### Keys used for shooting

	Shutter/Save
	Tele
	Wide
	Camera exit/Cancel/Return
	Photo light
	Shooting mode switch
	Confirm moving image play after shooting/Cancel manual continuous shot

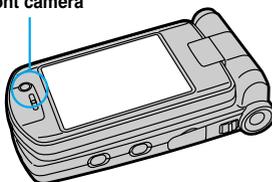
## Viewer style

Front camera can be used to take a picture of yourself.

If you switch to Viewer style with “Work with style” set to “ON” while Side camera is activated in Movie style, Image viewer or i-motion player starts. Press (クリア) a few times to display the Stand-by display and start the camera.



### Front camera



### Keys used for shooting

	Shutter/Save		Function menu callout
	Tele		Displays Main Menu (Press and hold for at least one second)
	Wide		
	Camera exit/Return		Shooting mode switch

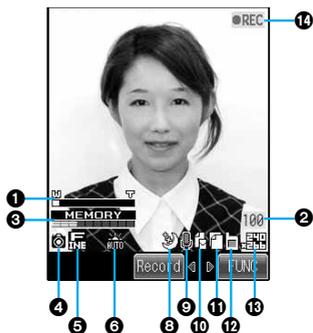
### Information

Front camera and Side camera cannot be activated at the same time.  
You cannot activate the camera during PIM Lock.

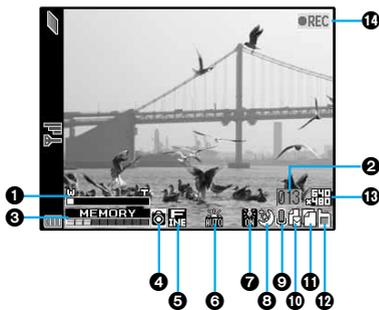
## Finder Display and Saving Format

The settings appear on the Finder display as bars and icons.

Normal style/Viewer style



Movie style



Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page	
1 Zoom bar		Displays zooming status.	285	
2 Savable number of frame/ Recordable time	-	Displays the savable number of still image shots.	-	
		Displays the savable number of frames for Manual continuous shot.		
		Displays the savable recording time for moving images.		
3 Memory capacity bar		Displays used memory capacity at 10 levels. When images are stored to the maximum, displayed in red.	-	
4 Shot mode	(Snapshot)	Indicates the Snap shot mode.	274	
	(Moving image shot)	Indicates the Moving image shot mode.	281	
	(Auto-continuous shot)	Indicates the Auto-continuous shot mode.	276	
	(Manual continuous shot)	Indicates the Manual continuous shot mode.		
5 Image quality	(Normal)	Snapshot quality	Quality for still image shot: standard and many frames	291
	(Fine)		Quality for still image shot: high quality	
	(Super fine)		Quality for still image shot: the best quality but less frames	
	(For long recording)	Record quality	Quality for moving image shot: low quality but lengthy shot time	
	(Normal)		Standard quality for moving image shot	
	(For high quality)	Quality for moving image shot: high quality but shorter shot time	SD Record quality	292
	(Normal)	Quality for moving image shot to save to SD: standard		
	(Fine)	Quality for moving image shot to save to SD: high quality		
	(Super fine)	Quality for moving image shot to save to SD: best quality		

Icon/bar name	Icon	Description	Page	
6 White balance	 (Auto)	Adjusts white balance automatically.	289	
	 (Bulb)	When taking a shot under light bulb.		
	 (Fine weather)	When taking a shot outdoors when fine.		
	 (Cloudy)	When taking a shot when cloudy or in a shade.		
7 Photo light	 (ON/High)	Indicates the Photo light is set to ON (High).	287	
	 (ON)	Indicates the Photo light is set to ON.		
8 Night mode		For when taking a shot during night.	298	
9 Select image or voice	 (Voice only)	Records the voice only for moving image shot.	297	
	 (Video only)	Records video only for moving image shot.		
10 Purpose (snap/recording size)	 (Mail attachment mode)	Indicates mail attachment mode is set.	295	
11 File restriction	 (Unrestricted)	Indicates the file is "unrestricted".	296	
	 (Restricted)	Indicates the file is "restricted".		
12 Store in	 (Phone)	Store in: "Phone"	293	
	 (SD Card)	Store in: "SD Card"		
13 Image size	 (UXGA)	Indicates UXGA (1600 x 1200) size is set.	290	
	 (SXGA)			Indicates SXGA (1280 x 960) size is set.
	 (VGA)			Indicates VGA (640 x 480) size is set.
	 (CIF)	Indicates CIF (352 x 288) size is set.		
	 (QCIF)	Indicates QCIF (176 x 144) size is set.		291
	 (Sub-QCIF)	Indicates Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size is set.		
	 (Screen)	Indicates Screen (240 x 266) size is set.		
	 (QVGA)	Indicates QVGA (320 x 240) size is set.		
14 REC/Auto timer	 (REC)	Indicates a moving image is being recorded.	281	
	 (Auto timer)	Indicates the Auto timer is set.	297	

Indicates memory size used for still images in the Snap shot mode/Continuous shot mode, memory size used for moving images in the Moving image shot mode, and memory size used for the miniSD memory card when "Store in" is set to "SD Card".

## Files for still image

File format	JPEG
Pixels	Snapshot: UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960), VGA (640 x 480), CIF (352 x 288), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), Screen (240 x 266) Continuous shot: CIF (352 x 288), QCIF (176 x 144)
Extension	jpg
Title	Automatically set by the date/time a shot saved (when shot at 10:00, 26th May, 2004) "2004/05/26 10:00" When the date/time is not set: "----/--/-- --:--"
File name	Automatically set by the date/time a shot saved (when shot at 10:00, 26th May, 2004) Snapshot: "200405261000" Continuous shot: "200405261000XX" (XX are 2-digit consecutive numbers.) When the date/time is not set Snapshot: "image" Continuous shot: "image1 to image4" (for CIF (352 x 288)) "image1 to image9" (for QCIF (176 x 144)) "P1000001 to P1000004" (for CIF (352 x 288), "Store in" is set to "SD card") "P1000001 to P1000009" (for QCIF (176 x 144), "Store in" is set to "SD card")
File size	VGA or more can be changed to 100 Kbytes or less, and CIF or less can be changed to 9,000 bytes or less (see page 295, 344).
Mail attachment/Distribution	Distribution to external devices enabled as attachment to mail or to miniSD memory card.
Number of Maximum savable files	100 files in the FOMA phone See page 278 for the miniSD memory card. The number of storable files may decrease depending on file size or other images.
Player	Image Viewer

## Files for moving image

File format	MP4 (the FOMA phone), ASF (miniSD memory card)
Coding system	Video: MPEG4 <sup>1</sup> Voice: AMR
Pixels	QVGA (320 x 240), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)
Extension	asf, 3gp <sup>2</sup>
Title	Automatically set by the date/time a shot taken (when shot at 10:00, 26th May, 2004) "2004/05/26 10:00" When the date/time is not set: "----/-- --:--"
File name	Automatically set by the date/time a shot taken (when shot at 10:00, 26th May, 2004) "200405261000" When the date/time is not set: "movie" "MOL001" (for "Store in" is set to "SD card")
File size	Approx. 800 Kbytes (When "Store in" is set to "Phone".) Can be limited to the size which can attach to i-motion mail for taking a shot (see page 295, 378).
Mail attachment/Distribution	Distribution to external devices enabled as attachment to i-motion mail or to miniSD memory card.
Number of Maximum savable files	50 files in the FOMA phone See page 283 for the miniSD memory card. The number of storable files may decrease depending on file size or other moving images.
Player	i-motion player

1 MPEG4 is short for Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 which is a high efficiency coding (data compression) system for use with mobile communications or the Internet.

2 See page 418 for asf and 3gp file generation.

### About Software for Playing Moving Images

- To play back moving images on a personal computer, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" from the Web page of Apple Computer, Inc.
- You can play ASF files under Windows Media® Player.

## &lt;Still Image Shot&gt;

## Shooting Still Images

## Shooting Still Images



You can take a snapshot by using the camera. The taken snapshot and continuous shot are saved to the “Camera” folder in the FOMA phone (max.100 frames of up to approx. 1.4 Mbytes) or to the miniSD memory card.

See “Store in” (see page 293) and “Select storage” (see page 351) for selecting the storage location.

## 1 Switch to Movie style in the Stand-by display

Side camera starts up and the video taken by Side camera appears on the display.

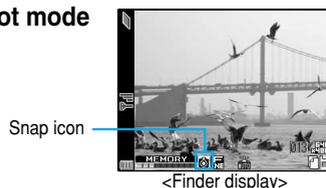
When “Work with style” is set to “OFF”, Side camera does not activate even if you switch to Movie style.

Press for at least one second to activate Side camera after switching to Movie style.

You can start up Side camera with “Side camera size (snap)” set to “UXGA (1600 x 1200)” by selecting from the Camera Shortcut menu and pressing .

## 2 Press a few times to switch to the Snap shot mode

“ (Snap icon)” appears.



## 3 Press .



## 4 Press .

Not to save, press (クリア).



## 5 Press (クリア) to end the camera.

Camera exits.

See page 318 for how to display saved still image.

**1** **Camera**

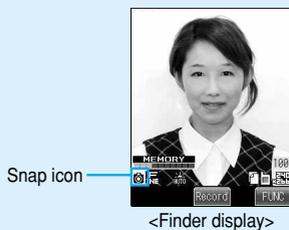
Front camera starts up and the video taken by Front camera appears on the display.

You can start up Front camera by pressing for at least one second in the Stand-by display.

You can also start up Front camera by selecting from the Camera Shortcut menu and pressing .

**2** Press a few times to switch to the Snap shot mode

" (Snap icon)" appears.



**3** Press .

When you take a shot of yourself with Front camera, the horizontally flipped image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.

**4** Press .

Not to save, press .

Press () to attach the shot still image to i-mode mail. (See page 279)

**5** Press or to end camera.

Camera exits.

See page 318 for how to display saved still image.



**Post view display**

"Post View display" enables you to check the still or moving images you took before you save them.

**Information**

The image quality may be coarse depending on the image size or "Purpose (snap)" (see page 295). Further, the image on the Post View display may appear coarse because it is enlarged on the Post View display.

You can take continuous images manually or automatically. When the image size is CIF in the Auto-continuous shot mode, you can take 4 continuous shots at intervals of about 0.8 seconds. When the image size is QCIF, you can take 9 continuous shots at intervals of about 0.4 seconds. The size for continuous shot is QCIF or CIF only which you select from “Cont. shoot size”. The taken snapshot and continuous shots are saved to the “Camera” folder in the FOMA phone (max.100 frames of up to approx. 1.4 Mbytes) or to the miniSD memory card. See “Store in” (see page 293) and “Select storage” (see page 351) for selecting the storage location. See “Continuous mode” (see page 293) for switching between manual and automatic.

## 1 Switch to Movie style in the Stand-by display

Side camera starts up and the video taken by Side camera appears on the display.

When “Work with style” is set to “OFF”, Side-camera does not activate even if you switch to Movie style.

Press for at least one second to activate Side-camera after switching to Movie style.

## 2 Press a few times to switch to the Continuous shot mode

“ (Auto-continuous shot icon)” or “ (Manual continuous shot icon)” appears.

Auto-continuous shot icon/Manual continuous shot icon



## 3 Press .

For the manual continuous shooting, press the number of times for the frames.

Not to shoot all frames (4 or 9 frames), press .

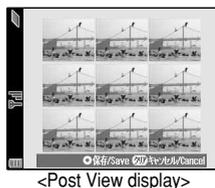
During manual continuous shooting, you can use the zoom function.

If you do nothing for a while during manual continuous shooting, the Finder display switches automatically to the Post View display.



## 4 Press .

Not to save, press (クリア).



## 5 Press (クリア) to end the camera.

Camera exits.

See page 318 for how to display saved still image.

## 1 Camera

Front camera starts up and the video taken by Front camera appears on the display.

You can start up Front camera by pressing for at least one second in the Stand-by display.

You can also start up Front camera by selecting from the Camera Shortcut menu and pressing .

## 2 Press a few times to switch to the Continuous shot mode

“ (Auto-continuous shot icon)” or “ (Manual continuous shot icon)” appears.



Auto-continuous shot icon/Manual continuous shot icon

<Finder display>

## 3 Press .

For the manual continuous shooting, press the number of times for the frames. Not to shoot all frames (4 or 9 frames), press ().

When you take yourself with Front camera, the horizontally flipped image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.

## 4 Press .

Not to save, press ().

## 5 Press or to end the camera.

Camera exits.

See page 318 for how to display saved still image.



<Post View display>

### Post View display for continuous shot



QCIF: 9 frames



CIF: 4 frames

If you suspend manual continuous shot or depending on the usage status, you may not take pre-established number of frames. (QCIF: 9 frames, CIF: 4 frames)

In this case, the image below appears instead.



## An estimate for the number of savable snapshots

The number of frames you can save differ depending on "Snap image Qlty", image size, or shooting environments.

The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone and miniSD memory card has limit.

## The number of files that can be saved to the FOMA phone

Still images shot by the FOMA phone are saved to the "Camera" folder.

Image size		UXGA (1600 x 1200)	SXGA (1280 x 960)	VGA (640 x 480)	CIF (352 x 288)	QCIF (176 x 144)	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Screen (240 x 266)
Snap image quality	Super fine	Approx. 1	Approx. 2	Approx. 11	Approx. 21	Approx. 61	Approx. 100	Approx. 23
	Fine	Approx. 2	Approx. 3	Approx. 13	Approx. 28	Approx. 78	Approx. 100	Approx. 32
	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 4	Approx. 19	Approx. 54	Approx. 100	Approx. 100	Approx. 73

The above is an estimate for when "Purpose (snap)" is set to "No purpose".

## The number of frames that can be saved to the miniSD memory card

Still images shot by the FOMA phone are saved to the "SD Card" folder.

Image size		UXGA (1600 x 1200)	SXGA (1280 x 960)	VGA (640 x 480)	CIF (352 x 288)	QCIF (176 x 144)	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Screen (240 x 266)
Snap image quality	Super fine	Approx. 15	Approx. 20	Approx. 100	Approx. 200	Approx. 400	Approx. 850	Approx. 200
	Fine	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 150	Approx. 250	Approx. 400	Approx. 850	Approx. 250
	Normal	Approx. 30	Approx. 50	Approx. 200	Approx. 400	Approx. 850	Approx. 850	Approx. 400

The above is an estimate for when "Purpose (snap)" is set to "No purpose".

The above is an estimate for when the provided miniSD memory card (sample) is used. The number of files that can be saved differs depending on the miniSD memory card manufacture maker.

### Information

Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could malfunction.

The shutter tone sounds when shooting regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound level is fixed at Level 4 which cannot be changed.

If you change the style while Post View display is displayed, the shot still image is stored. However you cannot save image if you change the style before displaying "  " on the Post View display.

When the battery level becomes low, you may not be able to save snapshots or continuous shot.

When the recording capacity of the FOMA phone is 100 Kbytes or less, or when the recording capacity of the miniSD memory card is 120 Kbytes (for CIF) or less or 144 Kbytes (for QCIF) or less, a warning tone sounds and no more continuous shooting is enabled.

If you turn the power off while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

If the battery pack is accidentally pulled off while saving a file to the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card, that data cannot be guaranteed.

If you do turning the power off, checking the SD for disc, formatting SD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When the setting for storage location is changed, set it again by using "Select storage" (see page 351).

If you create or edit a folder by using personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set it again by using "Select storage" (see page 351).

When shooting, hold the FOMA phone securely not to move so that blur in images are avoided.

If you take a still image with a frame by Front camera, and save it, the frame is reversed in accordance with the still image being converted to a correct image.

The Call/Charging indicator lights red while shooting. When saving to miniSD memory card, it lights green. The color from the Call/Charging Indicator might reflect on some photographic subjects when shooting in Movie style.

You cannot shoot still images during a video-phone call.

**Function menu**

While the Post View display is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to displayed the following items.

Compose message	See this page
Save reflection	p.280
Check w/ playing	p.280

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

You cannot select above items in Movie style.

**Compose Message**

You can save a shot still or moving image and attach it to i-mode mail.

# 1 Post View display (**FUNC**) Compose message

You can also compose message by pressing  () in the Post View display.

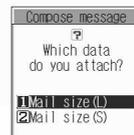
**The display on the right comes up when the file size of a still image is larger than 10,000 bytes.**

Select either "Mail size (L)" or "Mail size (S)" and press .

Mail size (L).....Attaches the still image to i-mode mail as the image of bulky size.

When the file size is in excess of 102,400 bytes, it is converted to 102,400 bytes or less.

Mail size (S).....Reduces or trims the still image to QCIF (176 x 144) size and converts the file size to 9,000 bytes or less.



Some images cannot be converted to QCIF.

**Information**

When the file size of moving image exceeds 102,400 bytes, a warning tone will sound, disabling you to attach the image to i-mode mail. Perform "Trim for mail" or set "Purpose (recording size)" to "Mail attachment" for shooting again. See pages 150, 177 for sending/saving messages.

This function is not available during continuous shot.

A still image in excess of 10,000 bytes is handled as the image of bulky size.

You can send the image of bulky size to a personal computer; you cannot send it to the FOMA phone or i-mode mobile phone, however.

## Save Reflection



You can save the still image you took with no frame attached using Front camera as the reflection image (horizontally reversed).

**1** Post View display ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Save reflection

## Check with Playing



P.13

You can play back a shot still or moving image.

**1** Post View display ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Check w/ playing

Press  in the Post View display to play the moving images in the Movie style.  
After the still image is played back, you can press  to save it.

### Information

In Manner mode, if you try to play back the moving image on which the voice is recorded, the message "Setting manner mode Play melody?" is displayed. Select "YES" and press  to play it back.

# Shooting Moving Images

You can take moving images by using the camera. You can record moving images as well as voice. The shot moving images are saved to the “Camera” folder in the FOMA phone (50 shots max. up to 3.3 Mbytes) or to the miniSD memory card. See “Store in” (see page 293) and “Select storage” (see page 351) for selecting the storage location.

## 1 Switch to Movie style in the Stand-by display

Side camera starts up and the video taken by Side camera appears on the display.

When “Work with style” is set to “OFF”, Side-camera does not activate even if you switch to Movie style.

Press  for at least one second to activate Side-camera after switching to Movie style.

## 2 Press a few times to switch to the Moving image shot mode

“ (Record icon)” appears.

Record icon



## 3 Press .

Recording starts.



## 4 Press .

Recording ends.

The moving image is automatically saved when “Store in” is set to “SD card”.



## 5 Press .

Not to save, press  (クリア).

Press  to play the moving images.



## 6 Press (クリア) to end the camera.

Camera exits.

See page 356 for playing the saved moving images.

## 1 Camera

Front camera starts up and the video taken by Front camera appears on the display.

You can also start up the camera by pressing  for at least one second in the Stand-by display.

Select  from the Camera Shortcut menu and press  : then you can start up the camera with "Purpose (recording size)" set to "Mail attachment", and the video size set to "Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)" in the Moving image shot mode.

Select  and press  : then you can start up the camera with "Store in" set to "SD card", and "SD image quality" set to "Super fine" in the Moving image shot mode.

## 2 Press a few times to switch to the Moving image shot mode

" (Record icon)" appears.



<Finder display>

## 3 Press .

Recording starts.

When you take yourself with Front camera, the horizontally flipped image is displayed, but it is displayed normally when played back.

## 4 Press .

Recording ends.

## 5 Press .

The Post View display for the moving image shot by Front camera appears as a correct image.

Not to save, press .

Just press   to attach the shot moving image to i-mode mail (see page 279).



<Post View display>

## 6 Press or to end the camera.

Camera exits.

See page 356 for playing the saved moving images.

### Function menu

While the Post View display is displayed, press  () to display following items.

Compose message p.279

Check w/ playing p.280

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

You cannot select above items in Movie style.

### An estimate for recording time (phone)

The recording time differs depending on "Image quality" and shooting environments. Take reference to the maximum recording time and memory capacity which appears on the Finder display.

Image quality	Voice only (Seconds)	Video only (Seconds)		Voice and video (Seconds)	
		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	QCIF (176 x 144)	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	QCIF (176 x 144)
High quality mode	Approx. 57 (approx. 488)	Approx. 11 (approx. 93)	Approx. 11 (approx. 93)	Approx. 9 (approx. 78)	Approx. 9 (approx. 78)
Normal mode	Approx. 57 (approx. 488)	Approx. 17 (approx. 148)	Approx. 17 (approx. 148)	Approx. 13 (approx. 114)	Approx. 13 (approx. 114)
Long recording mode	Approx. 105 (approx. 889)	Approx. 44 (approx. 372)	Approx. 29 (approx. 248)	Approx. 31 (approx. 262)	Approx. 23 (approx. 194)

( ) indicates the recording seconds when "Purpose (recording size)" is set to "No purpose".

### An estimate for recording time (miniSD memory card)

The recording time differ depending on "SD image quality" and shooting environments. Take reference to the maximum recording time and memory capacity which appears on the Finder display.

SD image quality	Video size	128 Mbytes (Minutes)	64 Mbytes (Minutes)	32 Mbytes (Minutes)	16 Mbytes (Minutes)	8 Mbytes (Minutes)
Super fine	QVGA (320 x 240)	Approx. 18	Approx. 9	Approx. 4	Approx. 2	Approx. 1
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 35	Approx. 17	Approx. 8	Approx. 4	Approx. 2
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 63	Approx. 31	Approx. 15	Approx. 7	Approx. 3
Fine	QVGA (320 x 240)	Approx. 35	Approx. 17	Approx. 8	Approx. 4	Approx. 2
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 89	Approx. 44	Approx. 21	Approx. 10	Approx. 4
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 89	Approx. 44	Approx. 21	Approx. 10	Approx. 4
Normal	QVGA (320 x 240)	Approx. 51	Approx. 25	Approx. 12	Approx. 5	Approx. 2
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 142	Approx. 70	Approx. 34	Approx. 16	Approx. 7
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 142	Approx. 70	Approx. 34	Approx. 16	Approx. 7

The above is an estimate for when "Recording type" is set to "Video + voice". The recording time varies depending on the miniSD memory card manufacture maker.

The time described in the above table is maximum recording time of respective miniSD memory cards.

The moving image recorded on the miniSD memory is saved as ASF file.

### Information

Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card while saving files to it. The FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could malfunction. A beep sounds when shooting starts and ends regardless of the settings such as Manner Mode. The sound level is fixed at Level 4 which cannot be changed.

If you do key operations while recording, the operation sound may be picked up.

Recording automatically stops in the following cases: (The moving image recorded to that point is automatically saved.)

- When you change the style during recording.
- When a call comes in during recording.
- When the battery runs out.
- When memory used for recording the moving image exceeds the size that can be attached to i-motion mail or approx. 800 Kbytes (when no purpose is set for "Purpose (recording size)").
- When memory used for recording exceeds the maximum.

If you change the style while Post View display is displayed, the shot moving image is stored.

When the battery level becomes low, you may not be able to save the moving image.

You cannot shoot moving images when the storage location is the phone and the rest memory space is less than 12 Kbytes or when the storage location is the miniSD memory card and the rest memory space is less than 160 Kbytes or less. However, when the storage location is the miniSD memory card, the size of the moving images is QVGA, the recording quality is super fine and the rest memory space is less than 208 Kbytes, you cannot shoot the moving images. If you turn the power off while saving a file, an incomplete file may be saved.

If the battery pack is accidentally pulled off while saving a file to the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card, that file cannot be guaranteed.

If you do turning the power off, checking the SD for disc, formatting SD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When the setting for storage location is changed, set it again by using "Select storage" (see page 351).

If you create or edit a folder by using personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set it again by using "Select storage" (see page 351).

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in red while recording. It flickers in green while saving the file to the miniSD memory card.

The color from the Call/Charging Indicator might reflect on some photographic subjects when shooting in Movie style.

You cannot set some moving images for the Stand-by display.

You cannot record the moving image during a voice call.

## Settings for Shooting Images

You can set the camera for shooting. Perform the settings with the camera activated.

### Switching Cameras

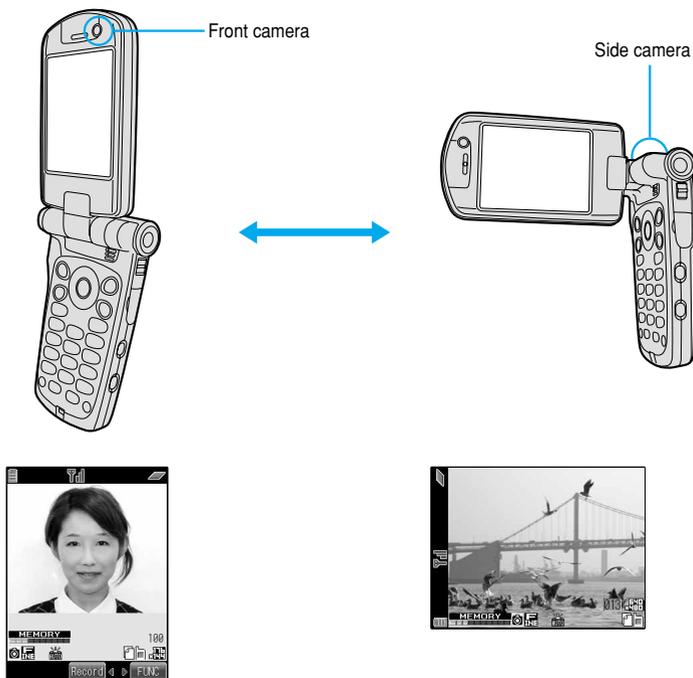


You can switch between Front camera and Side camera.

Front camera is useful for taking a shot of own face and Side camera is useful for taking a shot of people or landscape.

## 1 Switch from Normal style to Movie style to change from Front camera to Side camera.

Switch from Movie style to Normal style to change from Side camera to Front camera.



### Information

You cannot start up Front camera and Side camera at the same time.  
See page14 for how to switch the style.



You can display the image through the camera in “Tele” or “Wide”.

The maximum magnifications for each size in Side camera is as follows:

Shooting mode	Size	The maximum magnifications
Snap	VGA (640 x 480)	Approx. 2.5 times
	CIF (352 x 288)	Approx. 4.1 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 8.1 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 12.0 times
	Screen (240 x 266)	Approx. 4.1 times
Continuous shooting	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
Moving image	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 3.1 times

You cannot display the image in “Tele” or “Wide” for UXGA/SXGA in the Snap shot mode and CIF in the Continuous shot mode and QVGA in the Moving image shot mode.

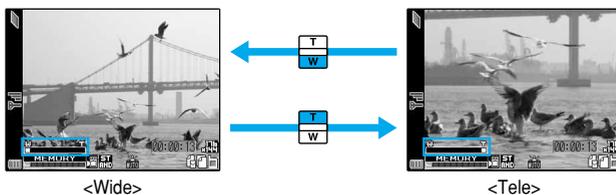
## 1 Press in the Finder display.

Tele (T) .....Press  a few times.

Wide (W) .....Press  a few times.

Press and hold respective keys for at least one second, then the zoom magnification varies sequentially.

If you press  (クリア), do not operate with “Tele” or “Wide” for more than two seconds, or close the FOMA phone, the zoom bar will disappear.



The maximum magnifications for each size in Front camera is as follows:

Shooting mode	Size	The maximum magnifications
Snap	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 2.8 times
Continuous shooting	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
Moving image	QCIF (176 x 144)	Approx. 2.0 times
	Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	Approx. 2.8 times

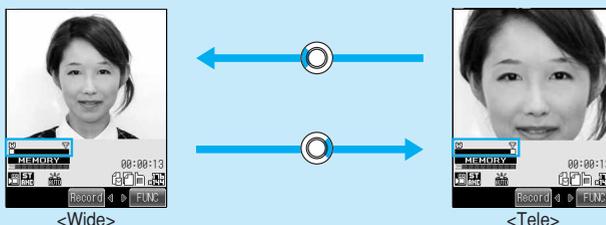
You cannot display the image in "Tele" or "Wide" for CIF/Screen in the Snap shot mode and CIF in the Continuous shot mode.

**1** Press  in the Finder display.

Tele (T).....Press  a few times.

Wide (W).....Press  a few times.

If you press , do not operate with "Tele" or "Wide" for more than two seconds, or close the FOMA phone, the zoom bar will disappear.



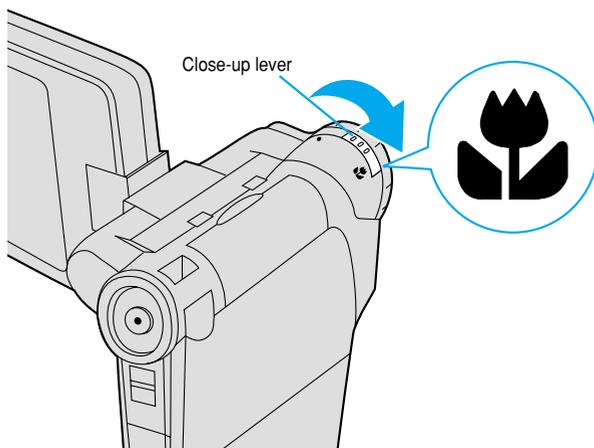
**Information**

The image quality may slightly change when you select "Tele" or "Wide".

"Tele" or "Wide" is released in the following cases:

- When the cameras are deactivated
- When the cameras are switched
- When size is changed
- When shot mode is switched
- When frame is selected
- When other task is activated, with "Frame" set to "ON"

You can shoot the subject from as close as about 10 cm. Move the close-up lever to “”. You can set close-up mode for Side camera only. After close-up shooting, move the Close-up lever in the direction “ ● ”.



## Photo Light

You can flash or light the photo light as a spare light for when you use Side camera to take shots in a dark place. You can use this function in Movie style only.

## 1 Press (機能 / メニュー) in the Finder display.

Each time you press  (機能 / メニュー), the setting for Photo light switches as follows:

- When you set in the Snap shot mode, you can change it in the order of;  
ON (High) ON OFF ON (High)
- When you set in the Continuous shot mode, you can change it in the order of;  
ON OFF ON
- When you set in the Moving shot mode, you can change it in the order of;  
ON OFF ON

ON (High).....Lights the photo light. The light flashes when the shutter is pressed.

ON .....Lights the photo light.

OFF .....Does not flash or light the photo light.

### Information

You cannot use “Photo light” in Normal style or Viewer style.

When “Night mode” is set to “ON”, you cannot set the photo light to “ON (High)”.

If you switch the shooting mode while “Photo light” is set to “ON (High)” or “ON”, “Photo light” returns to “OFF”.

If you switch “Recording type” to “Voice” while “Photo light” is set to “ON” in the Moving image shot mode, “Photo light” returns to “OFF”.

When you end the cameras, “Photo light” is set to “OFF”.

## Setting Image Size and Image Quality

You can select a variety of settings from the Function menu in the Finder display for when you take a shot or save files.

### Function menu

While the Finder display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

Camera setting	p.289
Front-CMR size (snap shot)	p.290
Side camera size (snap shot)	p.290
Cont. shoot size	p.290
Front-CMR size (moving image)	p.291
Side camera size (moving image)	p.291
Snap image Qlty	p.291
Image quality	p.292
SD image quality	p.292
Continuous mode	p.293
Store in	p.293
File restriction	p.296
Frame	p.294
Purpose (snap)	p.295
Purpose (recording size)	p.295
Shutter sound	p.296
Auto timer	p.297
Night mode	p.298
Bar code reader	p.305
Text reader	p.312
SD format	p.413
SD check disk	p.414
Recording type	p.297
Recordable image	p.298
Help	p.299

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

You cannot select above items in Movie style. To use the Function menu, first change the Normal style.

## Camera Setting (Brightness)



Setting at purchase  
± 0

You can adjust the brightness of the display. Adjust the brightness to any of five levels (- 2/ - 1/ ± 0/ + 1/ + 2).

### 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Camera setting ▶ Brightness

- 2 .....Grows dark.
- 1 .....Grows slightly dark.
- ± 0 .....Standard.
- + 1 .....Grows slightly bright.
- + 2 .....Grows bright.

From the Finder display, you can press (E) to adjust brightness.



#### Information

This setting applies to the Finder display and Video-phone display.

## Camera Setting (White Balance)



Setting at purchase  
Auto

You can adjust the coloring of the image on the Finder display to create a natural color tone.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Camera setting ▶ White balance

- (Fine weather) .....When shooting outdoors when fine.
- (Cloudy) ..... When shooting in cloudy weather or in a shade.
- (Auto) .....Adjusts white balance automatically.
- (Bulb) .....When shooting under lighting.

From the Finder display, you can press (E) to adjust white balance.



#### Information

This setting applies to the Finder display and Video-phone display.

## Camera Setting (Tone)



Setting at purchase  
Normal

You select a color tone from among “Sepia”, “Normal”, “Soft skin”, or “Monochrome” to change the image color on the Finder display.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Camera setting ▶ Tone

- Sepia .....Shoots in sepia tone.
- Normal.....Shoots in normal color tone.
- Soft skin .....Shoots person’s skin beautiful.
- Monochrome .....Shoots in monochrome.

From the Finder display, you can press (I) to adjust tone.



## Front-Camera Size (Snap)



Setting at purchase  
QCIF (176 x 144)

You can set the image size for when you take and save a snapshot using Front camera.

You can set the image size only in the Snap shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Front-CMR size

CIF (352 x 288) .....352 x 288 dots  
 QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots  
 Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....128 x 96 dots  
 Screen (240 x 266) .....240 x 266 dots

#### Information

You cannot select "Front-CMR size" when "Frame" is set to "ON".

## Side Camera Size (Snap)



Setting at purchase  
VGA (640 x 480)

You can set the image size for when you take and save a snapshot using Side camera.

You can set the image size only in the Snap shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Side camera size

UXGA (1600 x 1200) .....1600 x 1200 dots  
 SXGA (1280 x 960) .....1280 x 960 dots  
 VGA (640 x 480) .....640 x 480 dots  
 CIF (352 x 288) .....352 x 288 dots  
 QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots  
 Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....128 x 96 dots  
 Screen (240 x 266) .....240 x 266 dots

#### Information

You cannot select "Side camera size" when "Frame" is set to "ON".

## Continuous Shooting Size



Setting at purchase  
QCIF (176 x 144)

You can set the image size to "CIF" or "QCIF" for continuous shot.

You can set only in the Continuous shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Cont.shoot size

CIF (352 x 288) .....352 x 288 dots  
 QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots

#### Information

You cannot select "Cont.shoot size" when "Frame" is set to "ON".

## Front-Camera Size (Video)



Setting at purchase  
QCIF (176 x 144)

You can set the image size for when you take a moving image with Front camera and save it.  
You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Front-CMR size

QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots  
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....128 x 96 dots

## Side Camera Size (Video)



Setting at purchase  
QCIF (176 x 144)

You can set the image size for when you take a moving image with Side camera and save it. You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Side camera size

QVGA (320 x 240) .....320 x 240 dots  
QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots  
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....128 x 96 dots

#### Information

You cannot select "QVGA (320 x 240)" when "Store in" is set for "Phone".

If you change "Store in" from "SD card" to "Phone" while side camera size (video) is set to "QVGA (320 x 240)", side camera size (video) is switched to "QCIF (176 x 144)".

## Snap Image Quality



Setting at purchase  
Fine

You can select the image quality for when you take a snapshot from among "Normal", "Fine", or "Super fine" and set the image quality.

You can set only in the Snap shot mode or the Continuous shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Snap image Qlty

Normal .....Standard quality/Maximum number of shots you can take increases.  
Fine .....High quality  
Super fine .....Best quality/Maximum number of shots you can take decreases.



You can select the image quality from among “For long recording”, “Normal”, and “For high quality” for when you save a moving image to the FOMA phone. You can set only when the “Store in” is “Phone” and in the Moving image shot mode.

## 1 Finder display (FUNC) Image quality

For long recording .....Low quality: Recordable shooting time will be longer.

Normal .....Standard quality

For high quality .....High quality: Recordable shooting time will be shorter.

### Information

See “SD Image Quality” for saving the moving image to the miniSD memory card.

## SD Image Quality



You can set the image quality for when you save the moving image to the miniSD memory card. You can set only when the “Store in” is “SD card” and in the Moving image shot mode.

## 1 Finder display (FUNC) SD image quality

Normal .....Records in standard quality.

Fine .....Records in high quality.

Super fine .....Records in the best quality.

### Information

To save the moving image to the miniSD memory card, select “SD card” in “Store in”.

See “Image Quality” for setting the image quality for saving the moving image to the FOMA phone.

## Continuous Mode



Setting at purchase  
Auto cont. mode

You can select whether to press the shutter manually or automatically for the Continuous shot mode. You can set only in the Continuous shot mode.

### 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Continuous mode

Auto cont. mode .....Automatically takes continuous shots.

Manual cont. mode.....Manually takes continuous shots.

## Store In



Setting at purchase  
Snap/Continuous  
shot mode .....Phone  
Moving image  
shot mode .....Phone

You can select the storage location for the still or moving images you shot, from “Phone” or “SD card”. You can set for the Snap/Continuous shot mode and the Moving image shot mode, respectively.

### 1 Finder display/during video-phone call ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Store in

Phone .....Saves the still or moving image to the “Camera” folder inside the FOMA phone.

SD card .....Saves the still or moving image to the miniSD memory card

### Information

See “Select Storage” on page 351 for setting the storage location to the folder within the miniSD memory card.  
If you set this function during a video-phone call, this setting is activated only for that video-phone call.



You can display the still image with a frame added when taking a still image. You can select a frame from each 3 type of CIF size, QCIF size, or Screen size.

You can add the frame only in the Snap shot mode or Continuous shot mode.

## 1 Finder display (FUNC) Frame ON

CIF (352 x 288) .....Uses the frame of CIF size.

QCIF (176 x 144) .....Uses the frame of QCIF size.

Screen (240 x 266) .....Uses the frame of Screen size.

If you set to "ON", the snap size of Front camera or Side camera will be the size of selected frame.

If you set to "OFF", the former snap size returns.

## 2 Select a frame

Each time you press  , a frame is switched to display in turn.

### Frame list



スクープ!  
(Scoop!)



虹  
(Rainbow)



天の川  
(Milky Way)



花園  
(Flower Garden)



キラキラクロス  
(Kira Kira Cross)

### Information

If you take a shot of still image with frame using Front camera and save it, the frame is horizontally reversed when the still image is automatically reversed as a correct image.

You cannot select a frame of the Screen size in the Continuous shot mode.

If you switch to Movie style with the status Frame set to "ON", Frame remains ON.

## Purpose (Snap)



Setting at purchase  
No purpose

You can restrict the shooting size of still images to the one you can attach to mail.

UXGA, SXGA or VGA size is restricted to 100 Kbytes which you can attach to mail as a big still image, and CIF, QCIF, Sub-QCIF, or Screen size is restricted to 9,000 bytes.

You can set only in the Snap shot mode.

### 1 Finder display (FUNC) Purpose

Mail attachment .....Restricts to the file size you can attach to i-mode mail.

No purpose .....Does not restrict the file size.

#### Information

See "Size for mail" for changing the file size of the shot still image to attach to mail.

If you take snapshots while "Mail attachment" is set, the quality of image may be coarse because of restriction for file size.

You cannot attach the file in excess of 100 Kbytes to mail for sending.

## Purpose (Recording Size)



Setting at purchase  
Mail attachment

You can restrict the shooting size of moving images to the one you can attach to mail, when recording the moving images. You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

### 1 Finder display (FUNC) Purpose

Mail attachment .....Restricts to the file size you can attach to i-mode mail.

No purpose .....You can record up to approx. 800 Kbytes per shooting. (When "Store in" is set to "Phone".)

#### Information

See "Trim for mail" for changing the file size of the shot moving image to attach to mail.

You cannot attach the file in excess of 100 Kbytes to mail for sending.

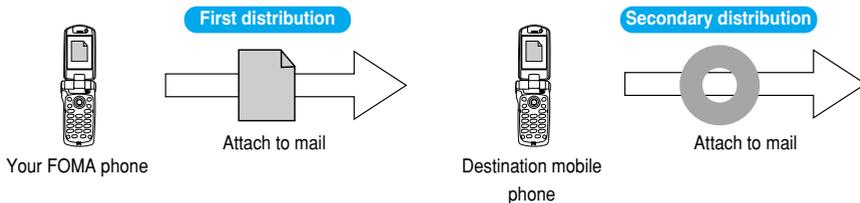


You can set the file restriction to “Restricted” or “Unrestricted” for when you save the shooting still or moving image. If you select “Restricted”, the operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled for the receiving end who has received the image at the first distribution.

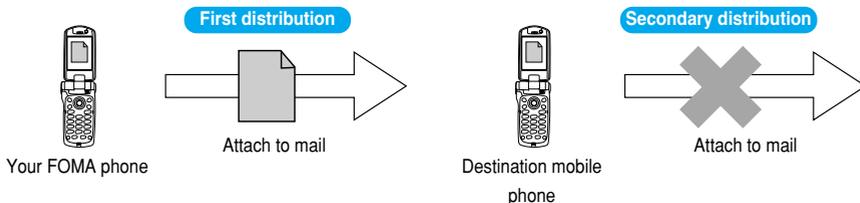
## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ File restriction

- Unrestricted .....Does not set the file restriction.
- Restricted .....Disables the secondary distribution.

### For “Unrestricted”



### For “Restricted”



### Information

Even if you set the file restriction to “Restricted”, the still or moving image files you have sent via Ir exchange function or exported to the miniSD memory card can be delivered from the destination to external devices.  
After saving, you can use “File restriction” (see page 345) to change the settings.  
When “Store in” is set to “SD card” in the Moving image shot mode, you cannot set “File restriction”.



You can select a shutter sound from three patterns for when you take still images. You can set only in the Snap shot mode or Continuous shot mode.

## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Shutter sound ▶ Shutter sound 1 /Shutter sound 2/Shutter sound 3



You can set whether to record the video or voice for recording moving images.  
You can set only in the Moving image shot mode.

## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Recording type

- Video + voice ..... Records the video and voice.  
Video ..... Records the video only.  
Voice ..... Records the voice only.

### Information

If you select "Voice" for recording, you cannot save or export to the miniSD memory card.  
When "Store in" is set for "SD card" in the Moving image shot mode, you cannot set "Recording type" to "Voice". If you change "Store in" to "SD card" while Recording type is set to "Voice", Recording type switches to "Video + voice".  
Even if you select "Voice" for recording, "Activating Camera" is displayed.

## Auto Timer



If you set Auto timer to "ON", the images are automatically shot about 10 seconds later.

## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Auto timer

- ON ..... Validates the Auto timer setting.  
OFF ..... Invalidates the Auto timer setting.  
From the Finder display, you can press (6) to set the Auto timer.

### When the Auto timer is set to "ON"

When set to "ON", the auto timer icon appears on the Finder display.

Press (O) to sound a confirmation tone: then the Call/Charging indicator flickers and the shooting is done 10 seconds later.

To cancel shooting, press (Q) while the Call/Charging Indicator lamp is flickering.



### Information

You cannot use Auto timer during manual continuous shot.

Auto timer will be set to "OFF" in the following cases:

- When the shot by Auto timer ends
- When you switch "Continuous mode" to "Manual cont. mode"
- When you end the camera



If you set “Night mode”, you can take a shot even in a dark environment.

## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Night mode

ON .....Validates Night mode.

OFF.....Invalidates Night mode.

From the Finder display, you can press (Z) to set Night mode.

### Information

You cannot activate Night mode during continuous shooting.

Note that the exposure time will take longer in Night mode so the image you take may be liable to blur.

This setting applies to the Finder display and Video-phone display.

## Recordable Image



The remaining number of files for still images that can be saved to the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card is displayed.

The number of files for storage location set by “Store in” is displayed.

## 1 Finder display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Recordable image

“ ” is inserted next to the currently selected image size. When “Frame” is set to “ON”,

“ ” is inserted next to the selected frame size.

After checking, press (Z).

Recordable image	
UXGA	11snaps
SXGA	11snaps
VGA	13snaps
CIF	100snaps
QCIF	100snaps
Sub-QCIF	100snaps
Screen	100snaps*

### Information

The number of recordable files displayed is an estimate. The number of files you can still save differs depending on “Snap image Qlty” image size or shooting environment. (See page 278)

When “Store in” is set to “Phone”, the displayed maximum number of still image files is “100”. When “Store in” is set to “SD card”, the displayed maximum number of still image files differ depending on the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card.

The displayed number of recordable files for “UXGA”, “SXGA”, “VGA”, “Sub-QCIF”, or “Screen” size in the Continuous shot mode is the number of files in the Snap shot mode.

Even when the remaining number of recordable files exceeds 999, “999 snaps” is displayed.

When “Store in” is set to “SD card”, you cannot check the number of recordable files if “\* \* \*” appears in the following cases:

- When the miniSD memory card is not inserted
- When the miniSD memory card that does not support the FOMA P900iV is inserted
- When the miniSD memory card whose capacity does not support the FOMA P900iV is inserted
- While inserting the miniSD memory card
- When the miniSD memory card formatting is wrong



You can display the operating method if you do not know how to operate the camera.

**1 Finder display** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Help

The operating methods for "Normal/video mode" and "Zoom" are displayed.

From the the Finder display, you can press to display Help.

<Camera OFF Setting>



**Setting Camera OFF**

Setting at purchase  
5 minutes

You can specify the time from the last operation of the camera until when the camera automatically turns OFF.

**1** ▶ ▶ Camera ▶ Set camera off

Invalidation .....Invalidates the camera OFF setting.

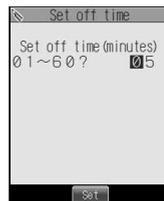
Set off time .....The camera automatically turns OFF in a certain period.

If you select "Set off time", the display for entering the specified time appears.

If you select "Invalidation", the "Set camera off" setting is released and the setting is completed.

**2 Enter the OFF specified time (minutes)** ▶

Enter "01" to "60" in two digits.



**Information**

If you keep activating the camera with "Set camera off" set to "Invalidation", the stand-by time might be shorter.

## &lt;Photo-sending&gt;

## Using Photo-sending

You can send a still image to the other party during a voice call. You can take a shot of landscape which you cannot express in words and send that as photo image. The still image is sent by attaching to i-mode mail, the receiving side can display it during a call.

To use Photo-sending, you need to store the phone number and mail address of the other party in the same Phonebook entry.

When the other party's phone is other than the FOMA P900i or FOMA P900iV, he/she might not be able to view the photo image during a call.

## Function menu

During a voice call, press  (  ) to display the following items.

Shoot/send photo	See this page
Select/SND photo	p.301
Display photo	p.301
Check new Msg.	p.302

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Shoot/Send Photo



You can send a still image you take on the spot.

## 1 During a voice call ( ) Shoot/send photo

The camera starts up.

## 2 Press .

The still image is taken.

See page 268 for the camera.

If you change the style in the Finder display, Front camera and Side camera switch.

Press  or  to switch to the Telescopic/Wide display.

Press  or  to return to the Calling display.



<Finder display>

## 3 Press .

You can bring up the display for selecting mail address by selecting "Send" from the Function menu and pressing .

Moreover, you can send the shot still image after you saved it by selecting "Save&Send" and pressing .

To cancel, press .



## 4 Select a mail address .

The still image is sent.

If you took in Movie style, return to Normal style.

When multiple mail addresses are stored, select the mail address you send mail to and press .

To cancel, select "Quit" and press .

**Information**

You cannot switch Shooting mode in the Finder display by pressing .

You cannot set snapshot size to other than "Sub-QCIF" or "QCIF". (When the camera starts up, the snapshot size is set to "QCIF".)

If you set "Frame" to "ON", Snap Size is fixed to "QCIF".

If you set "Snap Size" to "Sub-QCIF", you cannot select "Frame".

**Select/Send Photo**

You can send the saved still image.

**1 During a voice call**  **(FUNC)**  **Select/SND photo**

- Camera .....Selects an image from the "Camera" folder.
- i-mode .....Selects an image from the "i-mode" folder.
- SD card .....Selects an image from the miniSD memory card.
- Edit .....Selects an image from the "Edit" folder.
- Chara-den image .....Selects an image from the "Chara-den image" folder.

**2 Select a still image**  **Select the mail address** 

When multiple addresses are shown, select the mail address you send mail to and press



To cancel, select "Quit" and press .

**Information**

Even if you send a photo image of Screen size (240 x 266) by the FOMA P900iV to the other party, he/she cannot display it by the FOMA P900iV.

**Display Photo**

You can display the received photo still image.

When "Photo auto display" is set to "ON", the display in step 1 automatically appears.

**1 During a voice call**  **(FUNC)**  **Display photo**

If you have received photo mail, the still image is displayed.

If you have received multiple photo messages, you can press  to switch the still image.

To return to the Talk display, press  **(EXIT)**, , or **クワ**.

You can display the still image even if you have received photo mail by selecting "Check new Msg.".

**Information**

You can only display a photo image of long side-ways QCIF (176 x 144) and Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) by the FOMA P900iV.



You can make inquiry for i-mode during a voice call. (See page 182)

## 1 During a voice call (FUNC) Check new Msg.

If you have received photo mail with "Photo auto display" set to "ON", the display in step 1 of "Display Photo" on page 301 appears.

If you make inquiry for the i-mode center and receive a mail message and photo mail together, the still image for the photo mail is displayed.

### About Screen Displays at receiving "Photo-sending" by "Photo auto display" and "Receiving display"

During a call

Photo Auto display \ Receiving display	ON	OFF
Operation preferred	Displays	Not changed
Alarm preferred	Displays	Reception Result display

During displaying the received photo

Photo Auto display \ Receiving display	ON	OFF
Operation preferred	Not changed	Not changed
Alarm preferred	Not changed	Reception Result display

You will be able to switch the still image by pressing .

### Function menu

While the Finder display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

Camera setting	p.289
Snap size	p.303
Store in	p.293
File restriction	p.296
Auto timer	p.297
Night mode	p.298
Frame	p.294
Shutter sound	p.296
Recordable image	p.298
Help	p.299

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can select the size of the photo to be sent during a call.

## 1 Finder display (FUNC) Snap size

QCIF (176 x 144) .....176 x 144 dots.

Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....128 x 96 dots.

### Information

This function is not available in the following cases:

- When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are not stored in the Phonebook
- When the phone number and mail address of the other party on the phone are stored in the Phonebook in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- When the Caller ID is not notified to the receiving end (User unset, Not supported)  
(However, this function is available from the calling end.)
- When "Restrict dialing" is not set for the phone number of the other party on the phone during "Restrict dialing"
- During PIM lock
- When Draft is full (Cannot send.)
- When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail (Cannot receive.)
- During Call Waiting

The image size in excess of QCIF (176 x 144) is shrunk to QCIF (176 x 144) for sending.

The image quality for the image size in excess of 9,000 bytes is lowered for sending.

The following are the images you cannot send by Photo-sending:

- GIF file in excess of 9,000 bytes
- Files inside the "i-mode" folder of which delivery to devices other than the FOMA phone are prohibited
- Chara-den image that you recorded Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files in excess of SXGA (1,280 x 960) inside the miniSD memory card

If multiple mail addresses of the other party on the phone are stored in the Phonebook, the mail address is displayed (highlighted) on a send-confirmation display with the following priority.

i-mode address ("docomo.ne.jp" comes after @)

Address without domain name (characters after @) or phone number

The 1st address stored in the Phonebook

If you send a photo to the other party on the phone, select his/her mail address.

Received or sent photo is saved to the Outbox or Inbox as image attachment mail whose title is the phone number without the text body.

If you do not put a check mark next to "Image-valid" for "Attached file", the attached file is deleted when you receive photos.

## &lt;Bar Code Reader&gt;

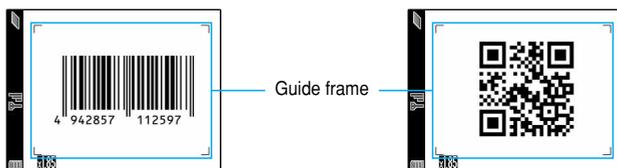
## Using Bar Code Reader

You can read JAN Code or QR Code by Side camera, and store them as data of phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, still images, or melodies.

Use the stored data to make calls, compose messages, or connect to the Internet.

**When scanning with the bar code reader:**

- Slide the Close-up lever to “” and start scanning.
- Scan codes with the camera 10 cm away from them. However, slowly bring the camera close to small codes so that those are shot large within the frame.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the codes.
- Scan so that the codes are inside the guide frame.
- After scanning, slide the Close-up lever back to “”.
- See page 287 for close-up mode.

**JAN Code**

**JAN Code is a bar code that denotes numerals with the vertical bars of a different width.**

“4942857112597” is displayed when the FOMA phone is used for reading the bar code on the left.

**QR Code**

**QR Code is one of the 2-dimensional codes that denotes data in the vertical and horizontal directions. Alphanumeric, Kanji, Katakana, and pictographs are displayed as characters.**

“株式会社NTTドコモ” is displayed when the FOMA phone is used for reading QR Code on the left.



Setting at purchase  
Photo light.....OFF  
Zoom.....1.85 times

You can store up to 5 scanned codes.

You can also combine up to 16 QR codes. Switch to Movie style when you scan code.

## 1 Bar code reader Scan code

Select from the Camera Shortcut menu and press : then the display on the right is brought up.

Also, select "Bar code reader" from the Function menu while the Finder display is displayed and press to bring up the display on the right.



<Bar Code Reader  
Select display>

## 2 Switch to Movie style Set close-up mode

Side camera starts up.

Select "Scan" from the Function menu in the Bar Code Reader list and press : then you are switched to Movie style and the display on the right appears.

If you can select "Bar code reader" from the Function menu in the Character Entry (Edit) display, select "Bar code reader" and press : then you can switch to Movie style and bring up the display at right.

When you press (機能 / メニュー), you can set photo light to "ON/OFF".

Press to switch the zoom to 1.25 times and press to 1.85 times.



<Code Scan Stand-by display>

## 3 Press .

The codes is read.

To cancel scanning, press (クリア) or .

When scanning ends, a beep sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights. The sound level is fixed to Level 4 and cannot be changed.

(The shutter tone does not sound.)

The file is indicated by "" for still images, by "" for melodies, and by "" for incompatible files.

If you have been entering (editing) characters, the Code Scanned Result display does not appear; instead the Character Entry (Edit) display will return with the scanned code entered. Still image and melody files are not entered. Further, the characters that could not be entered are displayed as half-pitch spaces.

When the read code is the QR code that can be linked, press to bring up the Code Scan Stand-by display for scanning next code. Repeat the procedures in step 3. A beep sounds when the code after the second code has been scanned and the Call/Charging indicator lights.

if scanning is disabled after a certain period elapsed, the scanning is automatically suspended and the Code Scan Stand-by display returns.

If scanning is suspended while scanning a linking code, the scanned data to that point is all discarded.



## 4 Switch to Normal style ( **FUNC** ) Save result



&lt;Code Scanned Result display&gt;

## 5 Select "<Not stored>"

The scanned data is stored and the title of the data is displayed in the Bar Code Reader List.

When you select a stored item and press  : then the confirmation display "Already saved Overwrite?" is brought up. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .



&lt;Bar Code Reader List&gt;

### Information

During PIM Lock, you cannot start up the bar code reader.

You cannot read bar codes or 2-dimensional codes other than the JAN Code or QR Code.

Scanning may take a time. Hold the FOMA phone securely with the hands during reading so that you can scan bar codes correctly.

You may not be able to scan codes correctly depending on scratch, dirt, damage, the quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR Code version.

You cannot read some bar codes depending on the type or size.

### Function menu

While the Code Scanned Result display is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Copy	p.307
Add to phonebook	p.308
Add bookmark	p.309
Save contents	p.309, 310
Save result	p.306

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can copy the read data.

## 1 Code Scanned Result display (FUNC) Select the position to start copying Select the position to complete copying

You can copy codes of up to 1,024 full-pitch or 2,048 half-pitch characters.  
See page 330 of "Basics" manual for pasting copied characters.



You can make a call to the phone number obtained by scanning the code. (See pages 66, 85 of "Basics" manual)

## 1 Code Scanned Result display Select the information of phone number



Voice phone .....Dials a voice call.

V-phone at 32K .....Dials the 32K video-phone call.

V-phone at 64K .....Dials the 64K video-phone call.

Select image .....Selects an image to send during video-phone calls from among "Me", "Pre-installed", "Original", and "Chara-den".

## 2 Dial

To cancel, select "Cancel" and press .

To notify the caller ID, select "Notify caller ID" and press . Not to notify, select "Don't notify ID" and press .

To suspend dialing, press .

### Information

You cannot make emergency calls by scanning "110", "119" or "118".

You cannot make a call during "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual), "Keypad dial lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual), or "Self mode" (see page 221 of "Basics" manual). To make the call, release the setting.



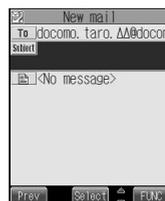
You can send mail to the mail address obtained by scanning the code.

## 1 Code Scanned Result display Select the information of mail address

The mail address has already been inserted to the address field.

Then, compose a message following from step 3 on page 150.

Select "Compose message" from the Code Scanned Result display and press : then the data from the Code Scanned Result display for the mail address, title, and text body have been entered to compose new message.





You can store phone numbers or mail addresses of the read data in the Phonebook.

When you add the data to the stored Phonebook entry, search the entry first, access it, and then add the data to the entry.

Example: Adding data to the Phonebook of the FOMA phone

## 1 Code Scanned Result display ▶ Select the information of phone number or mail address ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add to phonebook ▶ YES ▶ Phone

Select "Add to Phonebook" from the Code Scanned Result display and press : then the data from the Code Scanned Result display is entered to the name, reading, phone number, mail address, and memo fields of the Phonebook.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To store to the UIM, select "UIM".

## 2 Add

If you select "UIM" in step 1, "Overwrite" is displayed.

To newly store, select "New" and press : then follow the procedures of "Storing Phonebook Entries in FOMA Phone" (see page 122 of "Basics" manual) and then store.

To store the data to the Phonebook of the UIM, follow the procedures of "Storing Phonebook Entries in UIM" (see page 129 of "Basics" manual) and then store.

## 3 Select a search method ▶ ▶ Search an entry

See page 133 of "Basics" manual for how to search the Phonebook entry.

If you have selected the Phonebook entry of the FOMA phone in step 1 and four phone numbers or three mail addresses have already been stored, the entry you can no more store is displayed in gray, thus you cannot select it.

## 4 Select the Phonebook to store ▶ ▶

The phone number and mail address are entered automatically.

Then, follow procedures of "Editing Phonebook Entries" (see page 144 of "Basics" manual) and then store.



### Information

You cannot add the data to the Phonebook during "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual) or "Keypad dial lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual). To add, release the setting.



You can connect to the URL you have scanned. (See page 52)

## 1 Code Scanned Result display ▶ Select the information of URL ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To cancel while downloading the page, press (QUIT) or (クワイ).

## Add Bookmark



You can bookmark the URL you have scanned. (See page 58)

- Code Scanned Result display** ▶ **Select the information of URL** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Add bookmark** ▶ **YES** ▶ **Select the folder in which you store the data** ▶

Select "Add bookmark" from the Code Scanned Result display and press : then the name and the URL of the site is bookmarked.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

You can select the "Bookmark" folder only at purchase.

### Information

If the URL is in excess of 256 bytes, only 256 bytes from the top can be stored.

## Starting i-αppli



You can start up i-αppli from the data you have scanned. (See page 94)

- Code Scanned Result display** ▶ **Select the i-αppli start information** ▶ ▶ **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Information

If you have removed a check mark from "Bar code "i-αppli To"" of "Set i-αppli To", you cannot start i-αppli by using the scanned data.

If the specified software does not exist, you cannot start i-αppli.

## Saving Images



You can save the still image file you have scanned to the "Camera" folder (see page 318).

- Code Scanned Result display** ▶ **Select " "** ▶ (FUNC) ▶ **Save contents**

Select " " and press to display the still image.

### Information

The file name and title for the saved still image are as follows:

(Example) When saved at 10:00, 26th May, 2004

File name: 200405261000

Title: 2004/05/26 10:00



You can save the scanned melody file to “Original tone” (see page 388) for use as a ring tone.

## 1 Code Scanned Result display ▶ Select “ ” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Save contents

Select “ ” and press to play the melody.

## 2 YES

- Phone ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls.
  - Video-phone ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.
  - Mail ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail and Short Message (SMS).
  - Message request ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Request.
  - Message free ..... Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Free.
- To cancel, select “NO” and press .

### Information

The file name for the saved melody takes as follows:

(Example) When saved at 10:00, 26th May, 2004

File name: 200405261000

The melody of no title is listed as “No title”.

In Manner Mode, “Setting manner mode Play melody?” is displayed if you try to play the melody back. To play back, select “YES” and press . To cancel, select “NO” and press .

When playing the melody back, it is played back at the sound volume specified in “Phone/Video-phone” of “Ring Volume” (see page 83 of “Basics” manual).

You cannot play the melody back during calls.

# Display List



Up to five titles for the scanned data are listed.

## 1 Bar code reader ▶ Saved data

The titles for the stored data are displayed.

Press (Start) or select “Scan” from the Function menu and press : then you can switch to Movie style to bring up the Code Scan Stand-by display, enabling you to scan data.

Select the stored data and press and the Code Scanned Result display comes up.



<Bar Code Reader List>

### Information

The title for the scanned data are as follows:

(Example) When saved at 10:00, 26th May, 2004

Title name: 2004/05/26 10:00

**Function menu**

While the Bar Code Reader List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Add desktop icon	p.311
Delete this	p.311
Delete all	p.311
Scan	p.305

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

**Add Desktop Icon**

You can paste the bar code reader function to the desktop.

# 1 Bar Code Reader List

 ( **FUNC** ) **Add desktop icon** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

**Accessing the bar code reader function from the desktop icon**

1. Press  in the Stand-by display.
2. Use  to select the bar code reader icon and press .  
Bar code reader selection display appears.

**Information**

You cannot paste the read data using the bar code reader to the desktop.  
See page 205 of "Basics" manual for how to delete pasted icons.

**Delete This/Delete All**

# 1 Bar Code Reader List

 ( **FUNC** ) **Delete this/Delete all** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To "Delete all", enter the Terminal Security Code and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

<Text Reader>

## Using Text Reader

By using Side camera, you can scan printed phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs as text information. Use the stored text information to make calls, compose messages, or connect to the Internet.

**When scanning with the text reader:**

- Slide the Close-up lever to "🌸" and start scanning.
- Scan characters with the camera 10 cm away from them. The scanning rate is lowered if you scan text off about 10 cm.
- Scan so that the camera is in parallel with the characters.
- Scan so that the characters will be in the scanning range.
- After scanning, slide the Close-up lever back to "●".
- See page 287 for close-up mode.

Scanning range



## Reading Text



Setting at purchase  
Scan mode...Automatic  
Photo light...OFF

You can store the 20 scanned data items of up to 256 half-pitch characters per item. The number of characters you can scan at a time is up to 50 half-pitch characters. Split a lengthy text for reading. Switch to Movie style when you read texts.

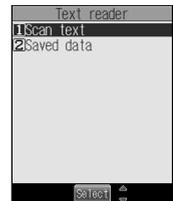
1



Text reader ▶ Scan text

Select from the Camera Shortcut menu and press : then the display on the right is brought up.

Select "Text reader" from the Function menu while the Finder display is displayed and press : then the display on the right is brought up.



<Text Reader Select display>

2

Switch to Movie style ▶ Set close-up mode

Side camera starts up.

Select "Scan" from the Function menu in the Text Reader List and press : then you are switched to Movie style and the display on the right appears.

Press to sort out scan mode from the following five items in order.

- (Automatic) .....Automatically identifies the type of characters.
- (URL) ..... Selects to scan URLs.
- (Mail address) .....Selects to scan mail addresses.
- (Phone number).....Selects to scan phone numbers.
- (Free) ..... Selects to scan characters other than the above.

When you press (機能 / メニュー), you can set photo light to "ON/OFF".



<Text Scan Stand-by display>

Scan mode

### 3 Press .

The characters within the readable range are scanned.

To cancel scanning, press  (クリア)

When scanning is finished, a beep sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights.

The sound volume is fixed to Level 4 and cannot be changed.

(The shutter tone does not sound.)

If you read more than 50 half-pitch characters, see page 316 for "Concatenate".



### 4 Switch to Normal style (FUNC) Save



<Text Scanned Result display>

### 5 Select "<Not stored>"

The scanned texts are stored.

When you select a stored item and press : then the confirmation display "Already saved Overwrite?" is brought up. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .



<Text Reader List>

#### Information

During PIM lock, you cannot start up the text reader.

Hold the FOMA phone securely with the hands during scanning so that you can scan characters correctly.

The characters you can read using the text reader are Alphabets (uppercase and lowercase) and half-pitch numerals and symbols (#, &, (, ), -, ., /, :, @, [, ], \_ ~, ?, =, %, +). You cannot scan full-pitch Kanji or Hiragana characters.

You cannot scan hand written characters. Also, some characters might not be scanned correctly depending on the lighting.

You might not be able to scan copied or designed characters, or characters that were received via a facsimile, or characters whose certain space between is not kept or background is not easy to identify from characters.

#### Function menu

While the Text Scanned Result display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display following items.

Concatenate	p.316
Edit	p.316
Copy	p.317
Add to phonebook	p.314
Add bookmark	p.315
Save	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Making a Call



You can make a call to the phone number obtained by scanning. (See pages 66, 85 of “Basics” manual)

### 1 Text Scanned Result display ▶ Select the information of phone number ▶

Voice phone .....Dials a voice call.

V-phone at 32K .....Dials a 32K video-phone call.

V-phone at 64K .....Dials a 64K video-phone call.

Select image .....Selects an image to send during video-phone calls from among “Me”, “Pre-installed”, “Original” and “Chara-den”.

### 2 Dial

To cancel, select “Cancel” and press .

To notify the Caller ID, select “Notify caller ID” and press . Not to notify, select “Don't notify ID” and press .

To suspend dialing, press .

#### Information

You cannot make emergency calls by scanning “110”, “119” or “118”.

You cannot make a call during “Restrict dialing” (see page 157 of “Basics” manual), “Keypad dial lock” (see page 219 of “Basics” manual), or “Self mode” (see page 221 of “Basics” manual). To make the call, release the setting.

## Sending Mail

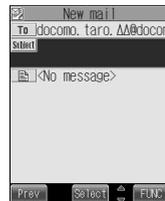


You can send mail to the mail address obtained by scanning.

### 1 Text Scanned Result display ▶ Select the information of mail address ▶

The mail address has already been inserted to the address field.

Then, follow from step 3 on page 150 to compose a message.



## Add to Phonebook



You can store the read data of phone numbers or mail addresses in the Phonebook.

To add the data to the stored Phonebook entry, search for the entry first, access it, and then add the data to the entry.

Example: Adding data to the Phonebook of the FOMA phone

### 1 Text Scanned Result display ▶ Select the phone number or mail address

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Add to phonebook ▶ YES ▶ Phone

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

To store to the Phonebook in the UIM, select “UIM”.

## 2 Add

If you select "UIM" in step 1, "Overwrite" is displayed.

To newly store, select "New" and press : then follow the procedures of "Storing Phonebook Entries in FOMA Phone" (see page 122 of "Basics" manual) and then store.

To store the data to the Phonebook of the UIM, follow the procedures of "Storing Phonebook Entries in UIM" (see page 129 of "Basics" manual) and then store.

## 3 Select a search method Search the entry

See page 133 of "Basics" manual for how to search the Phonebook entry.

If you have selected the Phonebook entry of the FOMA phone in step 1 and four phone numbers or three mail addresses have already been stored, the entry you can no more store is displayed in gray, thus you cannot select it.

## 4 Select the Phonebook to store

The phone number and mail address are entered automatically.

Then, follow procedures of "Editing Phonebook Entries" (see page 144 of "Basics" manual) and then store.



### Information

You cannot add the data to the Phonebook during "Restrict dialing" (see page 157 of "Basics" manual) or "Keypad dial lock" (see page 219 of "Basics" manual). To add, release the setting.

## Accessing URL

You can connect to the scanned URL (see page 52).

### 1 Text Scanned Result display Select the information of URL YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To cancel downloading the page, press  (Quit) or .

## Add Bookmark

You can bookmark the URL you have scanned (see page 58).

### 1 Text Scanned Result display Select the information of URL (FUNC) Add bookmark YES OK Select the folder in which you store the data



To cancel, select "NO" and press .

You can select "Bookmark" folder only at the time of purchase.

## Concatenate



You can split and scan long text information of 50 or more half-pitch characters and then concatenate them. You can concatenate up to 256 half-pitch characters per item.

**1** Text Scanned Result display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Concatenate

**2** Switch to Movie style ▶ Press .

The characters within the readable range are read.

The read characters are added to the end of the character that has been read right before.

Repeat steps 1 and 2 to concatenate the characters.

## Edit



You can edit the text you have scanned.

**1** Text Scanned Result display ▶ (Edit)

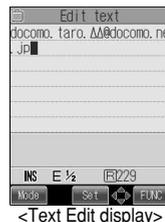
You cannot use in Viewer style.

Select "Edit" from the Function menu in the Text Scanned Result display and press : then the Edit display is brought up.

**2** Edit the text ▶

You can enter alphanumeric and half-pitch symbols.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## Display List



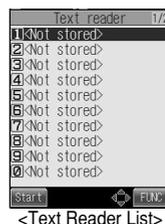
Up to 20 scanned data are listed.

**1** ▶ ▶ Text reader ▶ Saved data

Up to 20 half-pitch characters are displayed for each stored data.

Press (Start) or select "Scan" from the Function menu and press : then you can switch to Movie style to bring up the Text Scan Stand-by display, enabling you to scan data.

Select the stored data and press and the Text Scanned Result display comes up.



### Function menu

While the Text Reader List is displayed, press (FUNC) to display the following items.

Copy	p.317
Add desktop icon	p.317
Delete this	p.317
Delete all	p.317
Scan	p.312

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Copy



You can copy the scanned data.

### To copy partly

- 1 Text Scanned Result display/Text Edit display** **(FUNC)** **Copy**  
**Select the start point for copying** **Select the end point for copying**

You can copy up to 256 half-pitch characters.

See page 330 of "Basics" manual for pasting the copied characters.

### To copy all at once

- 1 Text Reader List** **Select the stored item** **(FUNC)** **Copy**

The stored items you have selected are copied all in block

See page 330 of "Basics" manual for pasting the copied characters.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can paste the text reader function to the desktop.

- 1 Text Reader List** **(FUNC)** **Add desktop icon** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Accessing the text reader function from the desktop icon

1. Press in the Stand-by display.
2. Use to select the icon for the text reader and press .  
Text Reader Selection display appears.



### Information

You cannot paste the read text using the text reader to the desktop.

See page 205 of "Basics" manual to delete pasted icons.

## Delete This/Delete All



- 1 Text Reader List** **(FUNC)** **Delete this/Delete all** **YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To "Delete all", enter the Terminal Security Code and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.



# Displaying Images

You can display the shot still images (see pages 274 and 276), downloaded still images (see page 69), or still images saved to the miniSD memory card.

On the FOMA phone, you can display JPEG files, GIF files, Flash images, or video-phone images. However, you may not display some files even when their file formats are supported.

See page 342 for the Still Image List.

## 1 Image



- Camera .....Displays the List of still images taken shots of and saved to the phone.
- i-mode .....Displays the List of downloaded images or images attached to mail.
- SD card .....Displays the folders within the miniSD memory card.
- Edit .....Displays the List of still images edited from "Edit image".
- Chara-den image .....Displays the List of still images recorded Chara-den.
- Item .....Displays the List of items such as frames or marks.
- Stand-by/Wake-up .....Displays the List of images set for the Stand-by or Wake-up display at purchase.
- Animation .....Displays original animations. You need not follow step 2.
- Video-phone display .....Displays images for the video-phone.

If you select "SD card", the Folder List is displayed. Select the folder and press to list the still images.

If you select "Video-phone display", select "Fixed V-phone display" or "Orig. V-phone display" and press to list the still images.

## 2 Select a file

When you display Flash images, press (Retrv) or change the style to switch between vertical display and horizontal display: then you can play back Flash images from the beginning.



### Viewer Style

1 Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second

2 Use to select Use to select "Image"

3 Use to select the folder to be displayed

4 Use to select the file



### Information

You cannot display the still image in excess of UXGA (1600 x 1200 dots) size.

You cannot display the still image in excess of 700 Kbytes in the miniSD memory card.

When the files inside the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card are many, it may take longer to access the image file you want to display.

See page 354 for Original Animation.

**If you switch to Viewer style while the camera is working with “Work with style” set to “ON”:**

The latest still, moving or i-motion image within the “Camera” folder is displayed.

When the camera is activating in the Snap shot mode or in the Continuous shot mode, the still image is displayed and when the camera is activating in the Moving image shot mode, the moving images or i-motion are played back.

When “Store in” is set for “SD card”, the latest still or moving image or i-motion within the set folder is displayed.

**Information**

The latest still, moving or i-motion image within the latest folder created in the FOMA phone is displayed, while “Store in” is set for “SD card” in the following cases:

- After the miniSD memory card is inserted
- After the miniSD memory card is checked
- After the power is switched on

The still, moving or i-motion image within the “Camera” folder is displayed, while “Store in” is set for “SD card” in the following cases:

- When the miniSD memory card is not inserted
- When the miniSD memory card has no file
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card

The “image” or “i-motion” Folder List is displayed, when the “Camera” folder has no file.

**Operations when playing still image**

You can do the following operations from the display for playing still images.



<Normal style display>



<Movie style display (horizontal)>



<Viewer style display>

Operation	Key operation		
	Normal style	Movie style	Viewer style
Displays the next file	Press  or  .	Press  .	Press  .
Displays the previous file	Press  or  .	Press  .	Press  .

Displays in the order of the File list.

**Specifications for playing still image files**

File format	JPEG, GIF, Flash
Pixels	Files of UXGA (1600 x 1200) or less
Extension	jpg (Exif/CIFF/JFIF format Baseline, Progressive), gif, swf, ifm

## Using Images

You can use a still image for various purposes by selecting the function from the Function menu while playing the still image.

### Function menu

While playing the still image, press  () to display the following items.

Edit image	p.329
Set as display	p.321
Image info	p.322
Compose message	p.323
Send Ir data	p.402
Set image disp.	p.324
Add desktop icon	p.324
Import	p.326
Export	p.325
Add image to PB	p.327
Positioning	p.327
Clipping area	p.328
DPOF setting	p.329
AV OUT	p.386
Delete	p.352

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can paste the displayed or selected still image file to the Stand-by display.

See “Positioning” and “Clipping area” for the position or area in which you are pasting the still image.

## 1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Set as display

- Stand-by display …Pastes to the Stand-by display (see page 187 of “Basics” manual).
- Wake-up display …Pastes to the Wake-up display (see page 189 of “Basics” manual).
- Dialing …Pastes to the Dialing display (see page 190 of “Basics” manual).
- Calling …Pastes to the Call Receiving display (see page 190 of “Basics” manual).
- Mail sending …Pastes to the Mail Sending display (see page 190 of “Basics” manual).
- Mail receiving …Pastes to the Mail Receiving display (see page 190 of “Basics” manual).
- Checking …Pastes to the “Check new message”, and “Check new SMS” display (see page 190 of “Basics” manual).
- On hold …Pastes to the Video-phone Call Hold display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).
- Holding …Pastes to the Video-phone Call Hold in Talk display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).
- Camera off …Pastes to the Video-phone Substitute Image display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).
- Preparing …Pastes to the Video-phone Record Message Preparatory display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).
- Recording …Pastes to the Video-phone Record Message Recording display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).
- Video memo …Pastes to the Video-phone Video Memo display (see page 103 of “Basics” manual).

“ ” is displayed for the pasted items but not for the video-phone related items already pasted.

If you select the video-phone related items, “応答保留/On Hold”, “保留/Holding”, “カメラオフ/Camera off”, “伝言メモ準備中/Preparing”, “伝言メモ録画中/Recording”, or “動画メモ録画中/Recording” is displayed. Use  to set the display position and press .

You cannot paste some files depending on format.

Format pasting to	File format		
	GIF	JPEG	Flash
Stand-by display			
Wake-up display			×
Dialing			×
Calling			×
Mail sending			×
Mail receiving			×
Checking			×
On hold			×
Holding			×
Camera off			×
Preparing			×
Recording			×
Video memo			×

: Pasting disabled partly (the still images in excess of 100 Kbytes)

: Pasting disabled partly (Animations, files set with the file restriction inside i-mode folder, still images whose sizes are other than VGA, QVGA, CIF, QCIF, Sub-QCIF)

: Pasting disabled partly (files set with the file restriction inside i-mode folder, still images inside the Chara-den image folder recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction, still images whose sizes are other than VGA, QVGA, CIF, QCIF, Sub-QCIF)

× : Pasting disabled

## Information

You cannot paste the still image larger than VGA size.

The displayed size might differ from actual size depending on the image size or the display pasted to.

You cannot paste still images within the miniSD memory card.

The still images within Item folder cannot be set as display.

You can paste still images within the pre-installed Stand-by and Wake-up folders to the Stand-by display and Wake-up display only.

You cannot paste some image files.

## Image Information



You can display the information about the displayed or selected still image.

### 1 Still image in play/Still Image List > (i) (FUNC) > Image info

Use  to scroll the display.

The information about "Set as display" only is displayed for the original animation.



Item	Information details
File name	Displays the file name.
Access right	Displays if you have access right or not. If no information, "Rewritable" is displayed.
Format	Displays file format. If the file is Flash, it is not displayed.
File size	Displays file size.
Display size	Displays the display size. The still image larger than UXGA (1600 x 1200) size is displayed with "Unknown". If the file is Flash, it is not displayed.
Received from	Displays the folder the file saved to. Vacant for pre-installed still images.
Saved at	Displays the date/time files were saved. If no information, "---/-- --:--" is displayed.
File restriction	Displays if files are restricted or not.
Set as display	Displays the location pasting to (not displayed for video-phone related items).
DPOF setting	Displays if DPOF is set or not and the number of still image files. "* *" indicates that 100 or more frames are set. (still images in the miniSD memory card only).



You can attach the displayed or selected file to i-mode mail and send.

**1 Still image in play/Still Image List** (FUNC)

See page 150, 177 for sending or saving i-mode mail.

**The display on the right comes up when the file size of a still image is larger than 10,000 bytes.**

Select either "Mail size (L)" or "Mail size (S)" and press .

Mail size (L).....Attaches the still image to i-mode mail as the image of bulky size.

A still image in excess of 102,400 bytes and larger than VGA (640 x 480) size is reduced or trimmed to VGA size.

When the file size is in excess of 102,400 bytes, it is converted to 102,400 bytes or less.

Mail size (S).....Reduces or trims the still image to QCIF (176 x 144) size and converts the file size to 9,000 bytes or less.



**Information**

When the still image is converted to "Mail size (L)" or "Mail size (S)", the attached file name takes "image".

**Information**

You cannot compose i-mode mail in the following cases:

- When 10 draft mails are saved
- For GIF files in excess of 10,000 bytes
- For the files set with the file restriction within the i-mode folder
- Files other than JPEG inside the miniSD memory card
- Files in excess of UXGA size inside the miniSD memory card
- Files in excess of 700 Kbytes inside the miniSD memory card
- Files recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction
- For Flash images
- Files inside the "Item" folder

A still image in excess of 10,000 bytes is handled as the image of bulky size.

You can send the image of bulky size to a personal computer; you cannot send it to the FOMA phone or i-mode mobile phone, however.

See page 296 for attaching the file set with the file restriction to i-mode mail.

## Set Image Display



Setting at purchase  
Still image .....Normal  
Moving image ...Actual size

You can set the display method for the still image or moving image while being displayed.

### 1 Still image in play/Moving image in pause/Moving image at stop/Moving image play end (FUNC) Set image disp.

Normal .....Displays in original size (equivalent size).

(The still or moving image in excess of the display size is reduced to the display size.)

Fit in display .....Displays the still image to fit to the display size.

For Moving image in pause, Moving image at stop and Moving image play end, "Actual size" is displayed.

#### Information

The moving image whose size is other than QCIF (176 x 144) and QVGA (320 x 240) might not be fitted in the display size even if "Fit in display" is set.

When "Fit in display" is set, the moving images output to TV are also displayed to fit the screen dimensions.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can create the desktop icon for the displayed or selected file (see page 203 of "Basics" manual) on the desktop. Once you create the desktop icon, you can display or play the target file by just selecting the desktop icon from the next time. You can store up to 12 desktop icons.

### 1 Still image in play/Still Image List/Moving image in pause/Moving image play end/Moving Image List (FUNC) Add desktop icon YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

See page 201 of "Basics" manual for how to play files from the desktop icon.

If you delete the original file, the desktop icon remains but you cannot display or play the file. See page 205 of "Basics" manual for deleting the desktop icon.

You cannot paste files within other than "Camera", "i-mode", "Edit", "Chara-den image", and "Chara-den video" folders to the desktop.

You cannot paste the file set with the play restriction to the desktop.



You can copy the displayed or selected file from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card.  
You can export JPEG files (Baseline and Progressive of Exif/JFIF format) and MP4 files only.

## 1 Still image in play/Still Image List/Moving image in pause/Moving image play end/Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Export

To cancel, press  (Quit).



### Information

Do not pull the miniSD memory card out during exporting.

You can export files only in "Camera", "i-mode", "Edit", "Chara-den image", and "Chara-den video" folders.

You cannot export the moving image with the voice only recorded.

When the folder in the miniSD memory card is full of files, the new folder is automatically created, saving files to it.

When exporting is completed, "Storage is changed to XXXXXXXX" (XXXXXXX denotes the folder name) is displayed.

The file after exporting takes the name of:

- Still image file: PXXXXXXX (X denotes numerals.)
- Moving image file: MOLXXX (X denotes Alphanumeric.)

You cannot export files in the following cases:

- Flash images
- Files that you recorded Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"
- Files set with the file restrictions in the i-mode folder
- Files set with the play restriction
- When the miniSD memory card is write-protected
- When memory in the miniSD memory card is full
- When 128 Mbytes or more of the miniSD memory card is inserted
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card
- A still image which exceeds 700 Kbytes after exporting
- In the insertion process of the miniSD memory card

If you export the file to the miniSD memory card, the image quality may deteriorate or the file size becomes large.

If you export the file whose saving date/time is "---/--/--:--:", the saving date/time for the file will be "2004/01/01 00:00".

To export JPEG files larger than VGA size, the files might be shrunk to VGA size.



You can import the displayed or selected file in the miniSD memory card to the camera folder within the FOMA phone. However, you can import JPEG or MP4 files only. ASF, the MP4 file in excess of 800 Kbytes or the file of QVGA size is automatically trimmed, converted or shrunk to 800 Kbytes and imported.

## 1 Still image in miniSD memory card in play/Still Image List/Moving image in pause/Moving image play end/Moving Image List

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Import

To cancel, press (Quit).



### Information

Do not pull the miniSD memory card out during importing.

You cannot import when the memory of the FOMA phone is full.

You cannot import Flash images.

You cannot import an image in excess of 700 Kbytes.

You cannot import an image larger than UXGA size.

Even if the file is MP4, you cannot import the moving image file with extension "MP4" or "SDV".

Playing the imported ASF file may take a time. Also, you cannot import some ASF files.

When importing moving images, the images are trimmed, converted or shrunk; therefore the images may deteriorate or the file size may change.

When importing the ASF file with ticker or MP4 file with ticker in excess of 800 Kbytes, a message to the effect that the ticker information will be lost appears. Select "YES" and press .

When importing QVGA size of moving images, they are converted into QCIF size and the confirmation display to the effect that ticker information will be lost is brought up. Select "YES" and press .

When importing QVGA size of moving images, the ASF file, the file in excess of 800 Kbytes, the confirmation display to the effect that it takes a longer time is brought up. Select "YES" and press .

You cannot import the moving image file in excess of 800 Kbytes in the following cases:

- When incompatible codec is contained
- When the voice codec is AAC
- When no video or voice is contained
- When moving image bit rate is in excess of 768 kbps
- When the moving image size is other than QVGA, QCIF or Sub-QCIF
- When Seek is disabled

Some i-motion files cannot be imported in the conditions other than the above.

The file after importing takes the title of:

- Still image file
  - The title set within the miniSD memory card
  - When no title is set within the miniSD memory card: file name
- Moving image file
  - The title set within the miniSD memory card
  - When no title is set within the miniSD memory card: file name

The file name after importing will be "YYYYMMDDhhmm". If the date and time are not set, the file name will be "Image" (still image) or "Movie" (moving image). (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)

When importing the JPEG file in excess of VGA size, it might be shrunk to VGA size.

## Add Image to Phonebook



You can store the displayed or selected still image file to the Phonebook. The still image appears when a call comes in from the stored phone number.

### 1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Add image to PB

See page 122 of "Basics" manual for storing data to the Phonebook.

#### Information

You can store a total 70 still and moving images to the Phonebook as "Add image to Phonebook" and "Add i-motion to Phonebook".

You cannot store the still image during restrict dialing, or keypad dial lock.

Even if you delete the original still image files from the "Camera", "i-mode", "Edit", or "Chara-den image" folders, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed as is.

You cannot save the still image file in the following cases:

- When the file in GIF format or Flash image
- The file in excess of 20 Kbytes
- The file set with the file restriction
- The file within the miniSD memory card
- The file within the "Item" folder

## Positioning



Setting at purchase  
Center

You can set the position for when you paste the displayed or selected still image to the Stand-by display. See page 321 for pasting images.

### 1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Positioning

Center .....Displays the still image at the center of the display.

Top .....Displays the still image at the upper part of the display.

Bottom .....Displays the still image at the lower part of the display.

#### Example of pasted still image onto the Stand-by display



<Center>



<Top>



<Bottom>

#### Information

You cannot set the position for Flash images.

The still image may not be positioned in the specified place depending on the size of the image.

The set display position is valid for the Stand-by, Wake-up, Dialing, Call Receiving, Mail Sending, Mail Receiving, and Check New Message displays.



You can set the clipping area for the displayed or selected still image to be pasted to the Stand-by display. See page 321 for pasting images.

## 1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Clipping area

Center .....Displays the center of the still image.

Upper .....Displays the upper part of still image.

Lower .....Displays the lower part of the still image.

### Example of pasted still image onto the Stand-by display



<Original image>



<Center>



<Upper>



<Lower>

### Information

You cannot set the clipping area for Flash images.

The set clipping area is valid for the Stand-by, Wake-up, Dialing, Call Receiving, Mail Sending, Mail Receiving, and Check New Message displays. But the still image may not be clipped in the specified area depending on the size of the image.



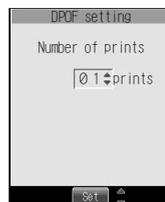
You can give information to the displayed or selected still image within the miniSD memory card, about whether to print it out and number of print copies. You can easily print out the desired still images by bringing the card to a service shop which provides a service supporting the SD memory card or by using the printer supporting DPOF.

## 1 Still image in miniSD memory card in play/Still Image List

### ▶ DPOF setting

- Print.....Prints the selected still image.
  - Print OFF.....Sets the selected still image not to be printed.
  - All print OFF.....Sets all still images not to be printed.
- If you select "Print", the display for entering the number of sheets appears.  
If you select "Print OFF" or "All print OFF", the DPOF setting is finished.

## 2 Select the number of frames you want to print out



### Information

You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 still image files.  
You cannot set the still image in excess of 700 Kbytes.  
The DPOF setting set by other devices such as personal computers is disabled except the information about the number of frames to be printed out.  
If space in the miniSD memory card is not enough, the DPOF setting might not be set. (Icon displays and image information are set finished.) Delete unnecessary files, make memory space, and then try again.

## <Edit Image>



### Editing Still Images

You can edit freely the displayed or selected still image by adding frame or characters or changing the brightness or color tone. The edited still image is saved to the "Edit" folder (see page 318).

## 1 Still image in play/Still Image List ▶ Edit image

When the still image is larger than the display size, use to scroll the image.



<Image Edit display>

## 2 ▶ Edit the still image

See pages 332 to 341 for how to operate.

### 3 Press .

Phone .....Saves the image to the Edit folder.

SD card .....Saves the image to the miniSD memory card.

The edited still image is saved.

Not to save the edited still image, press  or  : then select "YES" and press .



#### Folders that you can edit image

Folder	Image edit
Camera folder	
i-mode folder	1
SD card	
Edit folder	
Chara-den image folder	2
Item	×
Stand-by/Wake-up	×
Animation	×
Fixed video-phone display	×
Original video-phone display	×

: Image editing is enabled. × : Image editing is disabled.

1 Only still image with no file restriction

2 Only still image recorded Chara-den model with no file restriction only

#### The size of still image that you can edit

- Still image of UXGA (1600 x 1200) size
- Still image of SXGA (1280 x 960) size
- Still image of VGA (640 x 480) size
- Still image of CIF (352 x 288) size

For editing, the size is reduced to VGA (640 x 480) size.

#### Information

You cannot save the still image if the size after editing is larger than CIF (352 x 288) size.

### When images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of images is stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary images and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .
2. Change the image to be deleted to the gray display.  
Press  to switch to the gray display.
3. Press  (Finish).
4. Select "YES" and press .  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Information

If you repeat editing image such as pasting frames or marks to the shot still image, the image quality may be deteriorated or the file size becomes large.

The still image is saved with the status just before the current editing if a call comes in or the battery level goes flat while editing.

### Function menu

While the Image Edit display is displayed, press  (FUNC) to display the following items.

Frame	p.332
Mark	p.332
Combine w/ text	p.333
Combine w/ image	p.334
Change size	p.335
Trim away	p.336
Compose message	p.337
Mosaic	p.338
Rotate	p.339
Flip	p.339
Brightness	p.340
Tone	p.340
Image quality	p.341
File restriction	p.341

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Frame



You can add frames to the still image you are editing.

- 1 Image Edit display  (FUNC)  Frame  
▶ Select a frame  



### Information

You cannot add the frame whose size is not the same as the size of the image you are editing.

The size of still images to which you can add frames are as follows:

QVGA (320 x 240), CIF (352 x 288), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), Screen (240 x 266), Subscreen (96 x 64)

## Mark



You can add the mark within the Item folder to the still image you are editing.

- 1 Image Edit display  (FUNC)  Mark  Select a mark 

You cannot select the mark larger than the still image you are editing.



- 2 Use  to position the mark 

The mark that comes out of the still image is cut off.

### To rotate, enlarge, or reduce marks

<Rotate>

1. After step 1  (FUNC)  90° to right/90° to left/180°

<Enlarge or reduce>

1. After step 1  (FUNC)  Scale up/Scale down

You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce the mark.

You cannot enlarge the mark to the size larger than the still image you are editing. You cannot reduce the mark size to one dot or less.

### Information

You cannot select the marks with following dimensions, nor with the dimensions that are flipped vertically and horizontally:

QVGA (320 x 240), CIF (352 x 288), QCIF (176 x 144), Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), Screen (240 x 266), Subscreen (96 x 64)

You cannot add the mark to the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960) or VGA (640 x 480).



You can add characters to the still image you are editing.

## 1 Image Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Combine w/ text

### ▶ Enter the characters you want to add ▶ (O)

You can enter up to 14 full-pitch or 28 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## 2 Use (O) to position the characters ▶ (O)

The characters that come out of the still image are cut off.

### To change character color, font, and size

<To change character color>

1. After step 1 ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Font color

2. Select a color ▶ (O)

Press (envelope icon) (change) to switch colors between 16 colors and 256 colors.

<To change character font>

1. After step 1 ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Font

2. Select a font ▶ (O)

<To change character size>

1. After step 1 ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Font size

2. Select a size ▶ (O)

### Information

You cannot add characters to the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960) or VGA (640 x 480).



You can add other still images to the still image you are editing.

## 1 Image Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Combine w/ image

- Camera ..... Pastes the still image from the Camera folder.  
 i-mode ..... Pastes the still image from the i-mode folder.  
 SD card ..... Pastes the still image from the SD card folder.  
 Edit ..... Pastes the still image from the Edit folder.  
 Chara-den image ..... Pastes the still image from the Chara-den folder.

## 2 Select a still image ▶ ▶ Use to position the image



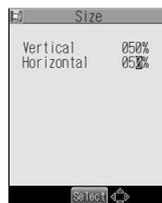
- You can select only the still image of CIF (352 x 288) size or smaller.  
 The still image that comes out of the original still image is cut off.



### To change the size of still image you are pasting

1. Select the still image in step 2 and press (Size).
2. Enter the vertical and horizontal magnifications and press .

You cannot enlarge the image to the size larger than CIF (352 x 288).



### Information

You cannot add an image to the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960) or VGA (640 x 480).

You cannot add the following still image files:

- Files larger than CIF (352 x 288) size
- Files other than JPEG within Camera folder
- Files other than JPEG within i-mode folder or files set with the file restriction
- Files other than JPEG within miniSD memory card or files in excess of 700Kbytes
- Files recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction



You can change the size of the still image you are editing.

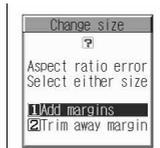
# 1 Image Edit display (FUNC) > Change size

- CIF (352 x 288) .....Changes the image to CIF size.
- QVGA (320 x 240) .....Changes the image to QVGA size.
- QCIF (176 x 144) .....Changes the image to QCIF size.
- Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....Changes the image to Sub-QCIF size.
- Screen (240 x 266) .....Changes the image to Screen size.
- Subscreen (96 x 64) .....Changes the image to Private window.
- CIF Vert. (288 x 352) .....Changes the image to CIF Vert. size.
- QVGA Vert. (240 x 320) .....Changes the image to QVGA Vert. size.
- QCIF Vert. (144 x 176) .....Changes the image to QCIF Vert. size.
- Sub-QCIF V (96 x 128) .....Changes the image to Sub-QCIF Vert. size.
- Defined size .....Enters the size and changes.

**When the vertical vs horizontal ratio for the origin still image is different from that for the image to be changed, the display on the right appears.**

Add margins .....Adds spaces to the top and bottom or to the left or right so that the image is enlarged or reduced to fit in the specified dimensions.

Trim away margin .....Cuts the overflowed portions at the top and bottom or at the left or right so that the image is enlarged or reduced to fit in the specified dimensions.



### To enter and specify the dimensions of a still image:

1. Select "Defined size" in step 1, enter values, and then press .
- Press (Check) and enter a check mark for "Fix aspect ratio": then when you enter values in Vertical (or Horizontal), values that maintain aspect ratio are entered automatically.



### Information

You cannot change the size to 352 x 288 (or 288 x 352) or more. You cannot change the size to 1 x 1 or less, either.

## 2 Press .



You can trim the still image you are editing to a certain size.

## 1 Image Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Trim away

- CIF (352 x 288) .....Trims the image to CIF size.
- QVGA (320 x 240) .....Trims the image to QVGA size.
- QCIF (176 x 144) .....Trims the image to QCIF size.
- Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) .....Trims the image to Sub-QCIF size.
- Screen (240 x 266) .....Trims the image to fit the Screen size.
- Subscreen (96 x 64) .....Trims the image to fit the Private Window.
- CIF Vert. (288 x 352) .....Trims the image to CIF vertical size.
- QVGA Vert. (240 x 320) .....Trims the image to QVGA vertical size.
- QCIF Vert. (144 x 176) .....Trims the image to QCIF vertical size.
- Sub-QCIF V (96 x 128) .....Trims the image to Sub-QCIF vertical size.
- Defined size .....Enters the size and trims.

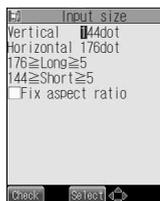
You cannot select a trimming frame larger than the still image you are editing.

The still image you are editing and the trimming frame are halved at both lengthwise and sidewise to be displayed.

### To enter and specify the dimensions of a trimming frame:

1. Select "Defined size" in step 1, enter values, and then press .

Press  (Check) and enter a check mark for "Fix aspect ratio": then when you enter values in Vertical (or Horizontal), values that maintain aspect ratio are entered automatically.



### Information

You cannot change the size to 352 x 288 (or 288 x 352) or more. You cannot trim the size to 5 x 5 or less, either.

If the editing still image is in excess of 240 wide or 266 deep dots, that image and trimming frame is halved at both lengthwise and sidewise dimensions for display.

## 2 Use to select the portion you want to trim ▶



## 3 Press .

### Information

If the height or width of the original image to be edited is shorter than 5 dots, you cannot edit it.



You can attach the still image you are editing to i-mode mail and send it.

**1 Image Edit display** ( **FUNC** ) **Compose message**

To cancel, press (Cancel).

See page 150 for composing i-mode mail.

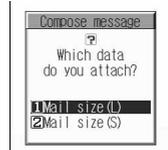
The display on the right comes up when the file size of a still image you are editing is larger than 10,000 bytes.

Select either "Mail size (L)" or "Mail size (S)" and press .

Mail size (L) .....Attaches the still image to i-mode mail as image of bulky size.

When the file size is in excess of 102,400 bytes, it is converted to 102,400 bytes or less.

Mail size (S) .....Reduces and trims the still image to QCIF (176 x 144) size and converts the file size to 9,000 bytes or less.



**Information**

You cannot compose i-mode mail when draft mails are saved in Draft.

A still image in excess of 10,000 bytes is handled as the image of bulky size.

You can send the image of bulky size to a personal computer; you cannot send it to the FOMA phone or i-mode mobile phone, however.



You can specify area and set Mosaic to the still image you are editing.

**1** Image Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Mosaic

**2** Use to select a start position ▶   
Press to select a start position again after setting it.



**3** Use to select an end position ▶   
Press to select an end position again after setting it.



**4** Press .



### Information

You cannot set Mosaic to the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960) or VGA (640 x 480).

## Rotate



You can let the still image you are editing rotate 90 degrees or 180 degrees.

### 1 Image Edit display ( **FUNC** ) Rotate

90° to right .....Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise.

90° to left .....Rotates the image 90 degrees counterclockwise.

180° .....Rotates the 180 degrees.

### 2 Press .

## Flip



You can let the still image you are editing flip vertically, horizontally, or both vertically and horizontally.

### 1 Image Edit display ( **FUNC** ) Flip

Flip vertical .....Reverses the top and bottom.

Flip horizontal .....Reverses the left and right.

Flip V&H .....Reverses the top and bottom, and left and right.

### 2 Press .

#### Information

You cannot flip the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960), or VGA (640 x 480).

## Brightness



You can adjust the brightness to any of five levels ( - 2/ - 1/ ± 0/ + 1/ + 2).

### 1 Image Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Brightness

- 2 .....Grows dark.
- 1 .....Grows slightly dark.
- ± 0 .....Standard
- + 1 .....Grows slightly bright.
- + 2 .....Grows bright.



### 2 Press (OK).

#### Information

You cannot adjust the brightness for the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960), or VGA (640 x 480).

## Tone



You can select a color tone from among “Sepia”, “Normal”, “Reverse”, or “Monochrome” to change the color tone for the still image you are editing.

### 1 Image Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Tone

- Sepia .....Makes the image appear in sepia.
- Normal .....Returns to normal color tone.
- Reverse .....Switches between negative and positive.
- Monochrome .....Makes the image appear in monochrome.



### 2 Press (OK).

#### Information

You cannot adjust the color tone for the still image whose size is UXGA (1600 x 1200), SXGA (1280 x 960), or VGA (640 x 480).



You can select the image quality of the edited still image for when saving.

### 1 Image Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Image quality

- Normal .....The data size is small and the quality is harsh.
- Fine .....The file size and quality are standard.
- Superfine .....The file size is large but the quality is fine.

#### Information

Image quality is not improved even if you select the higher quality than you selected when shooting.

## File Restriction



You can set the restriction for the still or moving image you are editing.

If you set to “File restricted”, the operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled for the receiving end who has received the image as the first distribution.

### 1 Image Edit display/i-motion Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ File restriction

- File unrestricted.....Does not set the file restriction.
- File restricted.....Disables the secondary distribution.  
See page 296 for the file restriction.

#### Information

You cannot save the image if you change the file restriction only.

Even if you set the file restriction to “File restricted”, the still or moving image files you have sent via Ir exchange function or exported to the miniSD memory card can be delivered from the destination to other than the FOMA phone.



# Displaying Still Image List

You can list the still images saved to the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card.

1



## Image

- Camera .....Displays the List of still images taken by the camera and saved to the phone.
- i-mode .....Displays the List of still images downloaded or attached to mail.
- SD card .....Displays the folders within the miniSD memory card.
- Edit .....Displays the List of still images edited from "Edit image".
- Chara-den image .....Displays the List of still images recorded Chara-den.
- Item .....Displays the List of items such as frames or marks.
- Stand-by/Wake-up .....Displays the List of images originally stored for the Stand-by or Wake-up display.
- Animation .....Displays original animations.
- Video-phone display.....Displays the images for the video-phone.



<Still Image List>

If you select "Video-phone display", select "Fixed V-phone display" or "Orig. V-phone display" and press to list the still images.

Press and hold for at least one second to scroll the screen sequentially.

If you select "SD card", the Folder List is displayed.  
Select the folder and press to list still images.



<miniSD memory card Folder List>

### Icons in the File List

The icon in front of file name indicates its file type.

File format	File size	DPOF	Icon
JPEG format	10,001 bytes or more	ON	
		OFF	
	Less than 10,001 bytes	ON	
		OFF	
GIF format	10,001 bytes or more	-	
	Less than 10,001 bytes	-	
Frame/Mark	-	-	
Flash	-	-	

"" indicates the icon for the file set with the file restriction. But it is not displayed with the file for Flash image.

While the File List in miniSD memory card is displayed, it is not displayed.

"" indicates the file that cannot be displayed owing to the operating restriction set for the UIM.

**1** Press and hold  (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second ▶ Use  to select 



**2** Use  to select “Image” ▶  ▶ Use  to select the folder to be displayed ▶ 

### Function menu

While the Still Image List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Edit image	p.329
Edit title	p.344
Set as display	p.321
Image info	p.322
Compose message	p.323
Send Ir data	p.402
Add desktop icon	p.324
Import	p.326
Export	p.325
Add image to PB	p.327
Size for mail	p.344
Positioning	p.327
Clipping area	p.328
Edit file name	p.345
File restriction	p.345
DPOF setting	p.329
Slideshow	p.346
Copy	p.346
Move	p.346
Delete	p.352
Delete all	p.352
Multiple-choice	p.347, 348, 353
Memory info	p.348
SD info	p.415
Sort	p.351
Listing	p.349

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

### Function menu

While the miniSD memory card Folder List is displayed, press  ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Edit fldr title	p.350
Create folder	p.350
Delete folder	p.350
Select storage	p.351

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

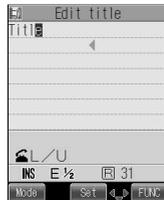


You can edit the title for the selected still or moving image.

# 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC) Edit title

## Enter the title

You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

Even if you edit the title, the title before editing is displayed in "File property".

If a call comes in while you are editing the title of the moving image with a moving ring tone set, the moving ring tone does not play.

## Change Size for Mail



You can change the file size of the selected still image to a file size or image size that can be pasted to mail. The file after changing its size is saved separately from the original file, so the size of the original file is not changed.

# 1 Still Image List (FUNC) Size for mail

Mail size (L) .....Converts the still image in excess of 102, 400 bytes to the size of 102, 400 bytes or less, and converts the still image in excess of 102, 400 bytes and larger than VGA (640 by 480) size to VGA.

Mail size (S) .....Converts the still image in excess of 9,000 bytes to the size of 9,000 bytes or less, and converts the still image larger than QCIF (176 x 144) size to QCIF or less.

# 2 YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

When the message "Not enough memory (-xxbytes) Replace?" is displayed, select "YES" and press : then select unnecessary files and press (Finish).

After "Delete any saved image and save new one?" is displayed, select "YES" and press .

The name of the saved file, title and its storage location are as follows:

- File name: "YYYYMMDDhhmm" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)  
"image" (when date and time are not set)
- Title: "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)  
"----/--/-- --:--" (when date and time are not set)
- Storage location: "Edit" folder

### Information

You cannot change the mail size for the following files:

- Flash images
- Files other than JPEG
- Files of 9000 bytes or less inside the "Camera", "i-mode", "Edit", and "Chara-den image" folders
- Files set with the file restriction inside the "i-mode" folder
- Files inside the "Item" folder
- Files in excess of UXGA size inside the miniSD memory card
- Files in excess of 700 Kbytes inside the miniSD memory card
- Files recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction

If you attach the big image, you can send to personal computers, however, you cannot send to the FOMA phones or the i-mode phones.

## Edit File Name



You can edit the file name for the selected still or moving image.

### 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC)

#### ▶ Edit file name ▶ Enter the file name

You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



#### Information

You cannot edit the file name for the following files:

- Flash images
- Files inside the miniSD memory card
- Files recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction
- Files set with the file restriction

You cannot use half-pitch space for the file name.

## File Restriction



You can set the restriction for the selected still or moving image not to be distributed to external devices. If you set "Restricted" for the file, the operation of attaching to i-mode mail is disabled for the receiving end who receives the image as the first distribution.

### 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC) ▶ File restriction

Unrestricted ..... Does not set the file restriction.

Restricted ..... Disables the secondary distribution.

See page 296 for File Restriction.

#### Information

Even if you set the file restriction to "Restricted", the still or moving image files you have sent via Ir exchange function or exported to the miniSD memory card can be delivered from the destination to other than the FOMA phone.

You cannot set file restriction for the following files:

- Flash images
- Moving image files without the information on the redistribution
- Still images that exceeds 700 Kbytes by applying the restrictions
- Moving images that exceeds 800 Kbytes by applying the restrictions
- Still images other than JPEG files
- Files recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction
- Files inside the "i-mode" folder
- Files inside the "Item" folder
- Files inside the miniSD memory card

## Slideshow



You can display still images within a folder starting from the selected file. Select the display interval from “Normal” or “Slow”.

### 1 Still Image List (FUNC) Slideshow

Normal .....Displays Slideshows at a normal interval.

Slow .....Displays Slideshows at a slow interval.

Press to stop Slideshow. Press again to start Slideshow.

#### Information

The display interval might differ from the setting depending on the file size.

## Copy



You can copy the still or moving image selected in the miniSD memory card to another folder in the miniSD memory card.

### 1 miniSD memory card Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC) Copy ▶ Select the destination folder

## Move



You can move the still or moving image selected in the miniSD memory card to another folder in the miniSD memory card.

### 1 miniSD memory card Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC) Move ▶ Select the destination folder



You can set the DPOF setting for multiple still image files within the miniSD memory card. You can select up to 50 files.

**1** miniSD memory card Still Image List (FUNC)

▶ Multiple-choice ▶ Select the file

Move the cursor to confirm that the file is selected.

Keep pressing to scroll sequentially.

Select the already selected file and press : then you can release the selection.



**2** (FUNC) ▶ DPOF setting

Print .....Sets the selected still image to be printed.

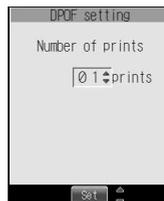
Print OFF .....Sets the selected still image not to be printed.

All print OFF.....Sets all the still images not to be printed.

If you select "Print", the display for entering the number of prints comes up.

If you select "Print OFF" or "All print OFF", the DPOF setting is finished.

**3** Select the number of prints you want to print out



**Information**

You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 still image files.

You cannot set this for the still image in excess of 700 Kbytes.

The DPOF setting set by other devices such as personal computers is disabled except the information about the number of prints to be printed out.

If space in the miniSD memory card is not enough, DPOF setting might not be set. (Icon displays and image information are set finished.) Delete unnecessary files, make memory space, and then try again.

See page 329 for DPOF Setting.

## Multiple-choice (Copy)



You can select multiple files within the miniSD memory card and copy them. You can select up to 50 files.

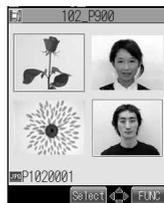
### 1 miniSD memory card Still Image List/Moving Image List

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Multiple-choice ▶ Select the file ▶ (O)

Move the cursor to confirm that the file is selected.

Keep pressing (O) to scroll sequentially.

Select the already selected file and press (O) : then you can release the selection.



### 2 (i) (FUNC) ▶ Copy ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (O)

#### Information

Copying is canceled if a call comes in.

## Multiple-choice (Move)



You can select multiple files within the miniSD memory card and move them. You can select up to 50 files.

### 1 miniSD memory card Still Image List/Moving Image List

▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Multiple-choice ▶ Select the file ▶ (O)

Move the cursor to confirm that the file is selected.

Keep pressing (O) to scroll sequentially.

Select the already selected file and press (O) : then you can release the selection.



### 2 (i) (FUNC) ▶ Move ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ (O)

#### Information

Moving is canceled if a call comes in while you are moving images.

## Memory Information



You can confirm the memory capacity and maximum memory capacity of respective folders. See page 415 for the maximum memory capacity of the miniSD memory card.

### 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Memory info

After checking, press (P). .

#### Information

Displayed memory capacity is an estimate.



You can select whether to display the preview image (shrunk image) on the Still Image List or Moving Image List. You can set listing for the Still Image List and Moving Image List separately.

# 1 Still Image List/Moving Image List (FUNC) Listing

- Name: The title or file name only is displayed.
- Name + Image: The title or file name and the selected preview image are displayed.
- Image: The preview image only is displayed. It is displayed only on the Still Image List.
- Title/File name: When you selected "Name" or "Name + Image", select whether to display the title or file name for the miniSD memory card List. Those are displayed only on the miniSD memory card List.

## About Switching List



Name

If you select "Name" for display, you can list many titles and file names on the display.

- The title is displayed for still and moving image files within the FOMA phone.
- The title or file name is displayed for still and moving image files within the miniSD memory card.
- The title or file name is displayed in 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.



Name + Image

If you select "Name + Image" for display, the title or file name, and preview image are displayed: therefore you can operate while confirming the title or file name, and image at the same time.

- The title is displayed for still and moving image files within the FOMA phone.
- The title or file name is displayed for still and moving image files within the miniSD memory card.
- The first frame of the preview image is displayed for the moving image file.
- The title or file name is displayed in 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.



Image

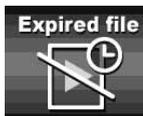
If you select "Image" for display, many preview images are displayed on the display: therefore you can operate while confirming the images.

- Nine still images are displayed for files within the FOMA phone.
- Four still images are displayed for files within the miniSD memory card.
- The title or file name is displayed in 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters.

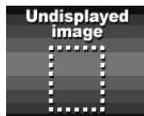
If you cannot display the preview images such as when the replay restriction limit for the file has expired, the following images are displayed:



Cannot be played back



Replay restriction has expired, and the like



Files such as voice only file





You can set the folder of storage location for when you save the still or moving images you take on the miniSD memory card.

# 1 miniSD memory card Folder List (FUNC) Select storage YES

## Information

The “” icon is displayed for the folder set as the storage location on the miniSD memory card Folder List. If you do turning the power off, checking the SD for disc, formatting SD, or removing the miniSD memory card, the folder of storage location is set for the latest folder created with the FOMA phone. When setting is changed, set the folder of storage location again.

When you create or edit a folder by using personal computer, the folder of the storage location might be changed. When the setting is changed, set the folder of storage location again.

<Sort>

## Sorting Images



Setting at purchase  
Date (New Old)

You can sort the order of files displayed in the Still Image List.

The sorting order set for still image files becomes the common setting for the Still Image List and Moving Image List; you cannot sort the order separately.

# 1 Still Image List (FUNC) Sort

- Date (New Old) .....Sorts files in the order of latest to oldest date/time they were saved.
  - Date (Old New) .....Sorts files in the order of oldest to latest date/time they were saved.
  - Title (Descend.) .....Sorts files in ascending order of titles.
  - Title (Ascending) .....Sorts files in descending order of titles.
  - Size (L S) .....Sorts files in the order of large to small sizes.
  - Size (S L) .....Sorts files in the order of small to large sizes.
- The files are displayed in the sorted order.

### “Title (Descend.)”

The priority order is:

Half-pitch numeral half-pitch alphabet (uppercase ~ lowercase) full-pitch numeral full-pitch alphabet (uppercase ~ lowercase) hiragana full-pitch katakana kanji half-pitch katakana pictographs (♥ ~ )

### “Title (Ascending)”

The priority order is:

Pictographs ( ~ ♥) half-pitch katakana kanji full-pitch katakana hiragana full-pitch alphabet (lowercase ~ uppercase) full-pitch numeral half-pitch alphabet (lowercase ~ uppercase) half-pitch numeral

## Information

You cannot sort the files inside the miniSD memory card.

# Deleting Images

## Delete



You can delete the displayed or selected single still image file.

### 1 Still image in play/Still Image List (FUNC) Delete YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

"Setting as display Delete?" is displayed for the file set as displays as shown below: If you delete the image, the image set at purchase returns.

- Stand-by display
- Calling
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Image
- User icon of Schedule
- Background of Private window
- Mail sending
- Dialing
- Mail receiving

For the file with the access right set for reading only, "Delete the read only file?" is displayed.

"Setting as Original animation Delete?" is displayed for the file set as original animation.

Even if you delete the origin file to paste to, the following pasted images will not change.

- Video-phone answer hold image
- Video-phone substitute image
- Video-phone Record Message recording image
- Video-phone in talk hold image
- Video-phone Record Message preparing image
- Video-phone Video Memo image
- Phonebook image

## Delete All



You can delete all still image files displayed in the Still image List.

### 1 Still Image List (FUNC) Delete all Enter the Terminal Security Code

YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for entering the Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

When the Still Image List contains the file set as displays as shown below, "Setting as display Delete all?" is displayed: If you delete the image, the image set at purchase returns.

- Stand-by display
- Calling
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Image
- User icon of Schedule
- Background of Private window
- Mail sending
- Dialing
- Mail receiving

For the file with the access right set for reading only, "Delete the read only file?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for both reading only and writable, "Delete except the read only file?" is displayed.

"Setting as original animation Delete?" is displayed when the files set as original animations are included.

Even if you delete the origin file to paste to, the following pasted images will not change.

- Video-phone answer hold image
- Video-phone substitute image
- Video-phone Record Message recording image
- Video-phone in talk hold image
- Video-phone Record Message preparing image
- Video-phone Video Memo image
- Phonebook image

If a call comes in while deleting still images from the miniSD memory card, deleting is canceled even midway.



You can select multiple still image files from the Still Image List and delete them. You can select up to 50 files.

## 1 Still Image List (FUNC) Multiple-choice

### Select the files

Move the cursor to confirm that the file is selected.

Keep pressing  to scroll sequentially.

Select the file already selected file and press  : then you can release the selection.



## 2 (FUNC) Delete YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

### Information

When selected images contain the file set as displays as shown below, "Setting as display Delete?" is displayed; delete the image and then the image set at purchase returns.

- Stand-by display
- Calling
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- Image
- User icon of Schedule
- Background of Private window
- Mail sending
- Dialing
- Mail receiving

For the file with the access right set for reading only, "Delete the read only file?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for both reading only and writable, "Delete except the read only file?" is displayed.

When selected images contain the file set as original animation, "Setting as original animation Delete?" is displayed.

Even if you delete the origin file to paste to, the following pasted images will not change.

- Video-phone answer hold image
- Video-phone substitute image
- Video-phone Record Message recording image
- Phonebook image
- Video-phone in talk hold image
- Video-phone Record Message preparing image
- Video-phone Video Memo image

If a call comes in while deleting still images from the miniSD memory card, deleting is canceled even midway.

## <Original Animation>

# Creating Animations

You can store up to 10 frames of still images and then play back as original animations.

You can store a single animation file.

### Set as Original Animation



Select up to 10 JPEG files from the “Camera”, “i-mode”, “Edit”, or “Chara-den image” folders and store them as original animations.

**1** **Image** **Select “Animation”** **(FUNC)**  
 **Org. animation**



**2** **Select a frame order from <1st> to <10th>** **Select a folder** **Select a still image**

**3** **Repeat step 2.**  
After storing all images, press **(Finish)**.

#### To release the still image by one frame

1. In step 2, select the frame the still image file is stored in and press .
2. Select “Release this” and press .

#### Information

When any of the frame contains no image, only the frames with images are displayed in order.

You cannot store JPEG files in excess of VGA (640 x 480) size or still images from the miniSD memory card.

You cannot store still images inside the “Item” folder.

If you delete the still image stored as original animation, that original animation is deleted.

### Function menu

While selecting "Animation" from the "Image" folder List, press  () to display the following items.

Org. animation	p.354
Display image	p.318
Set as display	p.321
Image info	p.322
Release animat.	See this page

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Release Animation



You can release the setting as original animation.

**1** Image List ▶ Select "Animation" ▶  () ▶ Release animat. ▶ YES



# Playing Moving/i-motion Images

You can play back moving images shot by the camera (see page 281), downloaded moving images (see page 118), or moving images saved to the miniSD memory card.

You can play MP4 file or ASF file with the FOMA phone. However, you cannot play some files even if they are supported-format files.

See page 380 for Moving Image List.

## 1 i-motion

- Camera .....Displays the list of the moving images shot by the camera and saved to the FOMA phone.
- i-mode .....Displays the list of i-motion downloaded or attached to mail.
- SD card .....Displays the folders within the miniSD memory card.
- Edit .....Displays the list of the moving images edited by "Edit i-motion".
- Chara-den video .....Displays the list of i-motion recorded Chara-den.
- Position memory .....Displays the Marker Selection display.

If you select "SD card", the Folder List is displayed. Select a folder and press to list moving images.

You can also activate i-motion player by selecting from the Camera Shortcut menu and pressing .

## 2 Select the file

When you selected "Position memory" in step 1, select the marker and press .

(You can play back by selecting "Play" from the Function menu.)



### Viewer Style

**1** Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second.

**2** Use to select Use to select "i-motion"

**3** Use to select the folder you want to display

**4** Use to select the file



### Information

If you try to play i-motion during Manner Mode, "Setting manner mode Play melody?" is displayed. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

When many files are saved in the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card, it will take time to access the file.

If you receive mail or a message R/F while playing moving or i-motion image, the image or voice might be interrupted.

Some of moving or i-motion images might not be played.

### About the marker function

The marker denotes "Position memory" and "Marker to resume".

"Position memory" is the marker that has been stored to an optional frame of moving images.

You can create up to two of it. (See page 363)

"Marker to resume" is the marker that will automatically be stored if playing is suspended such as when a call comes in, alarms sound, or the battery level goes flat. Select "Marker to resume" to resume playing from the stored point.

If the moving images in which the marker has been stored is deleted, you cannot play back the images.

Also, even if you store the marker in the moving images inside the miniSD memory card, you cannot play them back in the following cases:

- When the miniSD memory card is not installed
- In the insertion process of the miniSD memory card
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card
- When the file name of the moving images is changed using a personal computer
- When the marker is moved to a different folder
- For a different miniSD memory card with the same folder name or file name

To delete the marker, press  (FUNC) on the display on top right, select "Delete", and press . Select "YES" and press : then the marker is deleted. To cancel, press "NO" and press . You cannot delete "Marker to resume", however.

You might not be able to store the marker to some moving or i-motion images.

You can also bring up the display on top right by selecting  from the Camera Shortcut menu and pressing .

**If you switch to Viewer style while the camera is activating with "Work in style" set to "ON":**

The latest still, moving, or i-motion image from the "Camera" folder is displayed.

When the camera is activating in the Snap shot mode or in the Continuous shot mode, the still image is displayed and in the Moving image shot mode, the moving image or i-motion is displayed.

When "Store in" is set for "SD card", the latest still, moving, or i-motion image in the set folder is displayed.

### Information

The latest still, moving or i-motion image within the latest folder created in the FOMA phone is displayed, while "Store in" is set for "SD card" in the following cases:

- After the miniSD memory card is inserted
- After the miniSD memory card is checked
- After the power is switched on

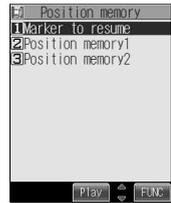
The still, moving or i-motion image within the "Camera" folder is displayed, while "Store in" is set for "SD card" in the following cases:

- When the miniSD memory card is not inserted
- When the miniSD memory card has no file
- When an error occurred in the miniSD memory card

The "image" or "i-motion" Folder List is displayed, when the "Camera" folder has no file.

### i-motion

- See page 118 for downloading i-motion.
- Using i-motion ticker information, you may use the Phone To, Web To, or Mail To functions.
- Some of i-motion may be set with the play restriction. (See page 366)
- Downloaded data might not be played correctly depending on i-motion.



<Marker Selection display>

## Operations when playing moving image

You can do the following operations from the display for playing moving images.



<Normal style display>



<Movie style display (horizontal)>



<Viewer style display (horizontal)>

Operation	Key operation		
	For Normal style	For Movie style	For Viewer style
<b>Pause</b>	Press  or . To resume, press  or .	Press . To resume, press  again.	Press . To resume, press  again.
<b>Stop</b>	Press  () ,  to <sup>1</sup> , <sup>1</sup> , <sup>1</sup> . To resume, press  or .		
<b>Sound volume adjustment</b>	Press  or  . Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.	Press  . Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.	Press  . Press and hold the key to adjust the sound volume sequentially.
<b>Displays next file</b> <sup>2 3</sup>	Press  or  .	Press  .	Press  . (   in the case of vertical display)
<b>Displays previous file</b> <sup>2 3</sup>	Press  or  . <sup>4</sup>	Press  . <sup>4</sup>	Press  . <sup>4</sup> (   in the case of vertical display)
<b>Seek (fast forward)</b>	Press and hold  or   to forward the image fast while it is pressed.	Press and hold   to forward the image fast while it is pressed.	Press and hold   to forward the image fast while it is pressed. (   in the case of vertical display)
<b>Seek (fast rewind)</b>	Press and hold  or   to rewind the image fast while it is pressed.	Press and hold   to rewind the image fast while it is pressed.	Press and hold   to rewind the image fast while it is pressed. (   in the case of vertical display)

1 You cannot operate for streaming type i-motion.

2 Displayed in the sorted order of the File List.

3 You can operate when you play back from File List, using "Work with style", or using Marker function.

4 When playback time is over 10 seconds, the playing file is sought.

**Play back frame by frame**

You can play moving images frame by frame by pressing   on the Pause display.

Press   to play frame by frame.

You cannot play moving images frame by frame while downloading i-motion.

**Information**

You cannot use this function in Viewer style.

**Information**

The sound volume for i-motion player before adjusting is the same as that set in the ring tone volume. When the ring volume is set to Silent or Step, the sound volume for i-motion player is Level 1. You can set the sound volume at Level 0 through 6, which works until i-motion player stops playing.

You can fast forward and fast rewind (seek) while pausing or playing the moving image (including slow and fast playback). However, no sound is output during seek.

You might not be able to fast forward some i-motion of QVGA size.

You cannot slow play or fast forward i-motion or streaming type i-motion that can be played while downloading files.

You cannot fast forward or fast rewind (seek) in the following cases:

- In pause
- While playing back streaming type i-motion
- While playing back i-motion that can be played while downloading files
- For files with no seek point
- For files whose interval between seek points is wide
- For files with only seek point at the top of moving image
- For ASF file with only voice but without seek information

During seeking (fast forward or fast rewind) or playing frame by frame, ticker is not displayed.

If you switch displays by changing the phone's style while a ticker is displayed, the ticker is cleared; the ticker next and onward is normally displayed.

When the moving images are playing with "Play while close" set to "ON" and the FOMA phone closed, , ,  (クリア),  (機能/メニュー),  and  are disabled.

**Specifications for moving image playback**

File format	MP4, ASF		
Coding system	MP4 file	Image: MPEG4, H.263	Voice: AMR, AAC
	ASF file	Image: MPEG4	Voice: AMR, G.726
Pixels	MPEG4: files with QVGA (320 x 240) size or smaller		
	H.263: files with QCIF (176 x 144) size or smaller		
Extension	sdv, 3gp, mp4, asf		

**About Software for Playing Moving Image**

- To play back moving images on a personal computer, you need to install "QuickTime 6.3" and "3GPP Component" or "QuickTime 6.4" or later. You can download "QuickTime" for free from the Web page of Apple Computer, Inc.
- You can play ASF files under Windows Media® Player.



## Setting whether to Display Information for when Playing i-motion

Setting at purchase  
OFF

You can set whether to display the playing time, playing conditions (such as “▶”, “🔊”, or “👁️”) which means “while the AV signal is output” for when you play back i-motion in Movie style or Viewer style.

### 1 Display ▶ Play-info

- ON .....Displays the Play-information of i-motion.
- OFF .....Does not display the Play-information of i-motion.

#### Information

You cannot change the setting while another function is activated.

## Using Moving/i-motion Images

You can use the recorded moving or i-motion image for a variety of purposes by selecting the item from the Function menu while playing the moving or i-motion image is in pause, at the end of play or stopped.

#### Function menu

While playing is in pause, at the end of play or stopped, press ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Normal play	p.362
Slow	p.362
Fast	p.363
Stop	p.363
Position to play	p.363
Position memory	p.363
AV OUT	p.386
Edit imotion	p.367
Compose message	p.361
Movie ringtone	p.364
Set as stand-by	p.364
File property	p.366
Send Ir data	p.402
Import	p.326
Export	p.325
Add desktop icon	p.324
Set image disp.	p.324
Add imot. to PB	p.362
Add to phonebook	p.366
Play while close	p.365
LCD AI	p.365
Play-info	p.365
Delete	p.382

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can attach the played or selected file to i-mode mail and send it.

## 1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List (FUNC)

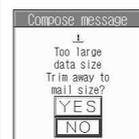
### ▶ Compose message

See pages 150, 177 for sending/saving i-mode mail.

**The display on the right comes up when the file size of an i-motion image is larger than 100 Kbytes.**

Select "YES" and press : then 100 Kbytes from the beginning of i-motion is trimmed.

For the i-motion image containing ticker, a confirmation display to the effect that you cannot cut out the ticker appears.



When without ticker

#### Information

You cannot trim i-motion in the following cases:

- When incompatible codec is contained
- When audio codec is AAC
- When no image or voice is contained
- When the bit rate of the moving image is in excess of 768 kbps
- When the size of the moving image is other than QCIF or Sub-QCIF
- When seek is enabled

When you trim i-motion away to mail size, the attached file name takes "movie".

#### Information

See page 296 for attaching the file set with the file restriction to mail.

In the cases of file set with the file restriction within the i-mode folder or file set with the replay restriction, you cannot compose i-motion mail.

In the cases of file recorded Chara-den model with Rec. file restriction within the Chara-den video folder, you cannot compose i-motion mail.

You cannot compose i-motion mail using a file inside the miniSD memory card.

When the Draft contains 10 messages, you cannot compose i-motion mail.

Some files of i-motion cannot be attached to mail or their sizes may change.

## Add i-motion to Phonebook



You can store the played or selected moving image file to the Phonebook. When a call comes in from the stored phone number, the moving image will be played.

### 1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List

#### ▶ Add imot. to PB

See page 122 of "Basics" manual for storing data to the Phonebook.

#### Information

The number of still and i-motion image files that can be set for the Phonebook is 70 files in total.

You cannot set images during Restrict Dialing, or Keypad Dial Lock.

If you delete the origin moving image file, the moving image file stored in the Phonebook is also deleted.

You cannot save image files in the following cases:

- When the file is prohibited to play
- When the image size is "0 x 0" or in excess of QCIF (176 x 144) size
- The file with ticker
- The moving file within the "i-mode" folder
- When the moving image file is within the "Camera" or "Edit" folder and origin folder is other than the "Camera" folder
- The file within the miniSD memory card

## Normal Play



### 1 During pause ▶ Normal play

The moving image is played at normal speeds.

## Slow



### 1 During pause ▶ Slow

The moving image is played at speed half the normal speed.

To cancel Slow play, select "Normal play", or "Stop".

#### Information

No sound is output during Slow play.

You cannot slow-play the streaming-type i-motion or the i-motion that can be played while downloading files.

## Fast



### 1 During pause (FUNC)

The moving image is played at speed double the normal speed.  
To cancel Fast play, select "Normal play", or "Stop".

#### Information

No sound is output during Fast play.  
You might not be able to fast forward some i-motion of QVGA size.  
You cannot fast-play the streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that can be played while downloading files.

## Stop



### 1 During pause (FUNC)

To play from the beginning, press .

## Position to Play



You can position the start point for playing the moving image.

### 1 During pause/At the end of play (FUNC)

The moving image is played from the selected position.  
To cancel "Position to play", press .

#### Information

You might not be able to select the position to play depending on moving or i-motion images.

## Position Memory



You can store the marker as the position memory to the playing moving images. Stop playing temporarily at a position you want to store to. You can store up to two position memories.

### 1 During pause (FUNC)

Position memory1 ..... Stores marker as Position memory1.  
Position memory2 ..... Stores marker as Position memory2.

If the position memory has already been stored, the confirmation display appears telling that the marker is overwritten. To overwrite, select "YES" and press . To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

You might not be able to store the position memory to some moving or i-motion images.



You can set the played or selected moving image file for the Movie ring tone.

### 1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC)

#### ▶ Movie ringtone

Phone.....Plays the moving image for incoming voice calls.

Video-phone.....Plays the moving image for incoming video-phone calls.

" " indicates the item set with Movie ring tone.

#### Information

You can set the i-motion file as the movie ring tone only if its property for "Movie ringtone" is "Available". See "File Property" on page 366 to confirm whether "Movie ringtone" is "Available" or "Unavailable".

You might not be able to set a moving ring tone for some i-motion.

The priority order of the ring tone is "Setting by phone number or mail address" "Setting by group" "Moving ring tone setting". If the moving ring tone is selected for the ring tone, i-motion is played back in place of the image specified by "Display Setting" (see page 187 of "Basics" Manual.)

When a call comes in with i-motion containing the image and voice set for the Movie ring tone, i-motion image set for the Movie ring tone is displayed instead of the image set for the "Display Setting" (see page 187 of "Basics" manual). If a call comes in with i-motion without image set for the moving ring tone, the pre-installed image is displayed.

## Set as Stand-by



You can set the played or selected moving image as the Stand-by display.

You can set i-motion shot by the FOMA phone or downloaded i-motion as the Stand-by display.

### 1 During pause/At the end of play/Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC)

#### ▶ Set as stand-by ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### To play the moving image file set as the Stand-by display



<Stand-by display>



The moving image is played.

Press or to adjust the sound volume during playback.

Press or to adjust in Viewer style.

If you press a key other than , , , (クリア), (機能 / メニュー), playing ends.

Press , , (クリア) or (機能 / メニュー) to end playback in Viewer style.

If the moving image is played during Manner Mode, the voice cannot be played back.

#### Information

If you delete the moving image file set as the Stand-by display, the setting for the Stand-by display is released.

You cannot set the moving image as the Stand-by display in the following cases:

- Files within the miniSD memory card
- Moving image files without images
- Moving image files other than MP4
- Files with the play restriction
- When the image size is "0 x 0" or in excess of QCIF (176 x 144) size
- Files not supported by the FOMA phone

You cannot set some of i-motion as Stand-by display.

You cannot display some of i-motion correctly in Stand-by display.

You cannot use the Web To, Mail To, nor Phone To function from an i-motion file set as the Stand-by display.

## Play while Close



Setting at purchase  
OFF

You can set to continue playing back even if you close the FOMA phone while playing.

### 1 During stopped/During pause/At the end of play ▶ (FUNC)

#### ▶ Play while close

ON .....Continues playing back if you close the FOMA phone while playing.

OFF .....Stops playing back if you close the FOMA phone while playing.

#### Information

This function is valid only for the current playback. Once you returns to the Moving Image List or bring up the i-motion Edit display, the setting is set to "OFF".

## LCD AI



You can automatically adjust the brightness of the screen according to the movement and brightness of playing moving images.

### 1 During stopped/During pause/At the end of play ▶ (FUNC) ▶ LCD AI

ON .....Adjusts the brightness of the screen automatically.

OFF .....Does not adjust the brightness of the screen automatically.

#### Information

"LCD AI" is set to "OFF" during AV OUT.

This function is valid only for the current playback. Once you return to the Moving Image List or bring up the i-motion Edit display, the setting by "LCD AI" of Settings (see page 197 of "Basics" manual) returns.

## Play-info



You can select whether to display the recording time, recording conditions (such as "▶"), "🔊", or "📶" which means "while the AV signal is output" for when you play back i-motion in Movie style or Viewer style.

### 1 During stopped/During pause/At the end of play ▶ (FUNC)

#### ▶ Play-info

ON .....Displays the Play-information of the i-motion.

OFF .....Does not display the Play-information of the i-motion.

#### Information

If you select "OFF" when the moving image is being played back by vertical display even in Movie style or Viewer style, the i-motion property is displayed.

This function is valid only for the current playback. Once you return to the Moving Image List or bring up the i-motion Edit display, the setting by "i-motion Play-information" (see page 360) returns.



You can display the information about the played or selected moving image.

## 1 During stopped/During pause/At the end of play/The Moving Image List (FUNC) File property

Press to scroll.

After checking, press .



Item	Content	
File name	Displays the file name.	
Title	Displays the title for file. When no title is stored, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Format	Displays file format.	
Creator	Displays the information about the creator of file. When no name is stored, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Copyright	Displays if the file contains the information about copyright or not. When no information is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.	
Saved at	Displays the date/time the file is saved. When no information is contained, "--/--/-- --:--" is displayed.	
File size	Displays the file size.	
Display size	Displays the size of the moving image. For the moving image without image or larger than QVGA (320 x 240), "Unknown" is displayed.	
Received from	Displays the file origin. For pre-installed moving images, it is blank.	
Description	Displays the description for files. When no description is contained, "Unknown" is displayed.	
File restriction	Displays if the file contains the file restriction or not.	
Replay restriction	When the frequency restriction is contained	"Replay YY (YY/XX)" (YY: Play frequency, XX: Max. play frequency) is displayed.
	When the limit restriction is contained	"Date/time file saved" ~ "Play limit date/time" is displayed.
	When the period restriction is contained	"Date/time play enabled" ~ "Play limit date/time" is displayed.
	When no play restriction is contained	"Not restricted" is displayed
Video	Displays if images are contained or not, or disabled.	
Audio	Displays AAC/AMR, no audio, disabled or enabled.	
Text	Displays if text is contained or not, or disabled.	
Movie ringtone	Displays if Movie ring tone can be played or not. When Movie ring tone is set, the function the ring tone is set for is displayed.	

Even if you edit the title, the title before editing is displayed.

## Add to Phonebook



When the ticker in the moving or i-motion image you are playing contains the information of underscored phone number or mail address, you can store them to the Phonebook.

## 1 After end of play (FUNC) Add to phonebook

See page 122 of "Basics" manual for storing to the Phonebook.



## Editing Moving/i-motion Images

You can edit the moving or i-motion image such as cutting a still image out of the moving or i-motion image or recording the voice afterwards. The edited moving or i-motion image is saved to the “Edit” folder (see page 356).

### 1 During pause/At the end of play/The Moving Image List

▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit i-motion

Press or to adjust the sound volume.



<i-motion Edit display>

### 2 (FUNC) ▶ Edit the moving or i-motion image

See pages 341, 369 to 379 for how to operate.

### 3 Press .

Not to save the edited moving or i-motion image, press or :  
then select “YES” and press .



### 4 YES

The edited moving or i-motion image is saved.

#### Information

The displayed file size is an estimate.

### Folders containing i-motion you can edit

Folder	edit i-motion
Camera folder	1
i-mode folder	×
SD card	×
Edit folder	1
Chara-den video folder	2

...Editing i-motion is available. × ...Editing i-motion is unavailable.

1 Only for the moving image you shot by camera or i-motion acquired via data transmission

2 Only for the moving image recorded Chara-den model with no file restriction.

### Moving images that you can edit

- The moving image of QCIF (176 x 144) size
- The moving image of Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) size

### Information

You might not edit some i-motion images.

### When moving or i-motion images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of moving or i-motion image files are stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary moving or i-motion image files and then save new ones.

1. Select "YES" and press .

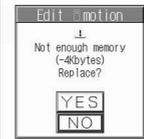
2. Change the moving or i-motion image to be deleted to the gray display.

Press  to switch to the gray display.

3. Press  (Finish).

4. Select "YES" and press .

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



Insufficient memory

### Information

The image quality may deteriorate or the file size may become large or small by editing i-motion.

The still image is saved with the status just before the current editing, if a call comes in, the battery runs out, or the FOMA phone is closed while editing.

## Function menu

While the i-motion Edit display is displayed, press  () to display the following items.

	See this page
Trim i-motion	
Trim for image	p.370
Rerecord sound	p.371
Edit ticker	p.372
$\alpha$ -blend edit	p.375
Trim for mail	p.378
Compose message	p.378
File restriction	p.341

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Trim i-motion



You can cut a certain range out of the moving or i-motion image you are editing.

### 1 i-motion Edit display () Trim i-motion

For the moving or i-motion image containing ticker, a confirmation display to the effect that you cannot cut out the ticker appears. Select "YES" and press .

### 2 Press to select the start frame ()

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play the moving or i-motion image. Press  again to pause.

The start frame is set and the moving or i-motion image is played.

### 3 When played up to the frame you want to cut out from, press .

Playing the moving or i-motion image stops temporarily.

### 4 Use to select the end frame ()

The cut out range is played.

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play the moving or i-motion image. Press  again to pause.

An approximate file size is displayed for when the moving or i-motion image is cut out.

When the file size exceeds 90 Kbytes, the color turns to blue and 95 Kbytes to red.

When the file size reaches approx. 800 Kbytes, the end frame is automatically set.

The displayed size is an estimate.

### 5 Press .

Press  () to play demo image so that you can check the edited moving or i-motion image.

## Information

If you execute "Trim i-motion", playback time may become longer.



You can cut a still image out of the moving or i-motion image you are editing.  
The cut out still image is stored in the “Edit” folder inside the “Image”.

**1** i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Trim for image

**2** Use to select the frame ▶ (Set) ▶ YES

Press and hold for at least one second to fast rewind and to fast forward.

Press to play the moving or i-motion image. Press again to pause.

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

#### When still images are stored to the maximum

When the maximum number of still image files are stored or there is not enough memory, the display on the right comes up.

Delete unnecessary still image files and then save new ones.

1. Select “YES” and press .

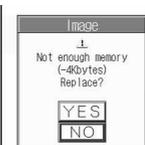
2. Change the still image to be deleted to the gray display.

Press to switch to the gray display.

3. Press (Finish).

4. Select “YES” and press .

To cancel, select “NO” and press .



Insufficient memory

#### Information

Ticker is deleted if you execute “Trim for image”.



You can record the voice into a certain range of the moving or i-motion image you are editing.

## 1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Rerecord sound

For the moving or i-motion image containing ticker, a confirmation display to the effect that the ticker is deleted appears. Select "YES" and press .

To start recording from the first frame, go to step 3.

## 2 Press .

## 3 Press (Start).

Recording starts. Speak into the microphone.

When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone Set with switch is connected, record the voice from the microphone of the Set.

## 4 Press (End).

Recording ends.

To record in succession, repeat steps 3 to 4.

To end Record Sound, press .

## 5 Press .

Press  (Play) to play demo image so that you can check the edited moving or i-motion image.





You can edit the ticker information (text information displayed during play) about the moving or i-motion image you are editing.

For "New"

You can compose up to five ticker items per moving or i-motion image.

## 1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit ticker ▶ New

When ticker has already been contained, a conformation display appears. Select "YES" and press .

## 2 Use to select the start frame ▶ (Start)

Press and hold for at least one second to fast rewind and to fast forward.

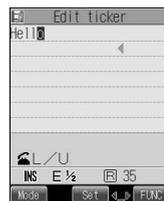
Press to play the moving or i-motion image. Press again to pause.

When the end of the ticker previously specified is reached by fast rewind, the confirmation display appears telling that the start point is defined. Select "YES" and press : then the start point is defined and you can create a ticker with no gap between the previous ticker.

## 3 Enter ticker ▶

You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters.

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## 4 Select the ticker effect.

Font color .....Selects the character color from 16 or 256 colors.

Background color .....Selects background color from 16 or 256 colors.

Font size .....Selects the character size from "Normal" or "Large".

Word alignment .....Selects the character position from "Left", "Center", or "Right".

Blink .....Selects the Blink from "ON" or "OFF".

Underline .....Selects the underline from "ON" or "OFF".

Scroll .....Selects the scroll effect from "OFF", "Scroll in", "Scroll out", or "Scroll in&out".

If you select other than "OFF", select the scrolling direction from "Right to left", "Left to right", "Top to bottom", or "Bottom to top".

To set the ticker effect in succession, repeat step 4.

## 5 Finish setting

## 6 Use to select the end frame ▶ (End)

Press and hold for at least one second to fast rewind and to fast forward.

Press to play the moving or i-motion image. Press again to pause.

When no sufficient interval is between the start frame and end frame, you might not select the end frame.

If you display the frame with other ticker set, a confirmation display for determining the end frame appears.

Select "YES" and press to fix the end frame: then you can create the ticker with no intermittence from other ticker.

## 7 (FUNC) ▶ Finish editing

To compose ticker in succession, repeat step 2 to 6.

## 8 Press .

Press  (Play) to play demo ticker so that you can confirm the edited moving or i-motion image.

Press  (Edit) to bring up the Ticker List and you can edit the composed ticker.



### Information

The scrolling speed is automatically set to match the time the display scrolls from the start point to the end point.

When adding a ticker, make sure that the start position and the end position of tickers do not overlap.

If i-motion downloaded from Ir exchange and data transmission contains six or more ticker items, the ticker items after the sixth item are deleted. Also, the characters for ticker in excess of 20 full-pitch characters are deleted from and after 21th characters. Incompatible ticker effects are also deleted.

Ticker effects that do not support the FOMA 900iV may be deleted or edited.

### For "Edit"

## 1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit ticker ▶ YES ▶ Edit

The stored ticker items are displayed.



<Ticker List>

## 2 Select the ticker item you want to edit ▶ (FUNC)

Change text ..... Changes ticker text. (See step 3 on page 372)

Change effect ..... Changes the ticker effect. (See steps 4 to 5 on page 372)

Change start po. .... Changes the start position of ticker. (See step 2 on page 372)

Change end point ..... Changes the end position of ticker. (See step 6 on page 372)

Add ticker ..... Adds the ticker item. (See page 374)

Delete ticker ..... Deletes the ticker. Select "YES" and press  : then the ticker is deleted.

Select a ticker item and press  : then you can check the details of the ticker. After checking, press .

To edit ticker in succession, repeat step 2.

## 3 Press (Finish) from the Ticker List ▶

### Information

You cannot edit ticker if no ticker item is stored.

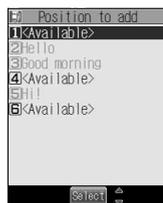
## Add ticker

You can add ticker items.

You can compose up to the five ticker items per moving or i-motion image.

### 1 Ticker List (FUNC) Add ticker

You can assume the top ticker on the display is the start frame and the bottom is the end frame.



### 2 <Available>

Then, follow steps 2 to 6 on page 372 to compose the ticker.

When you have composed five ticker items, the Ticker List returns.

Perform the operations in step 3 on page 373.

When the ticker items are four or less, follow steps 7 to 8 on page 373.



You can add the shot still images to the moving or i-motion image you are editing. You can set Transparency and Special effect, while compounding still images.

For "New"

You can compound up to five still image files per α-blend.

# 1 i-motion Edit display ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ α-blend edit

# 2 Use (rewind) to select the start frame ▶ (Start)

Press and hold (rewind) for at least one second to fast rewind and (play) to fast forward.

Press (play) to play the moving or i-motion image. Press (rewind) again to pause.

When the previously specified α-blend end point is reached by fast rewind, the confirmation display appears telling that the start point is defined. Select "YES" and press (rewind) : then the start point is defined, enabling you to create α-blend with no gap between the previous α-blend.

# 3 Select a still image to add.

- Camera .....Adds the still image from the Camera folder.
- i-mode .....Adds the still image from the i-mode folder.
- SD card .....Adds the still image from the miniSD memory card.
- Edit .....Adds the still image from the Edit folder.
- Chara-den image .....Adds the still image from the Chara-den image folder.

# 4 Select the Effect settings.

- Transparency .....Selects the transparency from "OFF", "Opaque" or "Transparent".
- Special effect .....Selects the special effect from "OFF", "Slide in" or "Fade in".

If you select other than "OFF", the display for selecting the start point effective time appears. Select the time from between "1.00 sec." and "5.00 sec." and press (play). If the start point effective time reaches the final frame unintentionally, the confirmation display appears asking whether to automatically adjust the start point effective time. Select "YES" and press (play) : then the start point effective time is automatically adjusted. Select "NO" and press (rewind) : then the display for selecting the start point effective time will return and settable maximum start point effective time is displayed.

# 5 Complete

# 6 Use (rewind) to select the end frame ▶ (End)

Press and hold (rewind) for at least one second to fast rewind and (play) to fast forward.

Press (play) to play the moving or i-motion image. Press (rewind) again to pause.

When no sufficient interval is between the start frame and end frame, you might not select the end frame.

If the start point and the start point effective time are reached by fast rewind, the alert display appears telling that the fast rewind is canceled. Select "OK" and press (rewind) : then the display for selecting the final frame appears.

## 7 Select the Effect settings.

Special effect.....Selects the special effect from "OFF", "Slide out" or "Fade out".

If you select other than "OFF", the display for selecting the end point effective time appears. Select the time from between "1.00 s" and "5.00 s" and press . If the end point effective time reaches the start point and the start point effective time accidentally, the confirmation display appears asking whether to automatically adjust the end point effective time. Select "YES" and press : then the end point effective time is automatically adjusted. Select "NO" and press : then the display for selecting the end point effective time will return and settable maximum end point effective time is displayed.

If it takes one second or less to reach the end after the time out of the start point effective time, you cannot select "Special effects".

## 8 Complete

To compose  $\alpha$ -blend in succession, repeat step 2 to 8.

## 9 (FUNC) ▶ Finish editing

The Edited moving or i-motion image is played.

## 10 Press .

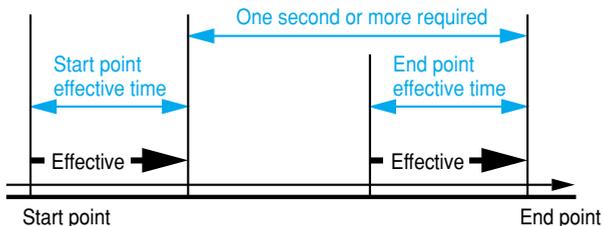
Press (Play) to play demo  $\alpha$ -blend so that you can confirm the edited moving or i-motion image.

Press (Edit) to bring up the  $\alpha$ -blend List and you can edit the composed  $\alpha$ -blend.



< $\alpha$ -blend Finish Editing display>

**Relationship between the start point and start point effective time and between the end point and end point effective time**



## Information

You cannot compound the following still image files:

- Files other than JPEG files inside the "Camera" folder
- Files other than JPEG files inside the "i-mode" folder or the files set with restrictions
- Files in excess of UXGA (1600 x 1200) size inside the "SD card" folder, files in excess of 700 Kbytes, or files other than JPEG file
- Files that you recorded Chara-den model with "Rec. file restriction"

The vertical vs horizontal ratio of the still image may be changed, because the still image to be compounded is enlarged or shrunk to the same size as that of the moving image or i-motion you are editing.

If you set the end point of the moving or i-motion images immediately before playback ends, some moving or i-motion images might finish playing midway of the effective end.

If you do  $\alpha$ -blend editing and save the moving image,  $\alpha$ -blend is saved as a moving image; therefore you cannot edit the set  $\alpha$ -blend.

If you do  $\alpha$ -blend editing, the ticker is deleted.

If you do  $\alpha$ -blend editing, the playback time may be longer.

$\alpha$ -blend might not be played back correctly depending on moving or i-motion images.

## For "Edit"

### 1 $\alpha$ -blend Finish Editing display (Edit)

The display on the right appears, after playback is finished.



< $\alpha$ -blending List>

### 2 Select the $\alpha$ -blend item you want to edit (FUNC)

Change start PNT .....Changes the start position of the  $\alpha$ -blend. (See step 2 on page 375)

Change end point .....Changes the end position of the  $\alpha$ -blend. (See step 6 on page 375)

Start PNT effect .....Changes the start position effect of the  $\alpha$ -blend. (See step 4 on page 375)

End PNT effect .....Changes the end position effect of the  $\alpha$ -blend. (See step 7 on page 376)

Change image .....Changes the still image of the  $\alpha$ -blend. (See step 3 on page 375)

Add  $\alpha$ -blend .....Adds the  $\alpha$ -blend item. (See page 378)

Delete  $\alpha$ -blend .....Deletes the  $\alpha$ -blend. Select "YES" and press  : then the  $\alpha$ -blend is deleted.

Select an  $\alpha$ -blend item and press  : then you can check the details of the  $\alpha$ -blend. After checking, press

 .

To edit  $\alpha$ -blend in succession, repeat step 2.

### 3 Press (Finish) from the $\alpha$ -blending List

## Add $\alpha$ -blend

### 1 $\alpha$ -blending List (FUNC) Add $\alpha$ -blend

You can assume the top  $\alpha$ -blend on the display is the start frame and the bottom is the end frame.



### 2 <Available>

Then, follow steps 2 to 8 on page 375 to 376 to compose the  $\alpha$ -blend.

When you have composed five  $\alpha$ -blend items, the  $\alpha$ -blending List returns.

Perform the procedure step 3 on page 377.

When the  $\alpha$ -blend items are four or less, follow steps 9 to 10 on page 376.

## Trim for Mail



You can cut out the moving or i-motion image you are editing to the size attachable to i-motion mail.

### 1 i-motion Edit display (FUNC) Trim for mail

### 2 Use to select the start frame (Start)

The moving or i-motion image starts playing. When the maximum size you can attach to i-motion mail is reached, playing automatically stops.

Press and hold  for at least one second to fast rewind and  to fast forward.

Press  to play the moving or i-motion image. Press  again to pause.

### 3 Press .

Press  (Play) to play demo image and you can check edited moving or i-motion image.

#### Information

If you execute "Trim for mail", ticker is deleted.

## Compose i-motion Mail



You can attach the moving or i-motion image you are editing to i-mode mail and send it.

### 1 i-motion Edit display (FUNC) Compose message

See page 150 for composing i-mode mail.

#### Information

When the file size is in excess of 100 Kbytes, you cannot compose i-motion mail.

See "Trim for Mail" for trimming the moving image to the size attachable to i-motion mail.

When Draft box contains 10 messages, you cannot compose i-mode mail.

### Operations during demo play or editing i-motion

- Press  or  to stop temporarily. Press  or  again to resume playing.
- Press and hold  or  for at least one second to fast rewind and  or  to fast forward.
- Press  or  to forward the frame during pause.
- Press  or , ,  to adjust the sound volume.

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



### The following operations are available from the Function menu while a demo play stops temporarily or you are editing i-motion:

- Normal play .....Plays the moving or i-motion image.
- Slow .....Plays the moving or i-motion image slowly.
- Fast .....Plays the moving or i-motion image fast.
- Starting point .....Sets the start frame. (For "Trim i-motion", "Trim for Mail", "α-blend Edit")
- Ending point .....Sets the end frame. (For "Trim i-motion", "α-blend Edit")
- Determine .....Sets the frame. (For "Trim for image")
- Stop .....Stops playing the moving or i-motion image.
- Ticker start PNT .....Sets the start frame. (For "Edit ticker")
- Ticker end point .....Sets the end frame. (For "Edit ticker")
- Finish editing .....The ticker editing is completed. (For "Edit ticker")
- Finish editing .....The α-blend editing is completed. (For "α-blend Edit")

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



# Displaying Moving/i-motion Image List

You can list the files saved in the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card.

# 1



## i-motion

Camera .....Lists the moving images shot by the camera and saved to the FOMA phone.

i-mode .....Lists downloaded i-motion or i-motion attached to i-mode mail.

SD card .....Lists the folders within the miniSD memory card.

Edit .....Lists the moving images edited in "Edit i-motion".

Chara-den video.....Lists the i-motion recorded Chara-den video.

Press and hold to scroll sequentially.

Select from the Camera Shortcut menu and press : then you can activate i-motion player.



<Moving Image List>

If you select "SD card", the Folder List is displayed.

Select a folder and press to list moving images.



<miniSD memory card Folder List>

### Icons in the file list

The icon inserted to the front of the file name indicates file type.

File format	Audio format	Icon
MP4 file	AMR	
	AAC	
ASF file	-	

Playable frequency, time limit, and term of i-motion (replay restriction) might be restricted depending on i-motion.

" " (with replay restriction) or " " (replay restriction expired) is added to the icon for the file set with the replay restriction. You can check the file for the replay restriction using "File property".

" " is added to the icon for the file set with the replay restriction. However, while displaying file list in miniSD memory card, the icon is not displayed.

" " is added to the file that you cannot play owing to the UIM restrictions.

On the File List of the miniSD memory card, " " is also displayed for the file whose audio format is ACC.



**1** Press and hold (機能 / メニュー) for at least one second ▶ Use to select

**2** Use to select "i-motion" ▶ Use to select the folder to be displayed ▶

**Function menu**

While the Moving Image List is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit i-motion	p.367
Edit title	p.344
Movie ringtone	p.364
Set as stand-by	p.364
File property	p.366
Compose message	p.361
Send Ir data	p.402
Import	p.326
Export	p.325
Add desktop icon	p.324
Add i-mot. to PB	p.362
Edit file name	p.345
File restriction	p.345
Copy	p.346
Move	p.346
Reset title	See this page
Delete	p.382
Delete all	p.383
Multiple-choice	p.348, 383
Memory info	p.348
Sort	p.382
SD info	p.415
Listing	p.349

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

**Function menu**

While the miniSD memory card Folder List is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit fldr title	p.350
Create folder	p.350
Delete folder	p.350
Select storage	p.351

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

**Reset Title**

You can reset the edited title to the title before editing.

**1** Moving Image List  (**FUNC**)  Reset title  YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

<Sort>



## Sorting Moving/i-motion Images

Setting at purchase  
Date (New Old)

You can sort the order of moving or i-motion images displayed in the Moving Image List. The sorting order set for the moving images becomes the common setting for the Still Image List and Moving Image List; you cannot separately sort the order.

### 1 Moving Image List (FUNC) > Sort

- Date (New Old).....Sorts files in the order of latest to oldest date/time they were saved.
  - Date (Old New).....Sorts files in the order of oldest to latest date/time they were saved.
  - Title (Descend.).....Sorts files in descending order of titles.
  - Title (Ascending).....Sorts files in ascending order of titles.
  - Size (L S).....Sorts files in the order of large to small sizes.
  - Size (S L).....Sorts files in the order of small to large sizes.
- The files are displayed in the sorted order.

“Title (Descend.)”

The priority order is:

Half-pitch numeral Half-pitch alphabet (uppercase to lowercase) Full-pitch numeral Full-pitch alphabet (uppercase to lowercase) Hiragana Full-pitch katakana Kanji Half-pitch katakana pictographs (♥ to 🍵)

“Title (Ascending)”

The priority order is:

Pictographs (🍵 to ♥) Half-pitch katakana Kanji Full-pitch katakana Hiragana Full-pitch alphabet (lowercase to uppercase) Full-pitch numeral Half-pitch alphabet (lowercase to uppercase) Half-pitch numeral

#### Information

You cannot sort files stored in miniSD memory card.

## Deleting Moving/i-motion Images

Delete



You can delete the moving image file you have selected or been playing.

### 1 During stopped/Moving Image List (FUNC) > Delete > YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

#### Information

For the moving image file set as the Stand-by display, “Setting stand-by Delete?” is displayed.

For the moving image file set as Movie ring tone, “Setting movie ringtone Delete?” is displayed.

For the moving image stored in the Phonebook, “Setting phonebook Delete?” is displayed.

For the file with the access right set for reading only, “Delete the read only file?” is displayed.

## Delete All



You can delete all moving image files displayed in the Moving Image List.

### 1 Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for Terminal Security Code.

#### Information

When the List contains the moving image file set as the Stand-by display, "Setting stand-by Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the moving image file set as Movie ring tone, "Setting movie ringtone Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the moving image file stored in the Phonebook, "Setting phonebook Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for reading only, "Delete the read only file?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for both reading only and writable, "Delete except the read only file?" is displayed.

If a call comes in while deleting moving images from the miniSD memory card, deleting is canceled even midway.

## Multiple-choice (Delete)



You can select multiple moving image files from the Moving Image List and delete them.

You can select up to 50 files.

### 1 Moving Image List ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ Multiple-choice ▶ Select the file ▶

Move the cursor to confirm that the file is selected.

Keep pressing  to scroll sequentially.

Select the file already selected and press  : then you can cancel the selection.



### 2 (i) (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

#### Information

When the List contains the file set as the Stand-by display, "Setting stand-by Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file set as Movie ring tone, "Setting movie ringtone Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file stored in the Phonebook, "Setting phonebook Delete?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for reading only, "Delete the read only file?" is displayed.

When the List contains the file with the access right set for both reading only and writable, "Delete except the read only file?" is displayed.

If a call comes in while deleting moving images from the miniSD memory card, deleting is canceled even midway.

## <AV OUT>

### Displaying Still Images or Moving/i-motion Images on TV

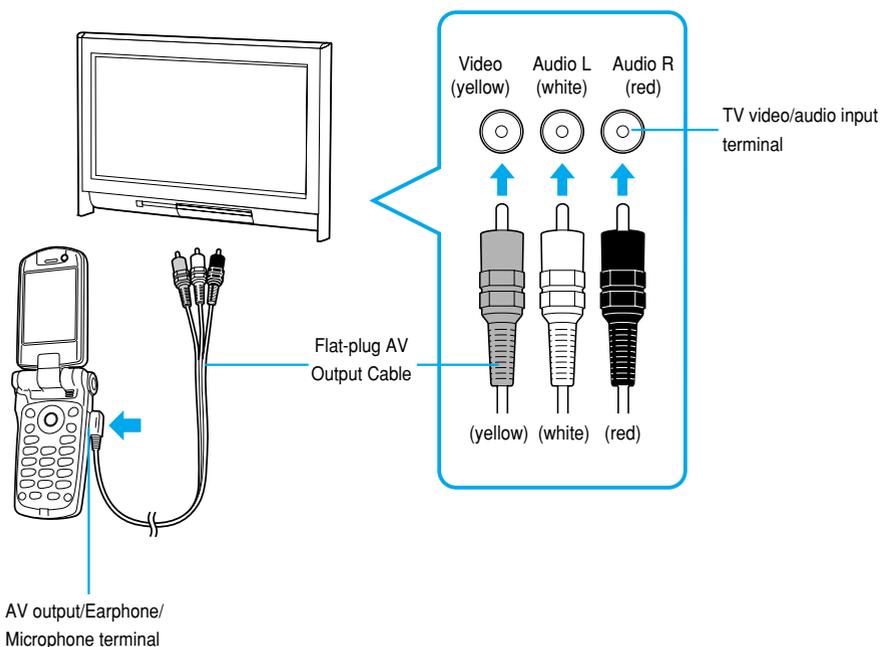
You can connect the FOMA phone to TV to view the still or moving images or i-motion you are playing back, or the image displayed while you are on the video-phone.

**Images other than the above cannot be displayed.**

Images might appear differently or some part might not be displayed depending on TV.

#### Connect the FOMA phone to TV

Open the lid of the AV output/Earphone Microphone terminal of the FOMA phone and plug the Flat-plug AV Output Cable into it. Connect the Flat-plug AV Output Cable to the video/audio terminal of TV.



#### Information

You can connect the FOMA phone to equipment other than the television set for output.

Plug the Flat-plug AV Output Cable securely into the terminal. Do not forcibly pull or twist the cable by the plug.

Before you plug the Flat-plug AV Output Cable into the device such as TV, or pull it out, once set the volume of the device to be connected to "OFF".

Pull the plug off slowly taking hold of the plug.



You can set whether to display the images on TV for when you connect the FOMA phone to TV using the Flat-plug AV Output Cable. Also, select the area to be displayed on TV.

## 1 External option ▶ AV OUT

- ON .....Displays images.
  - OFF .....Does not display images.
- If you selected "OFF", the operation will be completed.

## 2 Vertical/Horizontal

Select the area to be displayed on TV.

Vertical

Upper .....Displays upper.

Center .....Displays center.

Lower .....Displays lower.

Horizontal

Left .....Displays left.

Center .....Displays center.

Right .....Displays right.

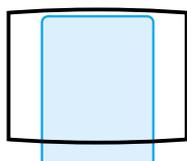
## 3 Press (Finish)

### The area displayed on TV (image illustration)

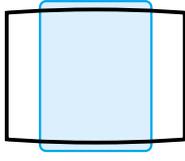
 : TV display  
(Display area)

 : FOMA phone display  
(In Normal style)

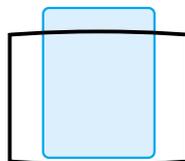
 : FOMA phone display  
(In Movie style/In Viewer style)



<In the case of "Upper">



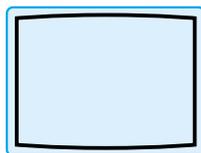
<In the case of "Center">



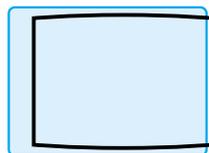
<In the case of "Lower">



<In the case of "Left">



<In the case of "Center">



<In the case of "Right">

### Information

Even if you set the area to be displayed on TV, the still image output to TV is displayed at the center. When the moving or i-motion images are output to TV in Normal style, they are displayed at the center in the horizontal direction. The setting of this function is available for the files in the "Camera" folder, "SD card" folder and "Edit" folder. You cannot change the setting, while another function is activated.



On TV, you can display the still, moving, or i-motion images being played, or the images displayed during a video-phone call. You can set this only when the Flat-plug AV Output Cable is connected to the FOMA phone.

# 1 Still image in play/Moving image in pause/Moving image at stop/Moving image play at end/During a video-phone call ▶ (i) (FUNC) ▶ AV OUT

ON .....Displays images.

OFF .....Does not display images.

You can also press (i) (FUNC) to output AV signal while Slide shows is in pause.

If you output the AV signal while Slide shows is in pause, you cannot flip the image.

"G" is displayed while the AV signal is output. When the still image is output by AV OUT, "AV出力中 (AV signal is output)" is displayed.



## Viewer Style

# 1 Still image in play/Moving image in pause/Moving image at stop/Moving image play at end

▶ (機能 / メニュー)

# 2 Use (AV) to select "AV OUT" ▶ (Target icon)

ON .....Displays images.

OFF .....Does not display images.

You can also output the image via the AV signal by pressing

(機能 / メニュー) while Slide shows is in pause.

"G" is displayed while the AV signal is output. When the still image is output by AV OUT, "AV出力中 (AV signal is output)" is displayed.



### To rotate the displayed still image

You can rotate the still image displayed on TV.

Each time you press (Rotate) (Rotate), the still image flips by a factor of 90 degrees clockwise.

### Information

You cannot use this function in Movie style or Viewer style.

## Information

You cannot operate the following Function menus during the still image is output via the AV signal.

- Edit image
- Send Ir data
- Export
- DPOF setting
- Set as display
- Set image disp.
- Add image to PB
- Delete
- Image info
- Add desktop icon
- Positioning
- Compose message
- Import
- Clipping area

You cannot operate the following functions during the moving image is output via the AV signal.

- Position memory
- Set as stand-by
- Export
- Play while close
- Edit imotion
- File property
- Add desktop icon
- LCD AI
- Compose message
- Send Ir data
- Add imot. PB
- Delete
- Movie ringtone
- Import
- Add to phonebook

Even if you display the image by AV OUT from the Function menu, you cannot change the set values.

If the Flat-plug AV Output Cable is pulled out while the AV signal is output, the setting is switched to "OFF".

If another function activates while the AV signal is output, the output is canceled.

If "Play while close" is set to "ON", you can play back the moving images with the FOMA phone closed.

When a video-phone call is outputting to an AV equipment, "  " (hands-free icon) does not appear; instead the voice is output from the connected equipment.

When the AV signal is output while "LCD AI" is set to "ON", "LCD AI" is switched to "OFF". At this moment, the display may get noisy.



# Playing Melodies

You can play back the downloaded original tone, melodies pre-installed in the FOMA phone, or effect tones.

You can also select up to 10 melodies you prefer for program playing.

## 1 Melody

- Original tone .....Plays the melodies stored in "Original tone".
- Melody.....Plays the melodies (8 melodies) stored at the time of purchase.
- Alarm .....Plays the effect tone stored at the time of purchase.
- Playlist.....Plays up to 10 melodies sequentially.

Select "Play melody" from the Function menu in the Original Tone List and press : then you can also play melodies.



<Melody Player display>

## 2 Select a melody

To stop playing, press .



<Melody Play display>

### To adjust the sound volume

While playing, press (or ) to raise the sound volume and press (or ) to lower the sound volume.

After adjusting, press or wait for about two seconds: then the Melody Play display returns.

Even if you change the sound volume while playing, the ring volume set by "Ring volume" (see page 83 of "Basics" manual) returns when Melody player is deactivated.

### Information

Melody player plays at the sound volume set in "Phone/Video-phone" of "Ring volume" (see page 83 of "Basics" manual). If "Phone/Video-phone" is set to "Silent" or "Step", melody player plays at "Level 2".

If you try to play during Manner Mode, "Setting manner mode Play melody?" is displayed. Select "YES" or "NO" and press .

While playing, press to play previous melody or next melody.

Press to end playing.

To stop playing, press any of , , , , , , or .

### Function menu

While the Melody Player display is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display following item.

Set as ring tone p.391

This item might not be available depending on the operation.

## Playlist



You can select up to 10 melodies or effect tones and program to play them in the order you prefer. See page 390 for programming melodies.

# 1

  **Melody ▶ Playlist**

To stop playing, press .



### Information

If you try to play during Manner Mode, "Setting manner mode Play melody?" is displayed. Select "YES" or "NO", and press .

### Function menu

While selecting "Playlist" in the Melody Player display, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit playlist p.390

Release playlist p.390

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.



You can edit the order of melodies for program-playing.

**1** Melody Player display ▶ Select “Playlist” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit playlist

**2** Select a program order from <1st> to <10th> ▶

All melodies .....Lists all melodies.

Original tone .....Lists melodies saved to “Original tone”.

Melody .....Lists melodies (8 melodies) stored at the time of purchase.

Alarm .....Lists effect tones stored at the time of purchase.

**3** Select a melody ▶

Press (Play) to pre-listen the melody.

**4** Repeat steps 2 through 3.

After editing Playlist, press (Finish).

### Information

When all melodies 1 through 10 are not stored, the stored melodies only are played in order.

If you edit the file name, title, or contents of melodies you have stored to Playlist, all the melodies in Playlist are released.

### To release a melody from the Playlist

1. Select a melody in step 2 and press .
2. Select “Release this” and press .

## Release Playlist



You can release all edited melodies from Playlist.

**1** Melody Player display ▶ Select “Playlist” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Release playlist  
▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

# Using Melodies

## Set as Ring Tone



You can set the ring tones for incoming calls, mail, Message Request/Message Free from the Function menu in the Original Tone List.

### 1 Original Tone List/Melody List/Effect Tone List/Melody Play display (FUNC) Set as ring tone

- Phone.....Sets the ring tone for incoming voice calls.
  - Video-phone.....Sets the ring tone for incoming video-phone calls.
  - Mail.....Sets the ring tone for incoming i-mode mail and Short Message (SMS).
  - Msg. Request.....Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Request.
  - Msg. Free.....Sets the ring tone for incoming Message Free.
- " " indicates the item already set.



Melody Player

## Displaying Melody List



You can list melodies stored as the original tones, and melodies or effect tones stored at the time of purchase.

### 1 Melody

- Original tone.....Lists melodies saved to "Original tone".
- Melody.....Lists melodies (8 melodies) stored at the time of purchase.
- Alarm.....Lists effect tones stored at the time of purchase.
- Playlist.....Plays up to 10 melodies sequentially.



Using Melodies  
Displaying Melody List

#### Icons while the Original Tone List is displayed

Icon	Description	Distribution
	Melodies without copyright	OK
	Copyrighted melodies	NO
	Melodies downloaded or attached to mail	-
	Melodies forwarded via Ir exchange or Data Link Software	-

The melody files only dedicated to the FOMA phone can be attached to i-mode mail or sent via Ir transmission.

### Function menu

While the Original Tone List is displayed, press  (**FUNC**) to display the following items.

Edit title	See this page
Edit file name	p.393
Play melody	p.388
Set as ring tone	p.391
Add desktop icon	p.393
Compose message	p.393
Ir exchange	p.402
Melody info	p.394
Memory info	p.394
Reset title	p.394
Delete this	p.395
Delete all	p.395

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

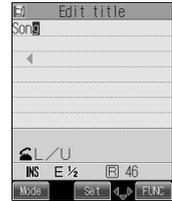
### Edit Title



You can enter the title of up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters.

**1** Original Tone List  (**FUNC**)  Edit title  Edit the title  
 

See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



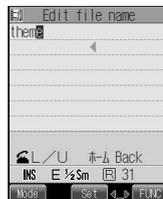
## Edit File Name



You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric letters (except extension) in the file name.

**1** Original Tone List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Edit file name ▶ Edit the file name ▶

See page 314 of “Basics” manual for how to enter characters.



### Information

You cannot change the file name for the following tones: the original tone downloaded, attached to i-mode mail, or forwarded as attached mail whose attachment to mail or the distribution to external devices is prohibited (the original tone with “” inserted to the front of the title).

When editing the file name, you cannot enter symbols or half-pitch “.”, “@”, “/”, “(”, “)”, “,”, “ ”, “\_”, “:”, “;”, “'”, “~”, “&”, “?”, “!”, “¥”, “.ne.jp”, “.co.jp”, “.ac.jp”, “.www”, “.com”, “.html”, “.http://”, “.https://”, and “@docomo.ne.jp”.

You cannot edit extension when editing file names. The extension conforming to file format is automatically added.

## Add Desktop Icon



You can paste the original tone to the desktop as a desktop icon.

**1** Original Tone List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Add desktop icon ▶ YES

To cancel, select “NO” and press .

### Information

See page 205 of “Basics” manual for how to delete desktop icons.

## Compose Message



You can attach the original tone to i-mode mail. Create new mail with the original tone attached.

**1** Original Tone List ▶ ⓘ (FUNC) ▶ Compose message

Then, follow the steps on page 150 to compose messages.



### Information

If you select the original tone you cannot attach to mail, “Compose message” is not available.

## Melody Information



You can check the melody information about the original tone.

Melody information contains the title of melody, file restriction information, information about whether the ring tone is linked with the illumination or vibrator, or whether set as the ring tone or Alarm. You can confirm melody information such as file size and file name.

### 1 Original Tone List (FUNC) Melody info

Melody information contains the following items you can refer to:

- Title .....Displays the title for melody files.
- File name .....Displays the file name for melodies files.
- Format .....Displays the file format.
- File size .....Displays the file size.
- Received from .....Displays the origin of the file.
- Saved at .....Displays the date and time the file saved. When the date and time are not set, "--/--/--" is displayed.
- File restriction .....Displays whether the file restriction is set for the file by "restricted" or "unrestricted".
- Vibrator linkage .....Displays whether the melody is linked to the vibrator or not.
- Illumination linkage .....Displays whether the melody is linked to the illumination or not.
- Ring tone set .....Displays whether the melody is set as the ring tone or Alarm.

#### Information

You may not be able to attach the original tone to mail or forward it via Ir exchange even when the Melody Information of file is "unrestricted".

## Memory Information



You can display used and available memory.

### 1 Original Tone List (FUNC) Memory info

#### Information

Displayed memory capacity is an estimate.

## Reset Title



You can reset titles of melodies downloaded or attached to i-mode mail. If you reset the title, the edited title returns to the origin title.

### 1 Original Tone List (FUNC) Reset title YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

# Deleting Melodies

## Delete this



- 1 Original Tone List** **(FUNC)** **Delete this** **YES**  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete All



- 1 Original Tone List** **(FUNC)** **Delete all** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **YES**  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .  
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

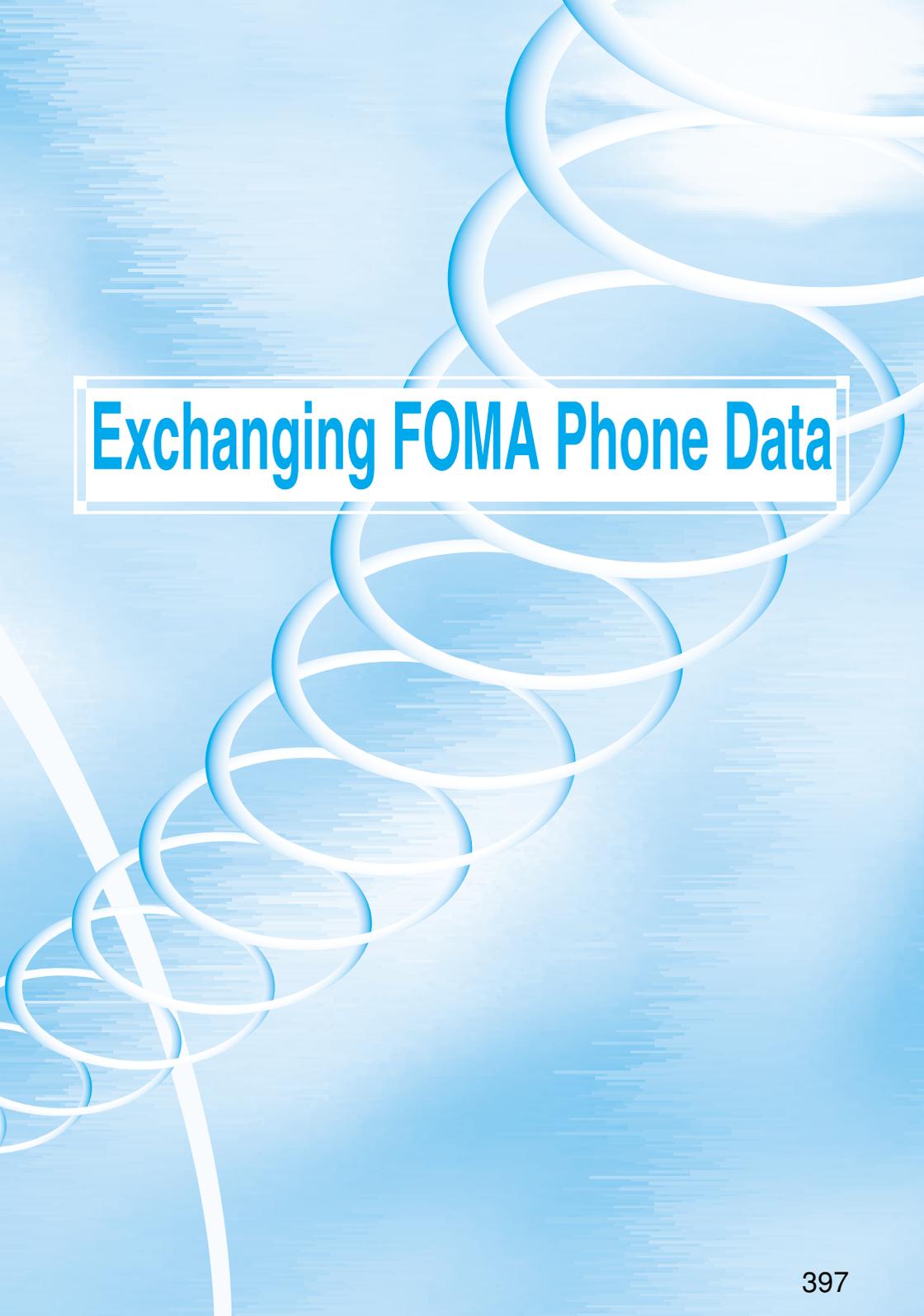
### Information

If you store the original tone, the title of the original tone is displayed on the display for selecting the ring tone or Alarm for the following functions: If the original tone is not stored, it is not displayed on the display for selecting.

- Select Ring tone .....See page 179 of "Basics" manual
- Ring tone and mail ring tone of "Utilities" .....See page 162 of "Basics" manual
- Ring tone and mail ring tone of "Group Utilities" .....See page 162 of "Basics" manual
- Alarm for Schedule .....See page 228 of "Basics" manual
- Alarm .....See page 223 of "Basics" manual

If you try to delete the original tone set for these functions or those set for Playlists, a warning message appears. Select "YES" and press to delete the original tone.



The background features a light blue gradient with several overlapping white circular bands that create a sense of depth and movement, resembling a helix or a series of rings.

# Exchanging FOMA Phone Data

## Ir Exchange

The FOMA phone conforms to IrMC version 1.1.

The FOMA phone can transfer the Phonebook or Schedule to the devices supporting the Ir exchange function.

You might not transfer some files depending on applications even if the external device is based on IrMC version 1.1.

However, the Ir exchange to and from the FOMA P2102V is not available.

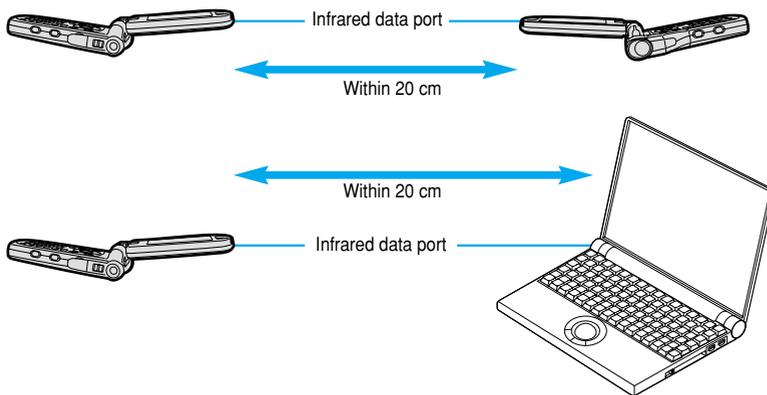
Also, you cannot send the Original tone, and still or moving image file to the FOMA P2102V from the FOMA P900iV. (You can send to the FOMA P900iV from the FOMA P2102V.)

Ir exchange distance should be within 20cm. Do not move the FOMA phone with the infrared data port pointed to the receiving end until data transfer ends.

Hold the FOMA phone with the hands securely so that it does not move.

If you expose the FOMA phone to direct sunlight or put it under fluorescent lights or near an infrared equipment, you may not be able to transmit infrared ray normally due to their influence.

First set the receiving end and begin sending data from the FOMA phone within 30 seconds.



### Notes on Ir exchange

- You cannot use Ir exchange during calls, i-mode, packet transmission, 64K data transmission, Short Message (SMS) transfer, Self-mode, All lock, or PIM lock.
- You cannot use Ir exchange while other functions are activated by Multitask. You cannot also start other functions during Ir exchange.
- Ir exchange places the FOMA phone in a state as if you are out of the service area, so you cannot make/receive calls, communicate using i-mode, or do data transmission.
- You cannot send and/or receive the Phonebook with infrared rays during Keypad Dial Lock. Release Keypad Dial Lock and then operate.
- You cannot receive the Phonebook during Restrict Dialing. At sending, you can send only Phonebook entries set with Restrict Dialing and Own Number.

## List of data items you can transfer using infrared rays

Transfer terms	One item	All items
Transferable data		
Phonebook (Own Number)		Up to 700 items <sup>1</sup>
Schedule		Up to 100 items
ToDo		Up to 100 items
Received mail		Up to 1000 items
Sent mail		Up to 400 items
Draft mail		Up to 10 items
Free memo		Up to 10 items
Original tone <sup>2</sup>		x
Still image file <sup>3</sup>		x
Moving image file <sup>4</sup>		x
Bookmark <sup>5</sup>		Up to 100 items

1 The total number of items you can send from or receive into the Phonebook via Ir is 700, each for the phone number and mail address.

2 You cannot send and/or receive some files (see page 391).

3 You cannot send and/or receive Original Animation.

When sending or receiving a JPEG file in excess of VGA size, the image may be shrunk to VGA size.

4 You cannot send and/or receive SDV and ASF files.

5 When sending and/or receiving bookmarks, the folder configuration may not be reflected depending on the destination device.

### Information

Still images and moving images received with Ir exchange are saved to the "Camera" folder.

If you fail in authenticating or when the size of files exceeds the memory capacity, a warning message appears, disabling you to send and/or receive data.

During Ir exchange communications, you are placed in the same status as you are out of service area so you cannot receive the call even if the other party calls at you. The caller hears an announcement that "Out of reach of signal or power off". When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center or forwarded to the forwarding destination.

It may take longer to forward data or you might not be able to receive data depending on the data size.

If you connect the FOMA USB Cable (option) to the FOMA phone, you may not perform Ir exchange.

## When Ir Exchange is Performed

During Ir exchange, the Ir exchange icon appears on the display of the FOMA phone according to the transmission state.



## Session Number

The session number is used to exactly identify the sender and receiver when you send or receive all items using Ir exchange. Before beginning sending or receiving data, predetermine any four-digit number and enter the same number into both the sender and receiver.

# Receiving Data Items

## Receiving One Data Item



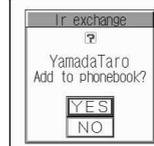
**1**  **Ir exchange** ▶ **Receive**

To cancel the transmission, press .



**2 YES**

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



### Information

When you have already downloaded the i-appli software that supports the external devices using infrared rays and received a software start instruction message, the specified software starts up. If you do not put a check mark for "i-appli To" of i-appli To setting, the software does not start up automatically.

You can assign a phone number you store in the Phonebook to the lowest empty memory numbers in 010 through 699. If all memory numbers 010 through 699 are occupied, the phone number is stored to the lowest empty memory numbers in 000 through 009 (two-touch dial).

If you receive a Phonebook entry stored as secret in Secret Mode or Secret Only Mode, the Phonebook entry is stored as an ordinary one.

Data in "Own Number" you have received is stored as a Phonebook entry.

Received mail messages are saved to the Inbox folder in "Inbox Folder List". When the maximum number of storable messages is exceeded, the messages overwrite in the order of (1) messages within the "Trash box" folder and (2) received messages from oldest one.

Sent mail overwrites the unprotected and oldest mail in the Outbox folder.

You cannot store still images in excess of 695 Kbytes and moving images in excess of 800 Kbytes.

## Receiving All Data Items



To receive all data items, you need to enter the same session number as that of sender. Note that all data items including protected data are overwritten by the received data if you have received all. Data stored in Secret Mode (see page 216 of "Basics" manual) is also deleted.

**1**  **Ir exchange** ▶ **Data exchange** ▶ **Enter the Terminal Security Code**

▶  ▶ **Receive**

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

## 2 Enter the same session number as that entered at the sender

Enter any four-digit number as the session number.



## 3 YES

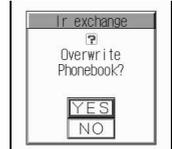
To cancel, select "NO" and press .



## 4 YES

Deletes stored data, then reception starts.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .



To cancel, press .



### If you transfer all data items:

The data in "Own Number" is sent together with the Phonebook.

All the data in "Own Number" of the receiver is overwritten except own number. Mail address is also overwritten by sender's address, so restore it at the receiving end.

You can send and/or receive the protected incoming and outgoing messages.

### Be sure to read the following before sending/receiving all data items

Receiving all data items deletes all data you have stored including the protected ones, and the receive data overwrites the existing data. Confirm that no important data is stored before receiving all data items.

Receiving all data items in the Phonebook overwrites personal data (except phone numbers) stored in "Own Number".

The Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also sent. The sent "Secret data" is stored as "Secret data" at the receiving end.

You cannot perform all data transfer from the Phonebook if "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set.

The group names in the Phonebook you have received are stored, so the data set in "Group setting" is also overwritten.

At transfer of all data items, the bar indicating the transmission status appears to notify you of the number of sent data items. The bar may progress slowly or look different from that viewed from the receiving end even when the data has correctly been sent depending on the size of the transferring data.

## Sending Data Items

You can send the following one or all data items from the FOMA phone using infrared rays.

Sending method	Data available for sending
Send this	Phonebook, Own number, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Free memo, Original tone, Still image file, Bookmark, Moving image file
Send all	Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, mail, Free Memo, Bookmarks

You cannot send still and moving images whose pasting are prohibited, melodies, and the Phonebook in the UIM.

You cannot send GIF data in excess of VGA size.

If you send mail with "i-appli To", the information in that mail about starting up i-appli is deleted. The receiving end cannot start up i-appli.

When sending one data item from the Phonebook, you cannot send the stored secret code.

Moving or i-motion images stored in the Phonebook are not sent.

### Sending One Data Item



1

Display for the data you want to send  (FUNC)

▶ Ir exchange (or Send Ir data) ▶ Confirm "Exchanging" of the receiving end ▶ YES

Transfer starts.

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

To cancel the transmission, press  or .



### Information

Some files attached to mail may not be sent depending on file format.

If transmission is interrupted and a message appears asking whether to continue the transmission, select "YES" and press : then you can resume the transmission.

In Secret Mode (see page 216 of "Basics" manual), you can also send secret data. However, in Secret Only Mode (see page 216 of "Basics" manual), you can send the data that can be displayed only.



To send all data items, enter any four-digit number as a session number. The receiving end needs to enter the same session number.

Follow the procedure below to start sending within 30 seconds after setting the receiving end to “Exchanging”.

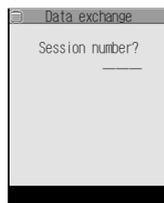
## 1 Ir exchange ▶ Data exchange ▶ Enter the Terminal Security

### Code ▶ ▶ Send

- Phonebook .....Sends all Phonebook entries.
  - Schedule .....Sends all Schedule events.
  - ToDo .....Sends all ToDo items.
  - Free memo.....Sends all Free Memo items.
  - Received mail ..Sends all received mail items.
  - Sent mail .....Sends all sent mail items.
  - Draft mail.....Sends all draft mail items.
  - Bookmark.....Sends all bookmarks.
- See page 208 of “Basics” manual for Terminal Security Code.

## 2 Enter the same session number as that of the receiving end

Enter any four-digit number as the session number.



## 3 Confirm “Exchanging” at the receiving end ▶ YES

Transmission starts.  
To cancel, select “NO” and press .



To cancel the transmission, press or .



### Information

Note that the schedule events at the receiving end are all deleted if you send all ToDo items to the phone that does not support ToDo.

Some files attached to mail may not be sent depending on file format.

If transmission is interrupted and a message appears asking whether to continue the transmission, select “YES” and press : then you can resume the transmission.

All data items you selected are sent regardless of Secret Mode (see page 216 of “Basics” manual).



# Setting Transmission

Setting at purchase  
ON

When you transfer the Phonebook using infrared rays, SD-PIM or data link software, specify whether to forward stored still images together.

1



## Forwarding image

ON .....Forwards still images from the Phonebook together.

OFF .....Does not forward still images from the Phonebook.

### Information

Moving or i-motion images stored in the Phonebook are not sent.

## Notes for Using miniSD Memory Card

### miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an external memory card having a large storage capacity, compact, lightweight, and detachable. This memory card is provided with the write protect function that prevents card data from being written or formatted, and also the copyright protect function that is applicable to the standard of SDMI (Secure Digital Music Initiative). This memory card enables rewriting 10 Mbytes for one second, and it is expected to be a global standard of the next-generation memory card.

The FOMA P900iV is compatible with a miniSD memory card of up to 128 Mbytes. (as of May, 2004)

Look up the following for the latest information:

- i-mode .....iMenu メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone maker)  
P-SQUARE 製品ガイド (Product Guide)
- Personal computers .....<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/sd/index.html>

You can purchase the miniSD memory card and its adapter from a shop handling home electrical items.

You may not be able to use the miniSD memory card you formatted using a personal computer and other devices. Be sure to use the miniSD memory card formatted with the FOMA P900iV.

The miniSD memory card may be erased or deformed due to an accident or failure. It is advisable to back up important data.

Note that we may not take responsibility for direct or indirect damages or incidental guarantee due to the use of the miniSD memory card.

- Damages arising from missing opportunities by the phone or transmitting
- Damages caused by erasing the data you saved in the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card

Do not peel the label of the miniSD memory card. Peeling the label may damage the miniSD memory card or its data. During processing of the card, the Call/Charging indicator lights and flickers. While the Call/Charging indicator is lighting on or flickering, never remove the miniSD memory card, or turn off the power of the FOMA phone. Confirm that the Call/Charging indicator goes off before removing the miniSD memory card or turning off the power of the FOMA phone. When it takes time to record data such as moving images, you should use the AC adapter to supply the power to the FOMA phone so that you do not fail to record owing to battery consumption.

The miniSD memory card has an operating life. If you use the miniSD memory card for a long time, you may not be able to write new data on it, or the card is disabled.

When inserting a miniSD memory card you are using for a personal computer or other device into the FOMA P900iV, the FOMA P900iV creates new files and folders.

Do not delete or move folders in the miniSD memory card using a personal computer.

The FOMA P900iV may fail to read the miniSD memory card.

The FOMA P900iV cannot read incompatible data you have written on the miniSD memory card using a personal computer.

The FOMA P900iV cannot set protect for the miniSD memory card. Pay enough attention for handling data.

The supplied miniSD memory card (16 Mbytes) and its adapter are samples; therefore those are out of free repairs.

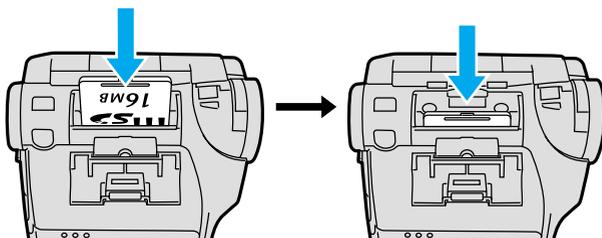
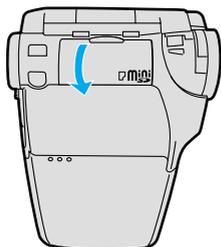
**Note that formatting the miniSD memory card deletes all data in the miniSD memory card.**

## Inserting/Removing miniSD Memory Card

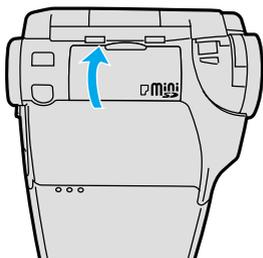
To protect data in the miniSD memory card, be sure to turn off the power of the FOMA phone before inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.

### Inserting

- 1 Open the cover of the miniSD memory card slot.
- 2 Face the front surface of the miniSD memory card upwards and insert the memory card into the slot until it clicks.

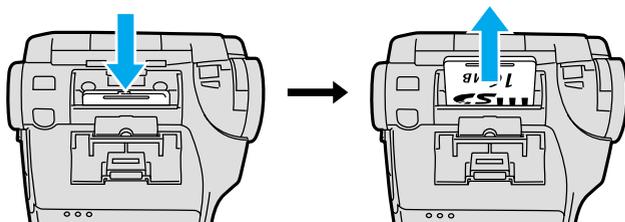


- 3 Close the cover of the miniSD memory card slot.



### Removing

- 1 Open the cover of the miniSD memory card slot. (See step 1 of "Inserting".)
- 2 Push the miniSD memory card into the inside and remove. (Pushing the miniSD memory card into the inside pops up the card.)



- 3 Close the cover of the miniSD memory card slot. (See step 3 of "Inserting".)

## Icons

The following icons appear when you install the miniSD memory card:



: You can save data to the miniSD memory card and read the data you saved.



: The miniSD memory card is write protected. You cannot save data.



: You cannot use the miniSD memory card.

Do "SD format" or "SD check disk".

When "SD" is displayed even after you perform "SD format" or "SD check disk", remove the miniSD memory card and then install it again.



## Information

Do not insert or remove the miniSD memory card with the FOMA phone turned on. It may cause to damage the miniSD memory card or its data.

Please note that miniSD memory card may pop out when you insert or remove it.

After removing the miniSD memory card, be sure to store it in the protection case provided. If you store the miniSD memory card in other protection case, you may not be able to use the miniSD memory card.

Confirm the direction of the miniSD memory card, and then insert or remove it straight. (If you obliquely insert the miniSD memory card into the slot, the memory card may be damaged.)

It may take longer to initially read or write data after attaching the miniSD memory card.

# Using miniSD Memory Card

You can save the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card and back up important data. You can also display data in the miniSD memory card from the FOMA phone and export the saved data to the FOMA phone.

See page 326 for importing still, moving or i-motion images from the miniSD memory card.

See page 325 for exporting still, moving or i-motion images to the miniSD memory card.

## Displaying Data in a miniSD Memory Card

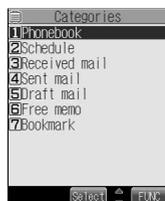


You can display data such as the Phonebook you saved to the miniSD memory card.

1



SD-PIM



<Category List>

2

### Select the category to be displayed.

- Phonebook .....Displays the Phonebook in the miniSD memory card.
- Schedule .....Displays the Schedule and Todo in the miniSD memory card.
- Received mail.....Displays received mail in the miniSD memory card.
- Sent mail .....Displays sent mail in the miniSD memory card.
- Draft mail .....Displays draft mail in the miniSD memory card.
- Free memo .....Displays Free Memo in the miniSD memory card.
- Bookmark .....Displays bookmarks in the miniSD memory card.



<miniSD File display>  
For Phonebook

3

### Select the file you want to display from the miniSD memory card



<Data list >  
For Phonebook

## 4 Select the file to be displayed. ▶



<File detailed display>

For Phonebook

### Information

You cannot start other functions or switch to other functions with Multitask while data in the miniSD memory card is displayed.

You cannot display data from the miniSD memory card during PIM Lock. You cannot also export data from each function.

If you display Deco mail, you cannot correctly display the mail image before saving to the miniSD memory card.

### Function menu

While the Category List, miniSD File display, Data List, or Data detailed display is displayed, press

 ( **FUNC** ) to display the following items.

Edit title	p.412
Import & add	p.411
Import&overwrite	p.411
Import & add one	p.411
Import & add all	p.411
Import & OW all	p.411
Export	p.410
Delete	p.412
Delete all	p.412
SD info	p.415
SD format	p.413
SD check disk	p.414

Some of these items might not be available depending on the operation.

## Export

You can copy the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card.

While exporting, you are placed in the same status as you are out of service area so you cannot make calls, communicate using i-mode, or transfer data.

If you copy mail with "i-appli To", the information in that mail about launching i-appli is deleted.

The secret data is copied as ordinary data.

Moving or i-motion images stored in the Phonebook are not export.

Export one



You can copy one data item from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card.

You cannot copy the secret code stored in the Phonebook entry.

- 1 Display for the data you want to copy > (FUNC) > Export to SD  
> YES

Export all



You can copy all data items from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card.

You cannot copy secret codes stored in the Phonebook entries.

- 1 Category List/miniSD File display > (FUNC) > Export

When export all data in "Schedule" or "ToDo"

1. Category List/miniSD File display > Select "Schedule"

2. (FUNC) > Export

Schedule .....Saves all data items from Schedule to the miniSD memory card.

ToDo .....Saves all data items from ToDo to the miniSD memory card.

All .....Saves all data items from Schedule or ToDo to the miniSD memory card.

- 2 Enter the Terminal Security Code > > YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

When all data in the Phonebook are exported, the contents of "Own number" are also copied.

For copying mail, some files attached to mail may be deleted depending on file format.

## Import

You can import the Phonebook entries, Schedule events, ToDo items, mail, free memos, and bookmarks from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

While importing, you are placed in the same status as you are out of service area so you cannot make calls, communicate using i-mode, or transfer data.

Import one



You can import one data item from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

**1** Data List/Data detailed display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Import & add one ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

Import & add / Import & add all



You can import all data from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

The imported data is additionally stored to the FOMA phone.

**1** miniSD File display/Data List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Import & add/Import & add all ▶  
Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .  
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

If the memory capacity of the FOMA phone runs short during importing, importing is suspended midway; however, the data imported already is stored.

If you execute "Import & add all" data items, you cannot import the following data:

- Schedule items set for the same date and time
- Schedule items set for the same date and time as those in the FOMA phone
- Bookmarks of the same URL
- Bookmarks of the same URL as those in the FOMA phone

Import & overwrite/Import & overwrite all



You can import all data from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA phone.

Note that the data stored in the FOMA phone is overwritten and deleted.

**1** miniSD File display/Data List ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Import&overwrite/Import & OW  
all ▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

If you try to import all data items the Phonebook, a confirmation display appears asking whether to set the first data for "Own Number".

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

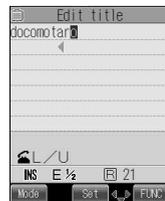
## Edit Title



You can edit the title in the miniSD memory card.

**1** miniSD File display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Edit title ▶ Enter the title  
▶

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters.  
See page 314 of "Basics" manual for how to enter characters.



## Delete



You can delete a file saved in the miniSD memory card.

**1** miniSD File display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Delete ▶ YES  
To cancel, select "NO" and press .

## Delete All



You can delete all files in the currently displayed categories within the miniSD memory card.

**1** miniSD File display ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Delete all  
▶ Enter the Terminal Security Code ▶ ▶ YES

To cancel, select "NO" and press .

See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

If the number of files saved in the miniSD memory card increases, it may take longer to read or write data.  
You cannot write data on the miniSD memory card write protected using a personal computer or other devices.



# Formatting miniSD Memory Card

To initially use the miniSD memory card, you need to format (initialize) it. Be sure to format by FOMA P900iV. The miniSD memory card formatted using other devices such as personal computers may not be used properly.

Note that formatting deletes all the contents of the miniSD memory card.

**1** **SD-PIM** **( FUNC )** **SD format** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **YES**

or

**Camera** **( FUNC )** **SD format** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **YES**

or

**( FUNC )** **SD format** **Enter the Terminal Security Code** **YES**

To cancel formatting, select "NO" and press .  
See page 208 of "Basics" manual for the Terminal Security Code.

### Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card during formatting. Damages of the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could result.

We shall not guarantee the data saved in the miniSD memory card of which formatting is canceled midway.

You cannot format the write protected or incompatible miniSD memory card.

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in green while formatting the miniSD memory card.

If you press **( OUT )** or during formatting or if you receive a voice call or video-phone call during formatting, formatting is canceled. Try to format again.

You cannot start other functions or switch to another function with Multitask during formatting.



# Checking miniSD Memory Card

You can check and recover a system area or directory in the miniSD memory card.

**1** **SD-PIM** **( FUNC )** **SD check disk** **YES**

or

**Camera** **( FUNC )** **SD check disk** **YES**

or

**( FUNC )** **SD check disk** **YES**

Not to check SD disk, select "NO" and press .

### Information

Do not remove the miniSD memory card during check disk. Damages of the FOMA phone or miniSD memory card could result.

You cannot check the write protected, unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory card.

When the miniSD memory card is checked for disc, it may not be recovered, the data in the card before the check may be deleted, or the card itself may be initialized.

The Call/Charging indicator flickers in green while checking the disk.

If you press **( Out )** or during checking disk or if you receive a voice call or video-phone call during checking disk, checking disk is suspended.

If you suspend checking disk midway, data in recovery may remain. Try to check the disk again.

It may take longer to check the disk depending on the file size saved in the miniSD memory card.

You might not recover some miniSD memory cards.

You cannot start other functions or switch to another function with Multitask while checking the disk.



## Displaying Capacity of miniSD Memory Card

You can display the used memory capacity and empty space in the miniSD memory card.

**1** **SD-PIM** **( FUNC )** **SD info**

or

**( FUNC )** **SD info**

or

**Still Image List/Moving Image List in miniSD memory card** **( FUNC )**

**SD info**

After checking, press .

### Information

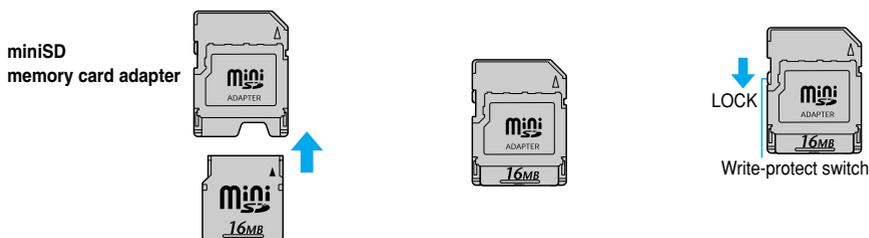
You can also display SD information by pressing **( FUNC )** from the following displays:  
miniSD File display, Data List or Data detailed display of SD-PIM

## Using a miniSD Memory Card with a Personal Computer

By connecting the miniSD memory card to the miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory card on a personal computer compatible with the SD memory card. You can display or print out still and moving images and back up the important data.

## Using a miniSD Memory Card with Compliant Devices

By using the miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the miniSD memory card on compatible devices.



### Information

If the write-protect switch of the miniSD memory card is at the "LOCK" side, the miniSD memory card is write-protected and you cannot write data to or format the card.

To protect important data, move the write-protect switch to the "LOCK" side and to write or format data, release "LOCK" for the write-protect switch.

### Folder configuration on miniSD memory card

By writing files from the FOMA phone to the miniSD memory card, you can create the folders as shown below within the miniSD memory card, and save the files to the respective folders. When writing a file from a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, you need to define the following folder configuration and file names:

-  DCIM .....Folder for still images
  -  xxx\_P900 .....Folder
  -  Pxxx####.JPG .....Still image file (JPEG file)
-  SD\_VIDEO .....Folder for moving images
  -  PRL \* \* \* .....Folder
  -  MOL \* \* \* .3GP ...Moving image file (3GP file)
  -  MOL \* \* \* .SDV ...Moving image file (SDV file)
  -  MOL \* \* \* .ASF ...Moving image file (ASF file)
  -  MOL \* \* \* .MP4 ...Moving image file (MP4 file)
-  SD\_PIM .....Folder for Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Mail, Free Memo, and Bookmark
  -  PIM\$\$\$\$.VCF .....Phonebook file (vCard file)
  -  PIM\$\$\$\$.VCS .....Schedule, ToDo file (vCalendar file)
  -  PIM\$\$\$\$.VMG .....Mail file (vMessage file)
  -  PIM\$\$\$\$.VNT .....Free memo file (vNote file)
  -  PIM\$\$\$\$.VBM .....Bookmark file (vBookmark file)
-  MISC .....DPOF folder
  -  AUTPRINT.MRK .....DPOF file

To save the still images you edited with a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, enter three-digit half-pitch numerals 100 through 999 into "xxx" and four-digit half-pitch numerals 0001 to 9999 into "####" (Use the same half-pitch numerals for the file name "xxx" as that for the folder name "xxx").

For a still image file, you can display only a JPEG file with extension "JPG" on the display of the FOMA phone.

To save the moving images you edited with a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, enter 001 through FFF hexadecimal numbers consisting of half-pitch numerals 0 to 9 and half-pitch alphabets A to F into "\* \* \* \*".

For moving image files, you can display only the MP4 files with extensions "3GP", "SDV", "MP4" and ASF files with extension "ASF" on the display of the FOMA phone.

To save the Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, mail, Free Memo, and Bookmark you edited with a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, enter 5-digit half-pitch numerals 00001 to 65535 into "\$\$\$\$\$".

Folder and file names may be displayed in lowercase characters depending on the personal computer you use.

The hexadecimal numbers are carried up every 16, unlike the way the decimal numbers are carried up every 10.

[Example]

001,002,...,009,00A,00B,00C,00D,00E,00F,010,011,...,019,01A,01B,01C,01D,  
01E,01F,020,...,1F9,1FA,1FB,1FC,1FD,1FE,1FF,200...

## Information

If you save the file edited with a personal computer to the miniSD memory card, the folder name or file name with different characters from those on page 417 may not be displayed or played back on the FOMA P900iV.

If you do the power OFF, SD check disk, SD format, or miniSD memory card removal, the folder of storage location is set for the latest folder created in the FOMA phone. If the setting is changed, set the "Select storage" (see page 351) again.

When you create or edit the folder in the personal computer, the folder of storage location might be changed. If the setting is changed, set the "Select storage" (see page 351) again.

Do not use the personal computer to delete or move the folders inside the miniSD memory card.

The miniSD memory card might not be read by the FOMA P900iV.

If you record the FOMA P900iV incompatible data on the miniSD memory card with the personal computer, the FOMA P900iV cannot read it.

On the FOMA P900iV, you might not be able to display or play data which was saved to the miniSD memory card from other equipment; on other equipment, you might not be able to display or play data which was saved to the miniSD memory card from the FOMA P900iV.

To procure the USB Read Writer for the miniSD memory card and PC Card read adapter, inquire respective makers for the operation of miniSD memory card beforehand.

If you use the miniSD memory card formatted using devices other than the FOMA P900iV, it might not work correctly.

### MPEG4

MPEG4 is an abbreviation of Moving Picture Experts Group Phase4 and is high-efficiency coding (data compression) method for mobile communications or the Internet.

#### About 3gp format

"3gp" is a format specified by 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project).

#### About asf format

ASF is an abbreviation of Advanced Streaming Format that is appropriate for the streaming distribution that can contain the information about images, audio, or characters.

Setting of "Store in"	Store in	File format	Notes
Phone	FOMA phone	MP4 (3gp)	Exportable to a miniSD memory card
SD card	miniSD memory card	MP4 (asf)	Importable to the FOMA phone

The background features a light blue gradient with several overlapping white circular patterns that resemble a helix or a series of interlocking rings. A white rectangular box with a thin blue border is centered horizontally, containing the title text.

# Data Transmission

## Data Transmission Available from the FOMA Phone

The data transmission services you can use by connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer are classified as follows; packet transmission, 64K data transmission, and data transfer (OBEX).

The FOMA phone is equipped with the adapter function for packet transmission.

### Types of Transmission Available

In the data transmission, the following operating environment is necessary for your personal computer:

Item	Description
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model, which allows the use of the CD-ROM drive When using the FOMA USB Cable (option): USB port (Confirm to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1.) Display resolution 800 x 600 dots, high color 16 bits or more recommended.
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition (Japanese version in each)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me: 32 Mbytes or more Windows® 2000 Professional: 64 Mbytes or more Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition: 128 Mbytes or more (Japanese version in each)
Hard disk space size	5 Mbytes or more

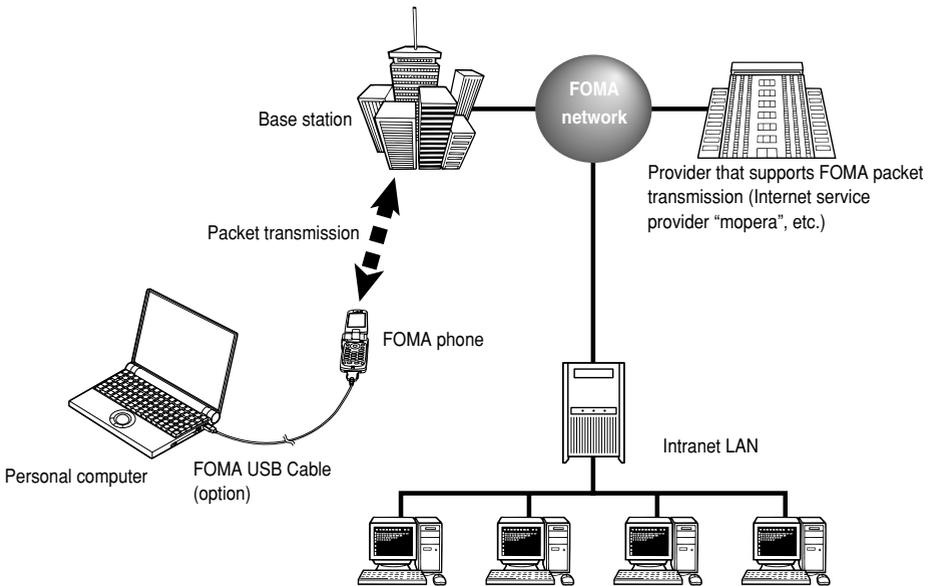
The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

- Microsoft, MS and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

## Packet Transmission

This service requires a transmission fee depending on the amount of data you sent and received. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

It uses an access point which supports the FOMA packet transmission such as DoCoMo Internet access service "mopera". To use this service, connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer via a FOMA packet transmission component (FOMA USB Cable (option), FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option)), and then carry out settings. The packet transmission is suitable for using applications through the high-speed transmission. If required, you can transfer data by accessing an Intranet LAN system connected to the FOMA network. See pages 426 and after, for details on setting and connection.



### Information

The packet transmission is charged depending on the amount of data you sent and received. Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you transmit/retrieve a large amount of data such as by browsing web pages having many images, or by downloading the data.

Purchase the dedicated FOMA USB Cable (option).

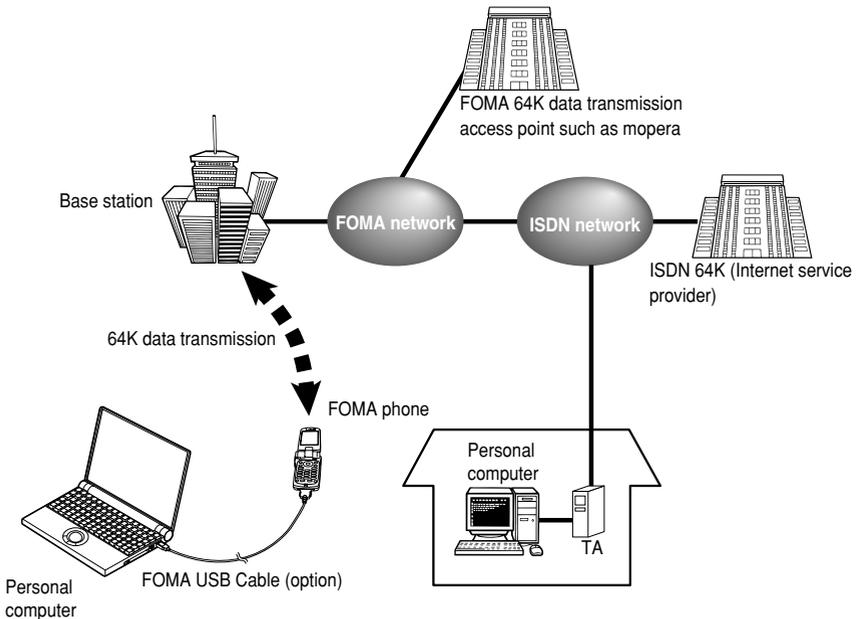
The USB cable for personal computers cannot be used as the shape of the connector differs.

See the manual of FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option) for connecting and setting FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option).

To use the FOMA phone for data communications connected with PDA "musea", update "musea". See DoCoMo Web page for how to update "musea".

## 64K Data Transmission

This service requires a transmission fee depending on the duration of connection. It uses the FOMA USB Cable (option) or FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option) for 64 kbps transmission. To use this service, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data transmission such as DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, or an ISDN synchronized 64K access point. For details on setting and connection, see pages 426 and after.



### Information

The 64K data transmission is charged depending on the duration of connection. Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

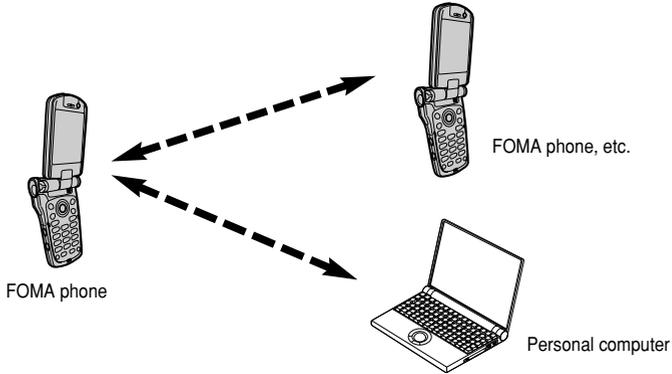
You cannot use PHS services (32K data transmission and 64K data transmission) such as PIAFS from the FOMA phone.

Prepare a dedicated USB cable (option) for the FOMA phone. (A USB cable for personal computer is not available because its connector shape is unsuitable for the FOMA phone.)

See the manual of FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option) for connecting and setting FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option).

## Data Transfer (OBEX)

This service transfers data using infrared rays or FOMA USB Cable (option). With the Ir exchange, you can transfer data to another FOMA phone or a device having Ir exchange function such as a personal computer. To perform data transfer (OBEX) between the FOMA phone and personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option), install the data link software (see page 494). When using the FOMA USB Cable (option), install the P900iV transmission setup files (see pages 430 to 438).

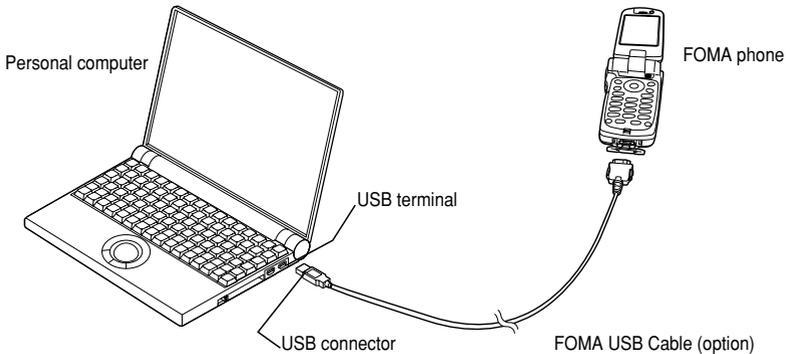


## Connecting FOMA Phone to Other Devices

To carry out the packet transmission, prepare the following connection cable and software in addition to the FOMA phone and personal computer:

### Example of connection using the FOMA USB Cable

- FOMA USB Cable (option)
- Attached CD-ROM "FOMA P900iV CD-ROM"



### Information

Prepare a dedicated FOMA USB Cable. (A USB cable for personal computer is not available because its connector shape is unsuitable for the FOMA phone.)

## Notes for Using Data Transmission

### Charge of Internet service provider

To use Internet, you have to pay the charge for the Internet service provider you use. Besides the FOMA service fee, you have to directly pay the charge to the Internet service provider. For details on the charge, contact the Internet service provider you use.

If using DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera”, you can use Internet with transmission charge only.

### Setting access point (Internet service provider, etc.)

An access point is different between the packet transmission and 64K data transmission. To use the packet transmission, connect to an access point for packet transmission. To use the 64K data transmission, connect to an access point which supports FOMA 64K data transmission or ISDN synchronized 64K.

You cannot connect to the DoPa access point.

You cannot connect to PHS 64K or 32K data transmission access point such as PIAFS.

### About user authentication for accessing network

User certification (ID and password) may be required at connection to some access points. In this case, enter your ID and password on the transmission software (dial-up network). ID and password are specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator of the access point. For details, contact the provider or administrator.

### About access authentication for using browser

FirstPass (user certificate) may be required for access authentication to view a FirstPass-supported site on the PC browser. In that case, install the FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and do the setting.

See “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view “FirstPassManual (PDF format)”. If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

### Conditions of packet transmission and 64K data transmission

To carry out the transmission using the FOMA phone, the following conditions are required:

- Prepare a personal computer that supports FOMA USB Cable (option) or FOMA Mobile Card N2 (option).
- In FOMA service area
- For packet transmission, the access point supports packet transmission of the FOMA.
- For 64K data transmission, the access point supports the FOMA 64K data transmission or ISDN synchronized 64K.

Even when these conditions are satisfied, if the base station is congested or the radio wave status is wrong, you may not carry out transmission.

## Glossary of Terms

### APN

The abbreviation of Access Point Name. Used to identify an Internet service provider or Intranet LAN system you want to access for packet transmission. For example, "mopera" is expressed with character string "mopera.ne.jp".

### cid

The abbreviation of Context Identifier. A registration number of the APN that is registered in the FOMA phone in advance for packet transmission. In the FOMA phone, you can register up to 10 cid numbers (1 to 10).

### Administrator permission

Means the permission with which the administrator can access all of Windows® 2000 Professional system, in this manual. User in the administrators group has this permission. User without the administrator permission can use only specific functions of the system; therefore, such users cannot install the transmission setup files (driver).

### DNS

The abbreviation of Domain Name System, which converts a name easy-to-understand for human-being, for example, "nttdocomo.co.jp", into an address indicated by a number easy-to-manage for computer.

### OBEX

The abbreviation of Object Exchange, which is the international data transmission protocol defined by IrDA (Infrared Data Association).

Using devices and software based on the OBEX protocol, you can transfer data among various devices such as mobile phone, personal computer, digital camera, and printer.

### IrDA

The abbreviation of Infrared Data Association, which is the international organization that establishes and promotes a protocol of data transmission via infrared rays.

### IrMC

The abbreviation of Ir Mobile Communications, which is the protocol defined by IrDA that provides how to exchange data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or free memo, assuming that transmission between devices is based on the OBEX protocol.

### QoS

The abbreviation of Quality of Service, which indicates the quality of network services. For the QoS setting of the FOMA phone, you can specify a connection at a free baud rate or only at the maximum baud rate (upload: 64 kbps, download: 384 kbps). (After connection, the baud rate is variable.)

For details, see pages 502, 503.

### W-TCP

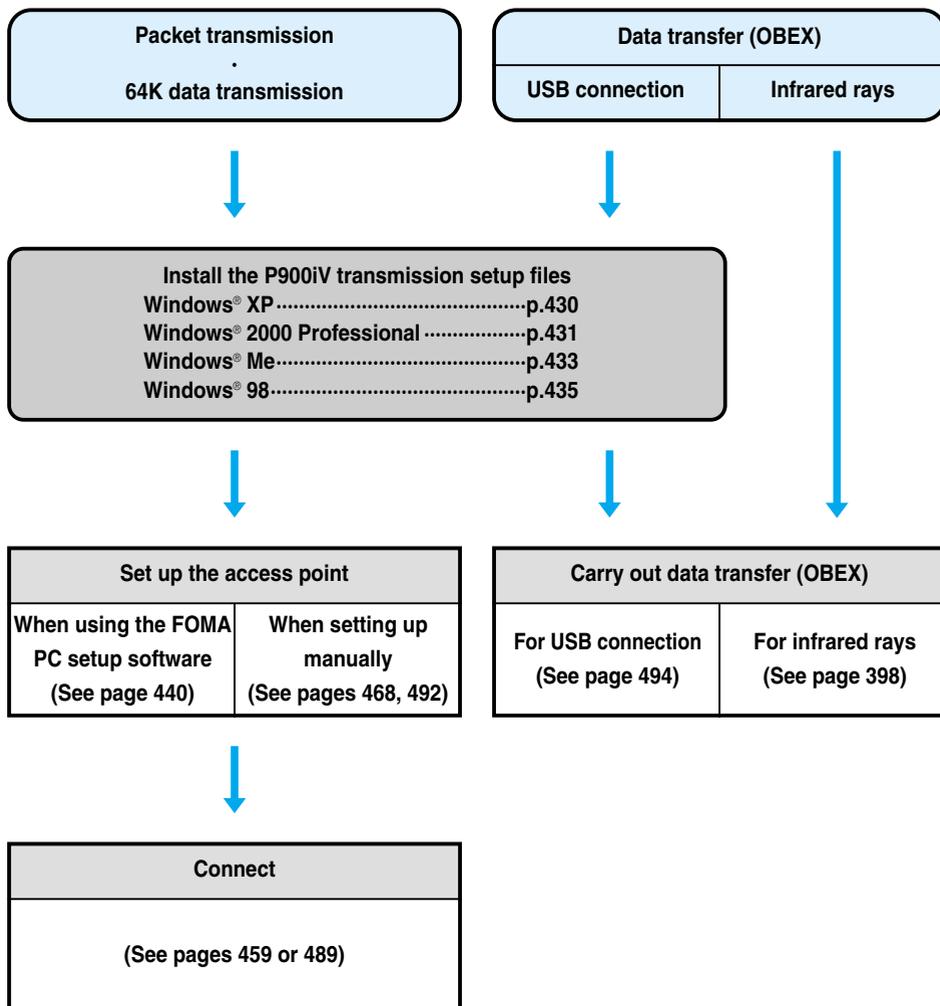
A TCP parameter used to maximize the TCP/IP transmission capability when carrying out the packet transmission in the FOMA network. To maximize the transmission performance of the FOMA phone under the "Wireless," "W-CDMA", or "Windows®" environment, you have to optimize the TCP parameter.

### W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile phone transmission systems (IMT-2000) authorized as the global standards. The FOMA phone conforms to the W-CDMA standard.

## Preparation Flow for Data Transmission

The following outline shows a preparation flow for packet transmission, 64K data transmission, and data transfer (OBEX).



### Attached "FOMA P900iV CD-ROM"

When connecting the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) for packet transmission, install the "P900iV transmission setup files (driver)" from the attached "FOMA P900iV CD-ROM" into the personal computer. If possible, also install the "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)". See pages 430 to 438 for details on how to install the "P900iV transmission setup files (driver)". See page 442 for details on how to install the "FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)".

## Transmission Setup Files

To connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer for data transmission, you have to install the transmission setup files from the attached CD-ROM. (See pages 430 to 438)

The transmission setup files vary depending on operating systems. Follow the installation procedure for each operating system and specify the appropriate directory to install the transmission setup files.

- Windows® XP, Windows® 2000 Professional: ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win2k\_XP
- Windows® 98, Windows® Me: ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win98\_ME

### Information

If the personal computer fails to recognize the FOMA phone for any reason, uninstall the transmission setup files once (see page 439), and then install the files again.

If you make a mistake in installing an OS driver at setting of the automatic search, the system will not run normally. In this case, uninstall the transmission setup files once, and then correctly install the files.

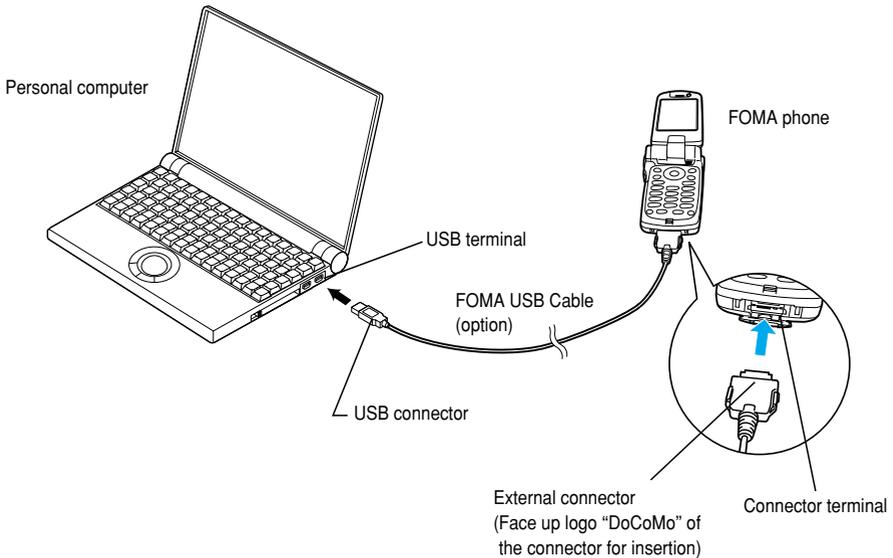
## FOMA PC Setup Software

By installing the FOMA PC setup software from the attached CD-ROM into your personal computer, you can easily operate various settings required for data transmission by connecting the FOMA phone to a personal computer. (See page 440)

## Connecting the FOMA Phone to a PC

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (option).

- 1** Check the direction of the connector terminal of the FOMA phone, then straight insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable (option) until it clicks.
- 2** Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable (option) to the USB terminal of the personal computer.



### Information

Do not forcibly insert the FOMA USB Cable (option). Insert each connector in the correct direction at the correct angle; otherwise, you will fail connection. When the direction and angle are correct, you can insert a connector smoothly without the strong force. If you fail to insert a connector, check its shape and direction once more without inserting a connector by the strong hand.

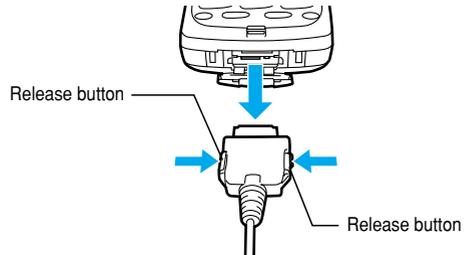
Please prepare the dedicated FOMA USB Cable (option).

(You cannot use a USB cable of a personal computer because the shape of the connector is unsuitable for the FOMA phone.)

Symbol “” appears on the FOMA phone when the FOMA phone recognizes the connection with the personal computer after you install the transmission setup files for packet transmission or 64K data transmission. Before you install the transmission setup files, the FOMA phone does not recognize the connection with the personal computer, and symbol “” does not appear.

## Removing

1. While holding down the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable (option), straight pull out the connector.



2. Pull out the FOMA USB Cable (option) from the USB terminal of the personal computer.

### Information

Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (option) by the strong hand. It may result in a failure.  
Do not perform connection and disconnection of the FOMA USB Cable (option) in succession.  
Once you connect and disconnect the cable, wait for a while, then perform connection or disconnection.

# Installing into Windows® XP

When installing the P900iV transmission setup files (driver) under Windows® XP, be sure to use the administrator permission of the personal computer; otherwise, an error will occur. For details on how to set administrator permission of the personal computer, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

**1** Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 428)

**2** Start Windows®, then insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer.

**3** Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

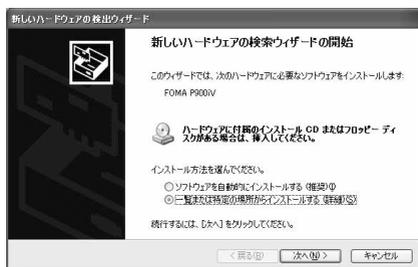
If this screen appears during installation of the P900iV transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

**4** Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (option), which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

**5** Start installation.

Pop-up message “新しいハードウェアが見つかりました (New hardware was found)” is displayed for a few seconds, then the screen on the right appears.

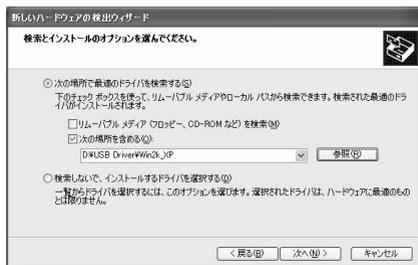
Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a specific place (details)), then click “次へ (Next)”.



**6** Select a driver.

Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する (Search for the appropriate driver in the place below)”, and uncheck “リムーバブルメディア(フロッピー、CD-ROMなど)を検索 (Search for the removable media (floppy disk, CD-ROM, etc.))”. Then check “次の場所を含める (Including the place below)”. Click “参照 (Browse)”; specify “<CD-ROM drive-name>: ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win2k\_XP”; then click “次へ (Next)”. (In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)

The driver is common to Windows® 2000 Professional.



## 7 Click “完了 (Finish)”.



## 8 Install other P900iV transmission setup files (driver).

Install all the other P900iV transmission setup files (driver) (see page 438) according to steps 5 to 7.

After you end the installation of all the P900iV transmission setup files (driver), pop-up message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。(New hardware was installed, and the system was ready.)” appears for a few seconds on the indicator of the task bar.

Then confirm that the P900iV transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 437)

## Installing into Windows® 2000 Professional

When installing the P900iV transmission setup files (driver) under Windows® 2000 Professional, be sure to use the administrator permission. If user without the administrator permission installs the P900iV transmission setup files (driver), an error will occur. For administrator setting, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

**1** Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 428)

**2** Start Windows®, then insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer.

**3** Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer.

In this case, go to step 4.

If this screen appears during installation of the P900iV transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

**4** Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (option), which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

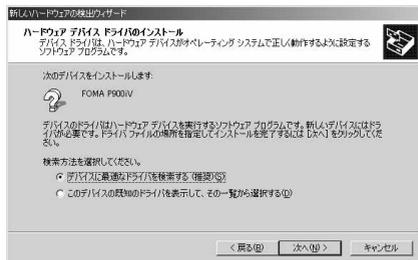
## 5 Start installation.

Click “次へ (Next)”.

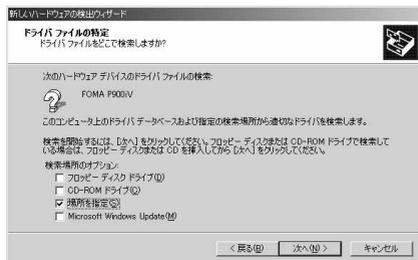


## 6 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨) (Search for the appropriate driver for the device (recommended))”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Some personal computers display “USB DEVICE”.



## 7 Select “場所を指定 (Specify a place)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



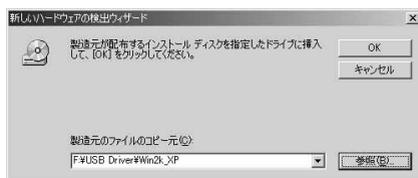
## 8 Specify a folder you want to search for.

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive-name>:

¥ USB Driver¥ Win2k\_XP”.

After specifying a folder you want to search for, click “OK”.

(In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)



## 9 Confirm the driver name (see page 438), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P900iV” is displayed in this example.

Some personal computers display “USB DEVICE”.



## 10 Click “完了 (Finish)”.



## 11 Install other P900iV transmission setup files (driver).

Install all the other P900iV transmission setup files (driver) (see page 438) according to steps 5 to 10.

Then confirm that the P900iV transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 437)

## Installing into Windows® Me

### 1 Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 428)

### 2 Start Windows®, then insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer.

### 3 Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4. If this screen appears during installation of the P900iV transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

### 4 Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (option), which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

### 5 Start installation.

Select “ドライバの場所を指定する( 詳しい知識のある方向け )” (Specify a driver place (for user familiar to computer)), then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 6 Select a driver.

Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨)” (Search for the appropriate driver for the device you are using (recommended)), and check “検索場所の指定 (Specify a search place)”. Then click “参照 (Browse)”; specify “<CD-ROM drive-name>; ¥ USB Driver ¥ Win98\_ME”; then click “次へ (Next)”. (In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)

The driver is common to Windows® 98.



## 7 Confirm the driver name (see page 438), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P900iV” appears in this example.



## 8 Click “完了 (Finish)”.



## 9 Install other P900iV transmission setup files (driver).

Install all the other P900iV transmission setup files (driver) (see page 438) according to steps 5 to 8.

Then confirm that the P900iV transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 437)

## Installing into Windows® 98

**1** Connect the FOMA phone and the FOMA USB Cable (option). (See page 428)

**2** Start Windows®, then insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer.

**3** Exit the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4. If this screen appears during installation of the P900iV transmission setup files, click “閉じる (Close)”.

**4** Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (option), which is already connected to the FOMA phone, to the personal computer.

**5** Start installation.

Click “次へ (Next)”.

**6** Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨) (Search for the appropriate driver for the device you are using (recommended))”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 7 Specify a folder you want to search for.

Select “検索場所の指定 (Specify a search place)”, then specify a folder name.

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive-name>:

¥ USB Driver¥ Win98\_ME”.

After specifying a folder you want to search for, click “次へ (Next)”.

(In <CD-ROM drive-name>, specify the CD-ROM drive name of your personal computer.)



## 8 Select “更新されたドライバ(推奨) (Updated driver (recommended))”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 9 Confirm the driver name (see page 438), then click “次へ (Next)”.

“FOMA P900iV” appears in this example.



## 10 Click “完了 (Finish)”.



## 11 Install other P900iV transmission setup files (driver).

Install all the other P900iV transmission setup files (driver) (see page 438) according to steps 5 to 10.

Then confirm that the P900iV transmission setup files are installed normally. (See page 437)

## Confirming Installed Driver

You can confirm that the P900iV transmission setup files (driver) are installed normally.

1

<For Windows® 98, Windows® Me, and Windows® 2000 Professional>

“スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”  
▶ Open “システム (System)”

<For Windows® XP>

“スタート (Start)” ▶ “コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶ “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)” ▶ Click the “システム (System)” icon

2

<For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me>

Click the “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)” tab

<For Windows® 2000 Professional and Windows® XP>

Click the “ハードウェア (Hardware)” tab ▶ Click “デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)”

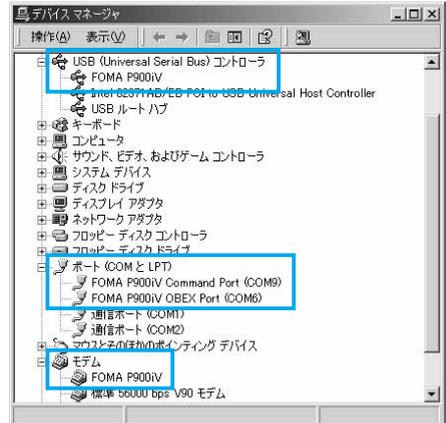
3

Click each device, then confirm the installed driver names.

Confirm that all driver names are displayed under “ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)”, “モデム (Modem)”, and “ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal serial bus controller)”.

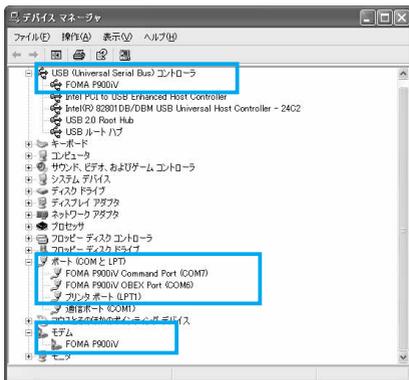


For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me



For Windows® 2000 Professional

The COM port number varies depending on the personal computer you use.



For Windows® XP

The COM port number varies depending on the personal computer you use.

The following drivers are installed by installation of the P900iV transmission setup file:

Device name	P900iV transmission setup file (driver) name
ポート (Port) (COM/LPT)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FOMA P900iV Command Port</li> <li>• FOMA P900iV OBEX Port</li> </ul>
モデム (Modem)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FOMA P900iV</li> </ul>
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Universal Serial Bus controller)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FOMA P900iV</li> <li>• FOMA P900iV OBEX</li> <li>• FOMA P900iV Modem</li> <li>• FOMA P900iV Command</li> </ul>

Windows® Me or Windows® 98 only

To set an access point with the FOMA PC setup software, see page 440.

To set an access point without the FOMA PC setup software, see page 468.

To perform the data transfer with the FOMA USB Cable (option), see page 494.

### Information

Be sure to install all the P900iV transmission setup files at one time. If you remove the FOMA USB Cable (option) from the personal computer during installation or click the “キャンセル (Cancel)” button to stop installation, the P900iV transmission setup files may not be installed normally. In this case, uninstall the P900iV transmission setup files (see page 439) once, then install them again.

If you install the P900iV transmission setup files of a different OS, the system will not run normally. In this case, uninstall the transmission setup files once, and then correctly install the files.

## Uninstalling Transmission Setup Files

When uninstalling the P900iV transmission setup files (driver) is necessary (such as when upgrading the version), follow the procedure below. The procedure shows an example of uninstalling the P900iV transmission setup files under Windows® XP.

**1** If the FOMA phone is connected to a personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option), disconnect the FOMA USB Cable.

**2** Start Windows®, then insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer.

**3** Click “閉じる (Close)” on the launcher screen.

This screen automatically appears when you insert the “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of the personal computer. It may not appear depending on settings of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 4.

**4** From “マイコンピュータ (My computer)”, right-click the CD-ROM icon, then select “開く (Open)”.

**5** Double-click the “USB Driver” folder in the CD-ROM.

**6** Double-click the “UnInst” folder.

**7** Double-click “p900ivun.exe”.

“p900ivun” may appear depending on setting of your personal computer.



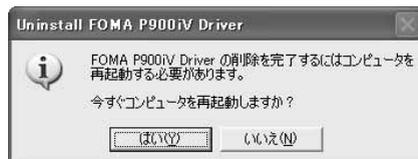
**8** Click “OK”.

To cancel the uninstallation, click “キャンセル (Cancel)”.



**9** Click “はい (Yes)” to restart Windows®. Uninstallation is then completed.

If you click “いいえ (No)”, restart Windows® manually.



## FOMA PC Setup Software

To connect the FOMA phone to a personal computer and perform the packet transmission or 64K data transmission, you need to define various settings related to the transmission. Using the FOMA PC setup software, you can easily carry out the settings below. If required, you can set the packet transmission and 64K data transmission without using the FOMA PC setup software. (See pages 468, 492)

The “FOMA PC setup software” is applicable to all FOMA phones that support data transmission.

### Easy setting

You can “create dial-up setting for FOMA data transmission” according to the guide, and also automatically carry out “W-TCP setup” and so on.

### W-TCP setup

Before using “FOMA packet transmission”, optimize transmission settings in your personal computer. To maximize the transmission performance, you need to optimize transmission settings using W-TCP setup.

### Access point name (APN) setting

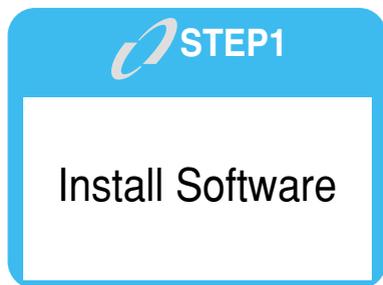
You can set an access point name (APN) required for packet transmission.

The FOMA packet transmission does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data transmission.

You need to register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone in advance, and specify the registration number (cid ) in the access point number field for connection.

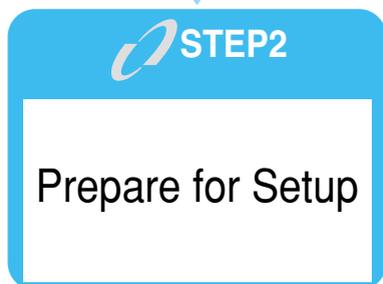
For “mopera”, the access point names (APN) is registered in cid1. To connect to the other providers or Intranet LAN system, newly register their access point names (APN).

“cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet transmission access point (APN) to the FOMA phone.



**Install the “FOMA PC setup software”.**

See page 442 for installation.  
 If the old-version “W-TCP setup software” and old-version “APN setup software” are already installed in your personal computer, you cannot install the “FOMA PC setup software”; so, uninstall them. The “FOMA PC setup software” is applicable to all FOMA phones that support data transmission.



**Prepare for setup.**

Before setup, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and normally recognized by the personal computer. See page 428 for connection of the FOMA USB Cable (option).  
 If the FOMA phone is not normally recognized by the personal computer, you cannot perform settings and transmission. See page 437 for confirming whether the FOMA phone is normally recognized by the personal computer. See pages 430 to 438 for how to install the P900iV transmission setup files.



**Carry out the appropriate setting for the transmission you use.**

See page 448 for setting the packet transmission from “Easy Setting”.  
 When using “mopera” as an access point .....page 448  
 When using a provider other than “mopera” as an access point .....page 451  
 See page 454 for setting the 64K data transmission from “Easy Setting”.  
 When using “mopera” as an access point .....page 454  
 When using a provider other than “mopera” as an access point .....page 456  
 See page 463 for optimizing the packet transmission performance using “W-TCP Setup”.  
 See page 466 for setting “access point name (APN)”.



**Connect to the Internet.**

## Installing FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

To connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer and perform packet transmission or 64K data transmission, you need to define settings for the transmission.

Using the FOMA PC setup software, you can easily set up dial-up, W-TCP, and access point name (APN).

The FirstPass software enables you to access the FirstPass compliant site on your personal computer browser by connecting the FOMA phone which is FirstPass compliant and downloaded the user certificate to your computer.

### Notes for Installing FOMA PC Setup Software

#### Confirm the operating environment

Use the FOMA PC setup software under the following environment:

Item	Description
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model When using FOMA USB Cable (option) : USB port (Conforms to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1)
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me: 64 Mbytes or more Windows® 2000 Professional: 64 Mbytes or more Windows® XP: 128 Mbytes or more
Hard disk space size	5 Mbytes or more

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

#### Confirm whether the FOMA phone is normally recognized by your personal computer

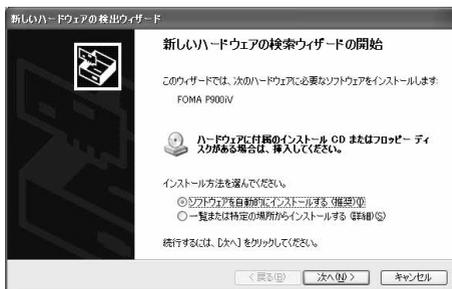
Before installing the “FOMA PC setup software”, you need to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) and normally register the P900iV transmission setup files (see page 438) on the device of the personal computer. (See page 437)

#### When you first connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer

The Wizard shown on the right starts.

To use the FOMA data transmission, you need to register the FOMA phone in your personal computer as a “transmission device”.

See pages 430 to 438 for installation of the P900iV transmission setup file.



### Administrator permission of personal computer

To install the "FOMA PC setup software" on Windows® 2000 Professional or Windows® XP, user has to get the administrator permission of the personal computer. If user without the administrator permission performs installation, an error will occur. For setting of the administrator permission of personal computer, contact the manufacturer of your personal computer, or Microsoft Corporation.

### Information

If the FOMA phone is recognized with a port number larger than COM20, you cannot retrieve or write the information of APN when setting APN.

## Notes for Installing FirstPass PC Software

### Confirm the operating environment

Use the FirstPass PC software under the following environment:

Item	Required environment
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP (Japanese version in each) (Not supported Windows® 98)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me Windows® 2000 Professional: 32 Mbytes or more Windows® XP: 128 Mbytes or more
Hard disk space size	10 Mbytes or more
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 or more Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 or more when using Windows® XP

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

### Before installing

See "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder of the CD-ROM before installing FirstPassPC Software. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual (PDF format)". If it is not installed in your personal computer, you can download the latest version from the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated (communication charge is applied separately). For details, see the Web page of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

- Microsoft, MS and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Explained here uses the displays for when install the FOMA PC setup software on Windows® 2000 Professional. The displayed screens are slightly different depending on the personal computer you use.

**1** Insert the attached “FOMA P900iV CD-ROM” in the CD-ROM drive of your personal computer.

**2** To install FOMA PC Setup Software, click “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software)”.

If the CD-ROM does not automatically play for any reason, select the CD-ROM from “マイコンピュータ (My Computer)”, then double-click “SETUP.EXE” in the “FOMA\_PCSET” folder.

To install FirstPass PC Software, click “FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC Software)”.

Then, follow the procedures described in “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) within the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder of the CD-ROM.

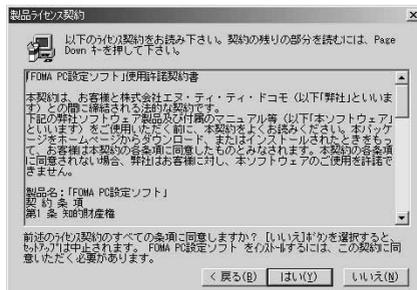
**3** Click “次へ (Next)”.

Before starting setup, confirm that no other programs are currently running. If any program is running, click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to save and exit the program, then restart installation.

See page 446 if the screen appears to indicate that the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” and old-version “APN設定ソフト (APN setup software)” or “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup Software)” are installed in the operating system.

**4** Confirm the displayed contract contents. If you agree with the contents, click “はい (Yes)”.

If you click “いいえ (No)”, installation stops.



## 5 Select components.

After setup, you can select whether “W-TCP setup” resides on the task tray. If “W-TCP setup” is on the task tray, you can easily set or release “W-TCP transmission”. If there is no problem specially, click “次へ (Next)” as “タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)” remains checked, then continue installation.

If you uncheck “タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside on the task tray)”, you can select “メニュー (Menu)” “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる (Reside the W-TCP setup on the task tray)” on the FOMA PC setup software to modify settings.



The “W-TCP setup” icon appears on the task tray at the right bottom (ordinarily) of the desk top.



## 6 Confirm the installation destination, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To change the installation destination, click “参照 (Browse)”; specify any installation destination; then click “次へ (Next)”.

(You can install the FOMA PC setup software in a different drive depending on the size of the hard disk space. In the ordinary procedure, go to the next as it is.)



## 7 Confirm the program folder name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

To change the program folder name, enter a new one, then click “次へ (Next)”.



## 8 Click “完了 (Finish)”.

After setup is completed, the “FOMA PC setup software” operation screen appears.



## Screens displayed at installation of FOMA PC setup software

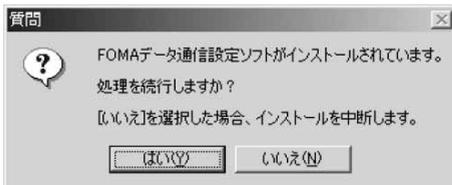
### <When the old-version “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” is installed>



This screen appears when the old-version W-TCP environment setup software is installed in the system.

From “アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete application)”, uninstall the old-version “W-TCP environment setup software”.

### <When the old-version “APN設定ソフト (APN setup software)” is installed>



This screen appears when the old-version FOMA data transmission setup software is installed in the system.

If you click “はい (Yes)”, the system automatically uninstalls the old-version “APN setup software” and installs the “FOMA PC setup software”.

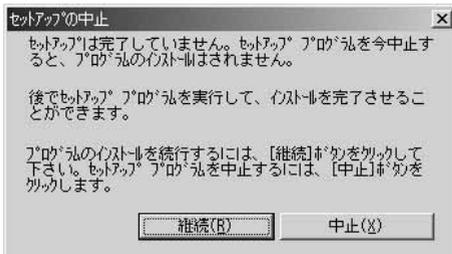
### <When “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” is installed>



This screen appears when “FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)” is installed in the system.

Click “はい (Yes)”.

### <When you click “キャンセル (Cancel)” during installation>



This screen appears when you click “キャンセル (Cancel)” or “いいえ (No)” during setup operation and instruct the system not to go the next. To continue installation, click “継続 (Continue)”. To intentionally cancel installation, click “中止 (Abort)”.

The “FOMA PC setup software” is applicable to all FOMA phones that support the data transmission.

# Setting Transmission

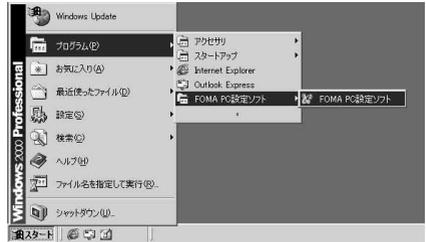
The procedure below explains how to carry out various settings related to the packet transmission and 64K data transmission.

There are two types of setting methods: “auto setting” for easy operation and “manual setting” for the user familiar to a personal computer.

Before setting, confirm that the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer.

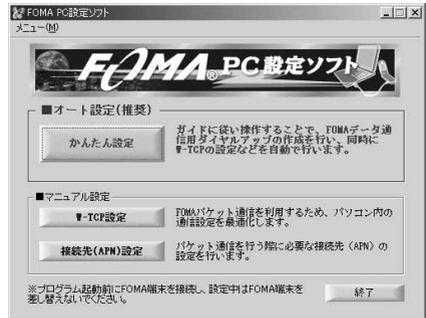
## 1 Start the program.

From “スタート (Start)”, start up the program.



When the “FOMA PC setup software” starts, the screen shown on the right appears.

On the “FOMA PC setup software”, you can easily create FOMA dial-up setting by answering (selecting and entering) questions according to the information of “connection method” and “connected provider” you selected.



- See page 448 for setting the packet transmission from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 454 for setting the 64K data transmission from “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.
- See page 463 for setting “W-TCP設定 (W-TCP Setup)”.
- See page 466 for setting “接続先 (APN)設定 (access point name (APN))”.

## Selecting Packet Transmission from かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)

### Using “mopera” as an access point

The packet transmission is charged depending on the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the transmission time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps,)

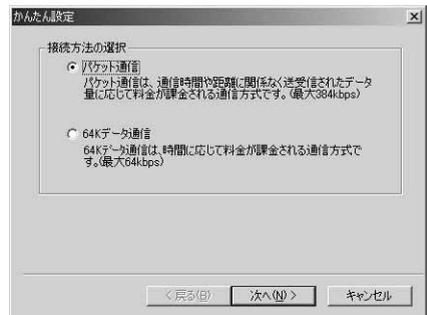
Using “mopera”, you can connect Internet only with a transmission fee, and you need not apply the contract.

**1** Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



**2** Select “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

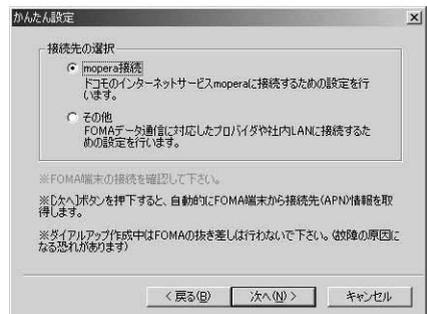
Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**3** Select “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

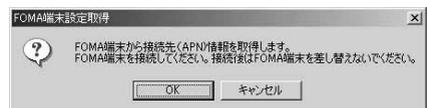
Confirm that “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

See page 451 to use a provider other than “mopera”.



**4** Click “OK”.

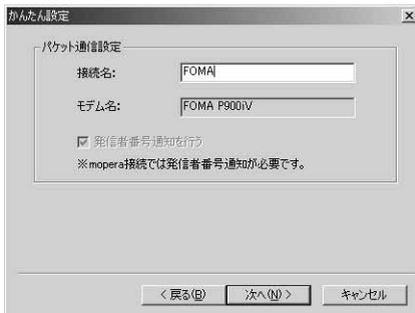
The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.



## 5 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols:  
¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.

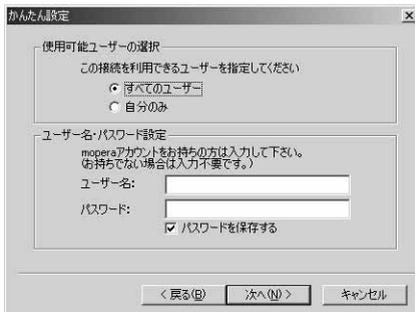


## 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

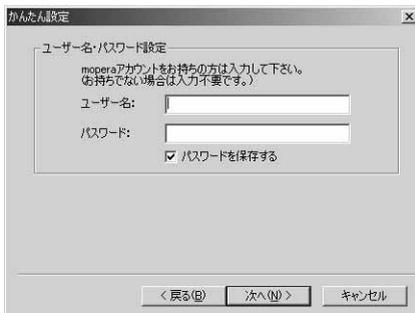
If the access point is “mopera”, you can omit “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”. Click “次へ (Next)” as they remain blank.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select the authorized user.

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you need not specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional

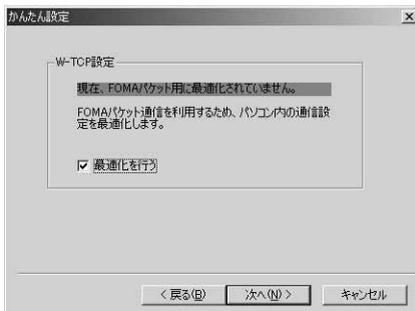


For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

## 7 Select “最適化を行う (Optimize)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “最適化を行う (Optimize)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

If optimized already, this screen does not appear.



## 8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut is created on the desktop.



## 9 Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 459)

To make the optimization valid, restart the personal computer.



### Using the packet transmission

The high-speed packet transmission service is charged depending on the amount of data you sent and received; so, you can carry out data transmission without taking care of the transmission time. This service enables the maximum download speed: 384 kbps and maximum upload speed: 64 kbps (except some models). These baud rates vary depending on the transmission environment and congestion state.

Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use a large amount of data, for example, you browse web sites having many images or download data.

The packet transmission is charged depending on the amount of data you sent and received, regardless of the transmission time and distance. (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, Maximum upload speed: 64 kbps)

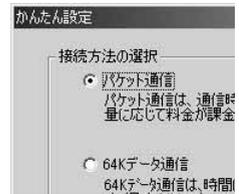
The procedure below explains how to use a provider other than “mopera”. To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply a contract with the provider.

**1** Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



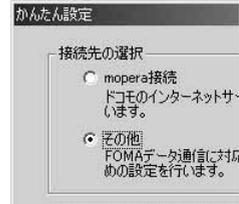
**2** Select “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “パケット通信 (Packet transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**3** Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**4** Click “OK”.

The system obtains the access point name (APN) setting from the FOMA phone connected to the personal computer. Wait for a while.



**5** Enter an access point name.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.

In the “接続先 (APN)” の選択 (Select an access point name (APN)) field, “mopera.ne.jp” is displayed as the default. Go to the “接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set an access point name (APN))” screen.



## 6 Click “接続先( APN )設定 (Set an access point name (APN))”.



In the “番号(cid) 1 (Number (cid) 1)” field, “mopera.ne.jp” is specified as the default. Click “追加 (Add)”, then enter the correct access point name (APN) for FOMA packet transmission on the “接続先( APN )の追加 (Add an access point name (APN))” screen. Click “OK”.

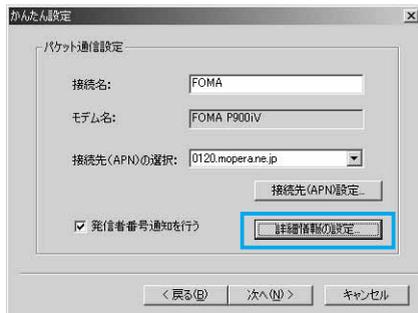
For a provider access point name (APN), contact the relevant provider.

The “パケット通信設定 (Packet transmission setting)” screen returns. Select an access point name you specified newly. If it is good, click “OK”.



## 7 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The screen for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction messages, then click “OK”.



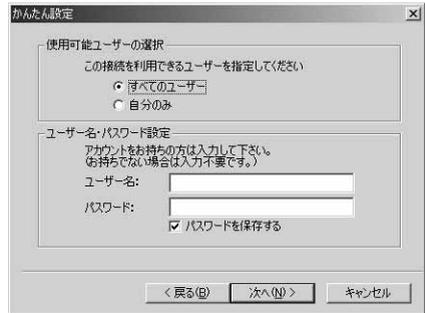
## 8 Click “次へ (Next)”.

## 9 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

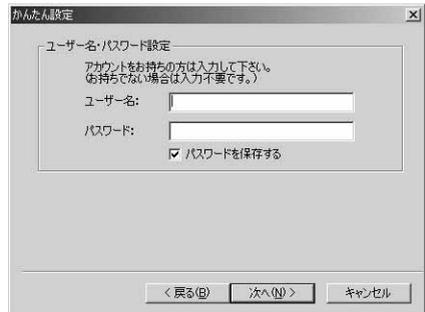
To specify the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select the authorized user.

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you need not specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional

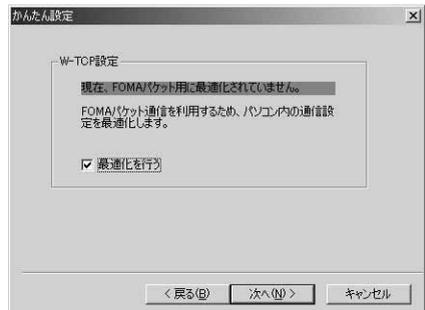


For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

## 10 Select “最適化を行う (Optimize)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “最適化を行う (Optimize)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

If optimized, this screen does not appear.

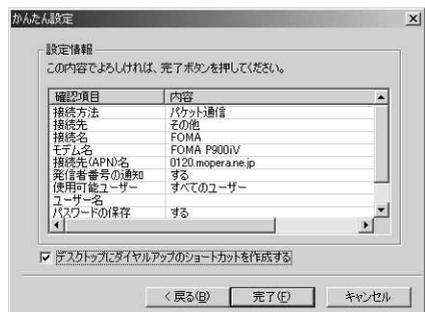


## 11 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut is created on the desktop.



## 12 Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 459)

To make the optimization valid, restart the personal computer.



### Using the packet transmission

The high-speed packet transmission service is charged depending on the amount of data you sent and received; so, you can carry out data transmission without taking care of the transmission time. This service enables the maximum download speed: 384 kbps and maximum upload speed: 64 kbps (except some models). These baud rates vary depending on the transmission environment and congestion state.

Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use a large amount of data, for example, you browse web sites having many images or download data.

## Selecting 64K Data Transmission from **かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)**

### Using “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data transmission is a transmission system you are charged fee in accordance with the duration of connection. (Maximum transmission speed: 64 kbps)

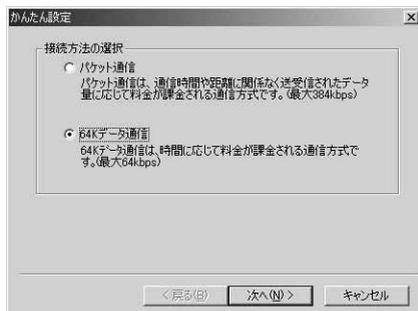
You need not apply for mopera. You can connect to the Internet by just paying transmission fee.

**1** Click “**かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)**”.



**2** Select “**64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)**”, then click “**次へ (Next)**”.

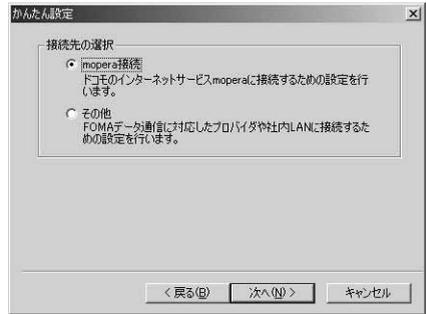
Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



### 3 Select “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “mopera接続 (Connect to mopera)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.

See page 456 for using a provider other than “mopera”.

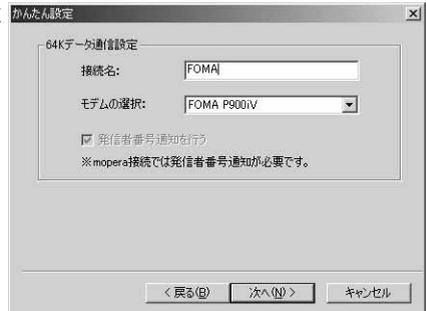


### 4 Enter an access point name, then click “次へ (Next)”.

You can specify any name for the currently created connection. Enter a plain name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field. Confirm that “FOMA P900iV” is displayed in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols:

¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.

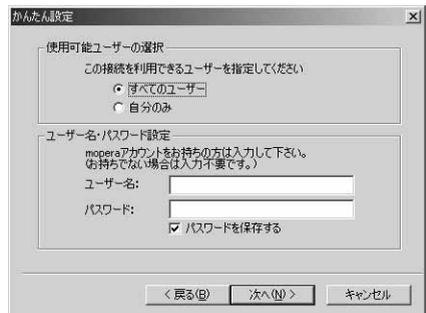


### 5 Click “次へ (Next)”.

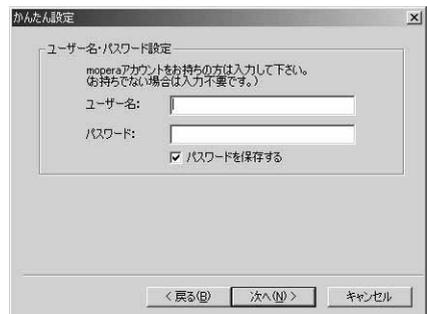
If the access point is “mopera”, you can omit “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”. Click “次へ (Next)” as they remain blank.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select the authorized user.

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you need not specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional



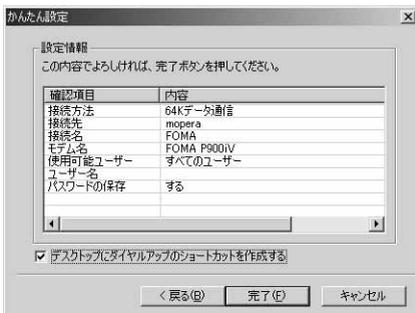
For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

## 6 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut is created on the desktop.



## 7 Setting has been completed.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 459)



### Using 64K data transmission

The 64K data transmission service is charged depending on the duration of connection. This service enables the comfortable Internet access at the stable baud rate, 64 kbps. Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

### Using a provider other than “mopera” as an access point

The 64K data transmission is a transmission system you are charged fee in accordance with the duration of connection. (Maximum transmission speed: 64 kbps)

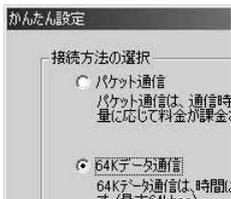
To use a provider other than “mopera”, you may need to separately apply a contract with the provider.

## 1 Click “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)”.



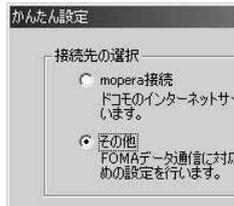
## 2 Select “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “64Kデータ通信 (64K data transmission)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



### 3 Select “その他 (Others)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Confirm that “その他 (Others)” is checked, then click “次へ (Next)”.



### 4 Enter dial-up information.

When connecting an ISDN synchronized provider other than “mopera”, register the following items at creation of dial-up information:

“接続名 (Access point name)” (arbitrary)

“モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” (FOMA P900iV)

“電話番号 (Phone number of provider)”

Correctly enter these items according to the provider information.

You cannot enter the following half-pitch symbols in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field: ¥, /, :, \*, ?, !, <, >, |, and ”.



### 5 Click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”.

The screen for specifying “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ネームサーバー (name server)” appears. When entering dial-up information for the provider you have subscribed or Intranet LAN system, specify addresses according to the entry instruction messages, then click “OK”.



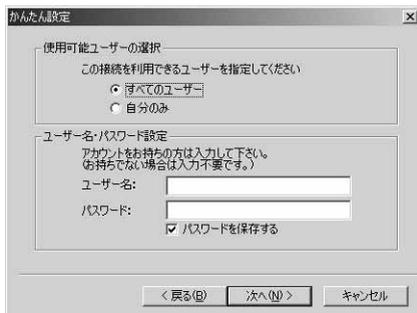
### 6 Click “次へ (Next)”.

## 7 Specify “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

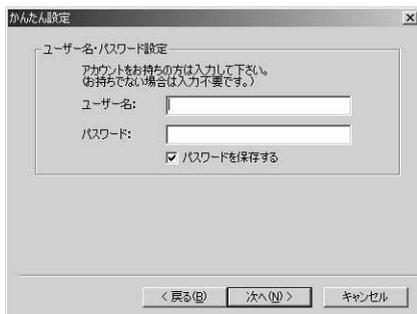
To specify the user name and password, correctly enter the information supplied from your service provider, taking care of uppercase and lowercase letters and so on.

For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional, select the authorized user.

For Windows® Me and Windows® 98, you need not specify the authorized user.



For Windows® XP and Windows® 2000 Professional



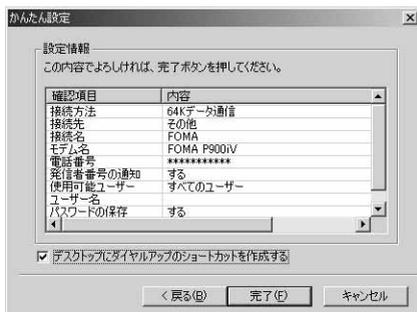
For Windows® Me and Windows® 98

## 8 Confirm the set information, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

The set contents are listed on the screen. Confirm that there is no problem on the set contents, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

To change the set contents, click “戻る (Back)”.

If “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create a dial-up shortcut on the desktop)” is checked, a dial-up shortcut is created on the desktop.



## 9 Setting has been finished.

Open the dial-up shortcut icon automatically created on the desktop; the connection starts. After confirming that the connection starts, you can activate the Internet browser or mail browser for transmission. (See page 459)



### Using 64K data transmission

The 64K data transmission service is charged depending on the duration of connection. This service enables the comfortable Internet access at the stable baud rate, 64 kbps. Please be careful that a transmission fee may become expensive if you use this service for a long time.

# Carrying Out Set Transmission

The procedure below explains how to carry out dial-up connection, giving Windows® 2000 Professional as an example. Follow the procedure shown on page 428 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

## 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

Open the FOMA connection shortcut icon created at transmission setting; the connection for transmission starts, and the connection properties appear.

Displays the icon by the following operation if there is not the shortcut icon.

Windows® XP: “スタート (Start)” “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”

Windows® 2000 Professional: “スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Program)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Dial up connection to Network)”

Windows® 98/Windows® Me: “スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Program)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial up Network)”



## 2 Enter “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)”, then click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

When selecting “mopera”, click “ダイヤル (Dial)” as “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” remain blank.

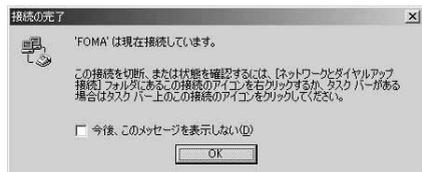
If you put a check mark for “パスワードを保存する (Save the password)”, you need not enter the password from the next time.



## 3 Confirm that the connection is established, then click “OK”.

If you have previously checked “今後、このメッセージを表示しない (Do not display this message hereinafter)”, the screen shown on the right does not appear.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail, and so on.



### Information

Use only the FOMA phone set with the dial-up setting for dial-up connection. To connect other FOMA phone, you may need to reinstall a transmission setting file.

The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wakeup.

The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during transmission.

During packet transmission, the following icons appear according to the transmission state:



- “→” (Transmitting, data sending)
- “←” (Transmitting, data receiving)
- “☎” (Transmitting, no data sending/receiving)
- “☎→” (Outgoing or disconnecting)
- “☎←” (Incoming or disconnecting)

**1** Double-click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



Dial-up icon

**2** Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.  
The connection by packet transmission is cut off.



**Information**

The transmission line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the transmission line, follow this procedure.

The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

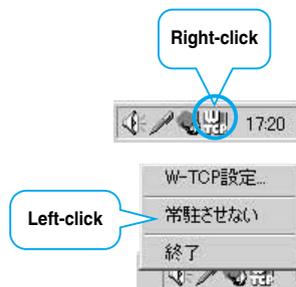
# Uninstalling FOMA PC Setup Software

## Before Uninstalling

Before uninstalling the “FOMA PC setup software”, reset the contents modified for the FOMA phone to the default.

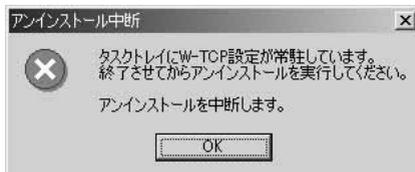
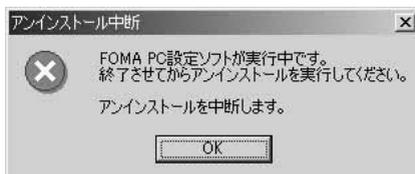
### 1 Make “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” not to reside on the task tray.

Right click “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” on the task tray at the right bottom of the screen, and select “常駐させない (Do not make reside)”.



### 2 Exit the currently running programs.

If you make an attempt to execute the uninstallation during running of the “FOMA PC setup software” or “W-TCP setup software”, the screen shown on the right appears. Stop the uninstallation processing, and exit those programs.



Screen displays described here are for when you uninstall the software using Windows® 2000 Professional. Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

## 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ (“設定 (Setting)” <sup>1</sup>)▶“コントロールパネル (Control panel)” ▶Open “アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add and delete applications)” <sup>2</sup>

- 1 Displayed for Windows® 98, Windows® Me, and Windows® 2000 Professional.
- 2 “プログラムの追加と削除 (Add and delete programs)” appears for Windows® XP.

## 2 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setup software)”, then click “変更/削除 (Change/Delete)”.

“追加と削除 (Add and Delete)” is displayed for Windows® 98 and Windows® Me.  
“変更と削除 (Change and Delete)” is displayed for Windows® XP.



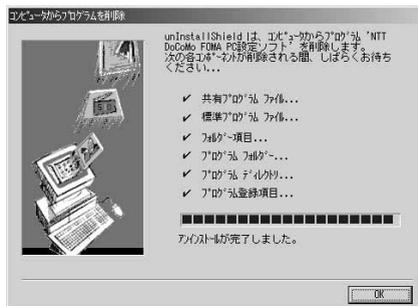
## 3 Confirm the name of the program you want to delete, then click “はい (Yes)”.

The uninstallation starts, and applications (programs) are deleted.



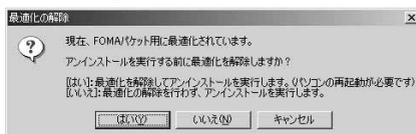
## 4 Click “OK”.

Uninstalling “FOMA PC setup software” is completed.

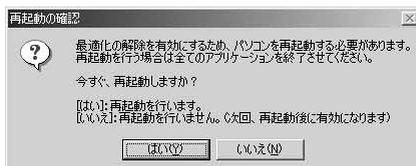


### Releasing “W-TCP最適化 (W-TCP optimization)”

If W-TCP is optimized, the screen shown on the right appears. To release the optimization, click “はい (Yes)”.



To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.



# W-TCP Setup

## Role of W-TCP

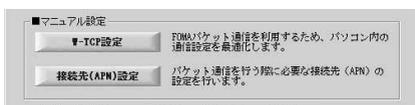
The “W-TCP設定ソフト (W-TCP setup software)” is a “TCP parameter setup” tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capability at packet transmission via the FOMA network. To maximize the transmission performance of the FOMA phone, you need to optimize the transmission setting this software. If you put a check mark for “最適化を行う (Optimize)” in “かんたん設定 (Easy Setting)” to create dial-up information, you need not carry out the optimization here.

## Optimization Setting and its Deletion

For Windows® 98/Windows® Me/Windows® 2000 Professional

**1** <Operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>

Start the program, then click “W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setting)”.



When operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”

<Operating from the task tray>

Click the “W-TCP icon” on the task tray to start the program.

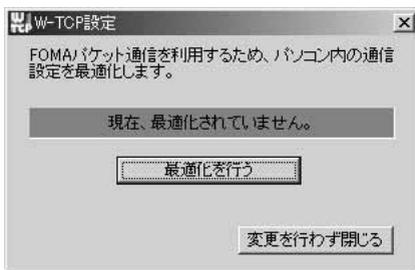


When operating from the task tray

**2** <If not optimized>

Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

The screen shown on the right appears to prompt you to optimize data.



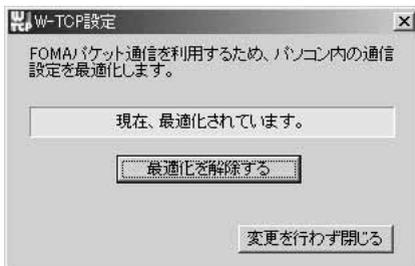
If not optimized

<If optimized>

Click “最適化を解除する (Release optimization)”.

The screen shown on the right appears to release the optimization.

When releasing the setting to carry out transmission via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.

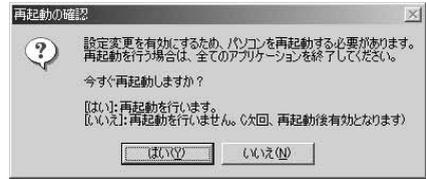


If optimized

**3** Click “OK”.

**4** Click “はい (Yes)”.

To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.

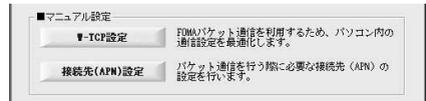


**For Windows® XP**

You can optimize the setting for each dial-up information for Windows® XP.

**1** <Operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”>

Start the program, then click “W-TCP設定 (W-TCP setup)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setup)”.



When operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”

<Operating from the task tray>

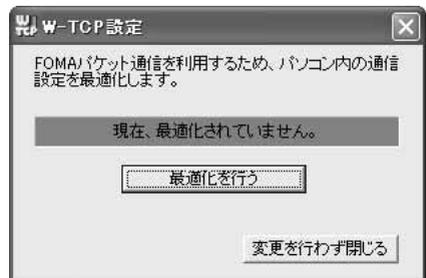
Click the “W-TCP icon” on the task tray to start the program.



When operating from the task tray

**2** <If the system setting is not optimized>  
Click “最適化を行う (Optimize)”.

The screen shown on the right appears to prompt you to optimize data.



If the system setting is not optimized

Select the dial-up information you want to optimize, then click “実行 (Execute)”;

the system setting and dial-up setting are optimized.

<If the system setting is optimized>  
If required, modify the contents.



<Releasing the optimization>

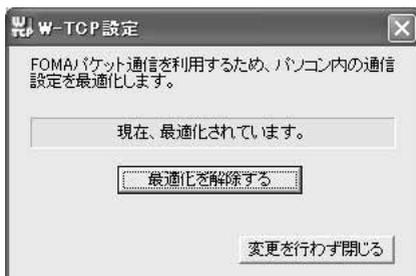
Click “システム設定 (System setup)”

▶ “最適化を解除する (Release optimization)”



The screen shown on the right appears to release the optimization.

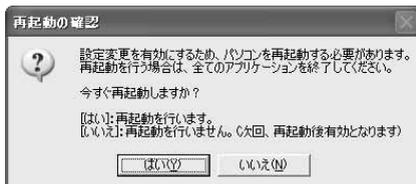
When releasing the setting to carry out transmission via a device other than the FOMA phone, release the optimization.



**3** Click “OK”.

**4** Click “はい (Yes)”.

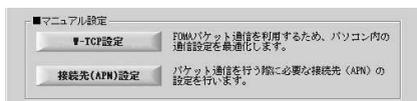
To make the settings valid, restart the personal computer.



# APN Setting

The procedure below explains how to set an access point name (APN) for packet transmission. The FOMA packet transmission does not use an ordinary phone number as an access point unlike the 64K data transmission. For each access point, register an access point name (APN) in the FOMA phone beforehand, then specify the registration number (cid) in the access point phone number field for connection. At purchase cid1 already contains “mopera.ne.jp” that is access point (APN) of mopera. To specify cid, use numbers 2 to 10. “cid” is the abbreviation of “Context Identifier”, the number for storing the packet transmission’s access point (APN) in the FOMA phone.

## 1 Start “プログラム (Programs)”, then click “接続先( APN )設定 (Access point name (APN) setting)” in “マニュアル設定 (Manual setting)”.



Click “接続先( APN )設定 (Access point name (APN) setting)”; the system automatically accesses the FOMA phone connected to your personal computer, and reads the registered “access point name (APN) setting”. You can also obtain setting information from “ファイル (File)” “FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)” on the menu in step 2.

## 2 Specify an access point name (APN).

If the FOMA phone is not connected to your personal computer, this screen does not appear.



### <Adding, editing, and deleting an access point name (APN)>

- To add an access point name (APN), click “追加 (Add)”.
- To edit (correct) a registered access point name (APN), click “編集 (Edit)”.
- To delete a registered access point name (APN), select the target access point name (APN), then click “削除 (Delete)”.

You cannot delete the access point name (APN) registered in “cid1”.

### <Saving data into a file>

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)” “上書き保存 (Overwrite and save)” or “名前を付けて保存 (Rename and save)”; you can back up the access point name (APN) information registered in the FOMA phone and save the currently edited access point name (APN) information.

### <Reading data from a file>

From the menu, select “ファイル (File)” “開く (Open)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) saved in the personal computer.

### <Reading access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone>

Click “FOMA端末から設定を取得 (Obtain the setting from the FOMA phone)”; you can obtain the access point name (APN) information from the FOMA phone.

### <Writing access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone>

Click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む (Write the setting to the FOMA phone)”; you can write the access point name (APN) information to the FOMA phone.

**<Dial-up information creation function>**

Select an access point name you add or edit on the access point name (APN) setting screen, then click “ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dial-up information)”; you can create dial-up information for packet transmission. The FOMA phone setting writing confirmation screen then appears, then click “はい (Yes)”. After writing ends, the “パケット通信ダイヤルアップ作成画面 (packet transmission dial-up information creation)” screen appears.

Enter any access point name, then click “アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Specify account and password)”. (Not required for “mopera”. ) Enter the user name and password (select the authorized user for Windows® 2000 Professional and Windows® XP), then click “OK”.

If your service provider asks you to specify IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定 (Set detailed information)”, and register the required information. Then click “OK”.

After entering information, click “OK”: Dial-up information is created.

See page 448 for using “mopera”.

See page 451 for using a provider other than “mopera”.

**Information**

The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect other FOMA phone, you need to register the access point name (APN) again.

To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same cid number and the same access point name (APN) to the FOMA phone.

# Setting Dial-up Network

## Setting Packet Transmission

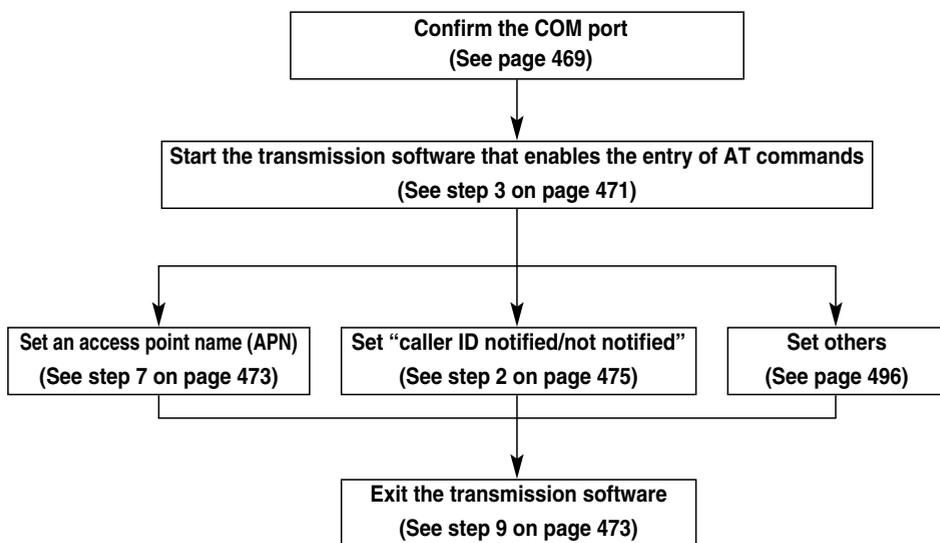
The procedure below explains how to set a connection for packet transmission without using the “FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setup software)”.

The packet transmission uses AT commands to carry out the settings from a personal computer. To specify settings, transmission software to enter AT command is required. This procedure is explained using “hyper terminal”, which is attached to Windows® as the standard software.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, you need not specify an access point name (APN) (see page 471).

You can set “caller ID notified/not notified” (see page 475) as required. (You need to set “caller ID notified” when using “mopera”.)

<Packet transmission setting flow using AT commands>



### AT commands

The AT commands are used to control a modem. The FOMA phone, which conforms to the AT commands, supports some extended commands and unique AT commands.

By entering AT commands, you can carry out detailed setting for packet transmission and FOMA phone, and confirm (display) the setting contents.

If the AT commands you enter do not appear on the screen, enter “ATE1 

Setting Dial-up Network

## Confirming COM Port Number

To manually carry out the transmission setting, you have to specify a COM port number, which is assigned to the “FOMA P900iV” modem embedded after you install the P900iV transmission setup file. The confirmation method varies depending on the operating system of your personal computer.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, you need to specify no access point name (APN); therefore, you need not confirm the modem.

For Windows® 98 and Windows® Me

**1** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.

**2** Open “モデム (Modem)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.

If no モデム (Modem) appears on the control panel, click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する (Display all options of the control panel)”.

**3** Confirm that “FOMA P900iV” is set up, then click the “検索結果 (Search result)” tab.



**4** Confirm the COM port assigned to the “FOMA P900iV” modem, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN). (See page 471)

The contents displayed on the property screen and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



For Windows® 2000 Professional

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “設定 (Setting)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番 (Area code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Select the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port in the “接続先 (Access point name)” field of the “FOMA P900iV”, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN). (See page 471)  
The contents displayed on the property screen and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



For Windows® XP

- 1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ Open “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”.
- 2 From “プリンタとその他のハードウェア (Printer and the other hardware)” in “コントロールパネル (Control panel)”, open “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)”.
- 3 If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番/エリアコード (Area code)”, then click “OK”.
- 4 Select the “モデム (Modem)” tab, confirm the COM port in the “接続先 (Access point name)” field of the “FOMA P900iV”, then click “OK”.

The COM port number you confirmed is used to specify an access point name (APN). (See page 471)  
The contents displayed on the property screen and COM port number vary depending on the personal computer you use.



## Specifying an Access Point Name (APN)

The procedure below explains how to specify an access point name (APN) for packet transmission.

You can register up to 10 access point names (APNs), which are managed with cid1 to cid10 (see page 474).

cid1 already contains “mopera”. To set cid, use cid2 to cid10.

When using “mopera”, you need to specify no access point name (APN).

This procedure shows an example where you specify “XXX.abc” as the access point name (APN) and use the FOMA USB Cable (option). For the actual access point name (APN), contact your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The setting here is access point number for dial-up network setting (see page 476).

### For Windows® XP

- 1** Connect the FOMA phone to the FOMA USB Cable (option).
- 2** Turn on the power of the FOMA phone, then connect the FOMA USB Cable, which is connected to the FOMA phone, to your personal computer.
- 3** Start the hyper terminal.  
Select “スタート (Start)” “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.  
For Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® Me, Windows® 98, select “スタート (Start)” “プログラム (Programs)” “アクセサリ (Accessories)” “通信 (Transmissions)” “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”.  
For Windows® 98, open “ハイパーターミナル (Hyper Terminal)”, then double-click “Hypertm.exe”.
- 4** Enter any name in the “名前 (Name)” field, then click “OK”.

Here, enter “Sample” as an example.



## 5 Select the connection method.

### <When you can select the COM port of the “FOMA P900iV”>

Select the COM port with which you install the “FOMA P900iV” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field, then click “OK”.

Then, go to step 6.

Here, select “COM6” as an example. See page 469 for the COM port number of the “FOMA P900iV” you should select actually in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field.



### <When you cannot select the COM port of the “FOMA P900iV”>

Click “キャンセル (Cancel)” to close the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” screen, then perform the following procedure:

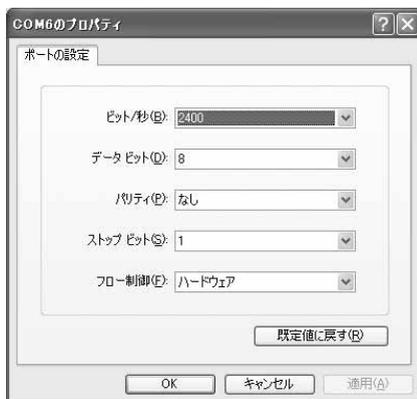
- From the “ファイル (File)” menu, select “プロパティ (Properties)”.
- Select “FOMA P900iV” in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field of the “接続の設定 (Set a connection)” tab on the “Sampleのプロパティ (Sample Properties)” screen.
- Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う (Use country/region code and area code)”.
- Click “OK”.



Then, go to step 7.

## 6 The properties of the COM port appear on the screen, then Click “OK”.

This screen appears when you select a COM port in step 5.



## 7 Specify an access point name (APN).

Enter an access point name (APN) in the following format:

AT+CGDCONT = cid, "PPP", "APN"

cid: Enter any number from 2 to 10.

If you already specify cid, be careful that its contents are overwritten by the access point name you entered here.

"APN": Enclose an access point name (APN) in double quotation marks ("").

"PPP": Enter "PPP" as it is.

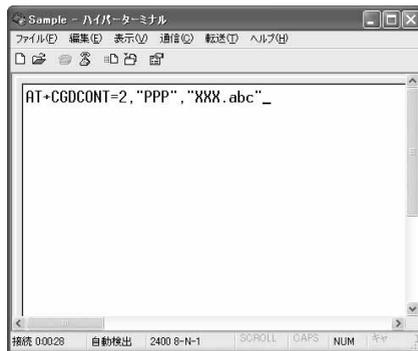
(Example: When specifying APN "XXX.abc" in cid2)

AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"

Enter this character string, then press . If "OK" appears, APN setting is completed.

To confirm the current APN setting, enter "AT+CGDCONT?"

The set APNs are listed on the screen. (See page 474)



## 8 Confirm that "OK" appears on the screen.



## 9 "ファイル (File)" menu ▶ Select "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit Hyper Terminal)" to exit the Hyper Terminal

If message "現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Currently connected. Do you want to disconnect this line?)" appears, select "はい (Yes)".

Message "セッションXXXを保存しますか? (Do you want to save session XXX?)" then appears. You need not especially save that session.

### Information

Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

The access point name (APN) is information to be registered in the FOMA phone, so if you connect other FOMA phone, you have to register the access point name (APN) again.

To continue using the access point name (APN) of the personal computer, register the same cid number and the same access point name (APN) to the FOMA phone.

If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter "ATE1

**cid (Registration number)**

The FOMA phone has registration numbers, cid1 to cid10. cid1 contains "mopera.ne.jp" as an access point name (APN). To connect a provider other than "mopera", you need to specify an access point name (APN) supplied from your provider or network administrator in any of cid2 to cid10.

<Default cid contents>

Registration No. (cid)	Access point name (APN)
1	mopera.ne.jp
2 to 10	Not defined

**"Phone number" for connecting to an access point name (APN) you register in cid**

" \* 99 \* \* \* <cid No.> # "

(Example) When connecting to the access point name (APN) you register in cid2, enter the following:

\* 99 \* \* \* 2 #

**Resetting and confirming the access point name (APN) settings**

You can use AT commands to reset and confirm the access point name (APN) settings.

- Resetting access point name (APN)

If you reset access point name (APN), cid1 only remains set to "mopera.ne.jp" (default), and cid2 to cid10 are reset to be not registered.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT= (When resetting all the cid contents)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (When resetting only a specific cid)

- Confirming access point name (APN)

The currently specified access point name appears on the screen.

(Entry method)

AT+CGDCONT?

**Specifying "caller ID notified/not notified" in dial-up network**

By dial-up network setting (see page 476), you can also add "186 (notified)" or "184 (not notified)" to each access point number.

When you specify "186 (notified)" or "184 (not notified)" using both the \* DGPIR command and dial-up network setting, the caller ID is set as follows:

Dial-up network setting (cid = 1)	"Caller ID notified / not notified" with * DGPIR command	Caller ID notified / not notified
* 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Notified
	Not notified	Not notified
	Notified	Notified
184 * 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Not notified
	Not notified	("184" specified in the dial-up network has a priority)
	Notified	
186 * 99 * * * 1 #	Not set	Notified
	Not notified	("186" specified in the dial-up network has a priority)
	Notified	

To connect to "mopera", you need to notify the partner of your caller ID.

## Setting Caller ID Notified/Not Notified

For packet transmission, you can specify whether you notify the other party of your caller ID (caller ID notified/not notified). The caller ID is your important information; so, take a great care to notify your caller ID.

You can use the AT command to specify “caller ID notified/not notified” before dial-up connection.

You can specify “caller ID notified/not notified” with the \*DGPIR command.

### 1 Start the transmission software such as “Hyper Terminal”.

See page 471 for details on how to operate “Hyper Terminal”.

### 2 Use the \*DGPIR command (see page 498) to specify “caller ID notified/not notified”.

To automatically add “184 (not notified)” for outgoing or incoming call, enter

```
AT *DGPIR=1
```

To automatically add “186 (notified)” for outgoing or incoming call, enter

```
AT *DGPIR=2
```

### 3 Confirm that “OK” appears on the screen.



#### Information

Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

When using DoCoMo Internet access service “mopera”, you need to set your caller ID to “notified”.

If the entered AT command is not displayed, enter “ATE1”.

**1** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)”

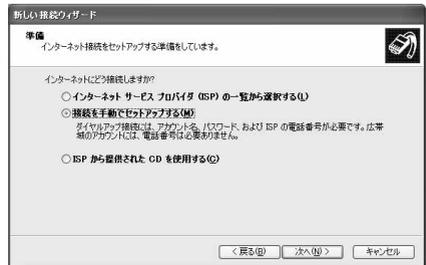
**2** When the “新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.



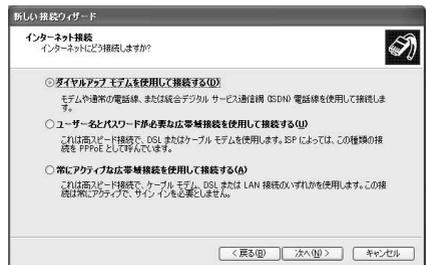
**3** Select “インターネットに接続する (Connect to the Internet)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**4** Select “接続を手動でセットアップする (Manually set up the connection)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**5** Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use a dial-up modem for connection)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



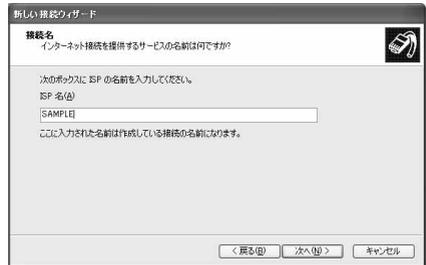
## 6 If the “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” screen appears, check “FOMA P900iV”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

The “デバイスの選択 (Select a device)” screen appears only when you have registered two or more modems.



## 7 Enter any name in the “ISP 名 (ISP name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Here, enter “SAMPLE” as an example.



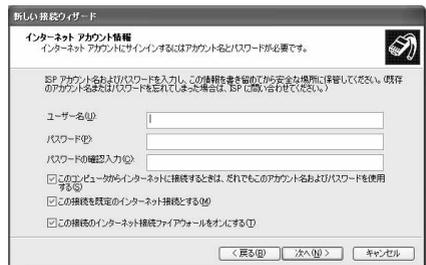
## 8 Enter “\*99\* \* \* 1#” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for an access point number other than “mopera”.



## 9 Enter the user name and password supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名 (User name)”, “パスワード (Password)” and “パスワードの確認入力 (Confirm the password)” fields. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

When connecting to “mopera”, you need not enter the user name and password.



# 10 “完了 (Finish)”.



# 11 Select “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Connect to network)”

# 12 While selecting the dial-up icon, “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” ▶ Select “この接続の設定を変更する (Modify this connection setting)”

Here, click the icon of the name you entered in step 7.



# 13 Click the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When two or more modems are connected to your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P900iV” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it. If two or more modems are checked, click the  button to position the priority level of “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P900iV” to the top or uncheck modems other than “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P900iV”.

When “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is checked, uncheck it.

The COM port allocated to “FOMA P900iV” varies depending on the personal computer you use.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



## 14 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out various settings.

In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”.

In the “この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use the following items for this connection)” field, select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)”.

You cannot modify the setting of the “QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS Packet Scheduler)” field; so use the default setting as it is.

Next, click “設定 (Setting)”



## 15 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



## 16 Return to the screen shown in step 14, then click “OK”.

### Information

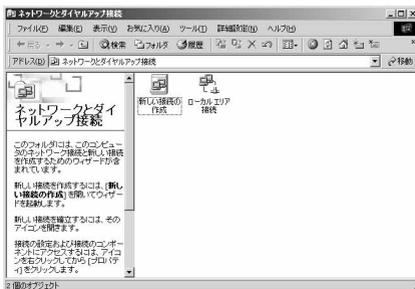
Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on contents of the connection settings.

Specifying “\*99\* \* \* 1 #” as a phone number, you can connect to “mopera”. See page 474 for access points other than “mopera”.

**1** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Dial-up connection with network)”

**2** Double-click “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections)”.



**3** If the “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears, enter “市外局番 (Area code)”, then click “OK”.

The “所在地情報 (Address information)” screen appears only when you first start “新しい接続の作成 (Create a new connection)” in step 2.

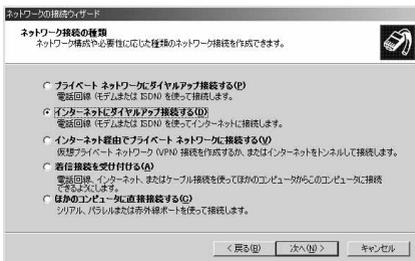
At the second time or after, the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” screen appears instead of this screen. Go to step 5.

**4** When “電話とモデムのオプション (Telephone and modem options)” appears, click “OK”.

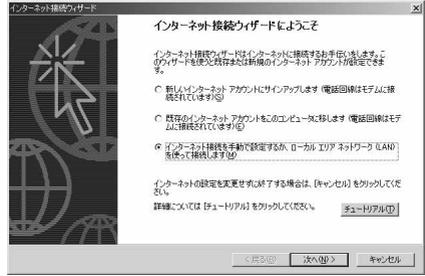
**5** When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.



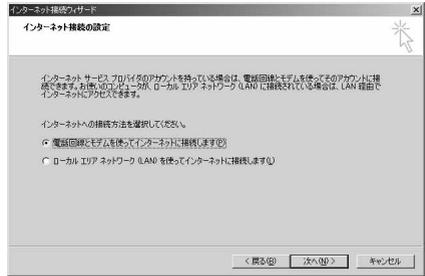
**6** Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続 (Dial-up connect to the Internet)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**7** Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します (Connect to Internet manually or via the local area network (LAN))”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**8** Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet via a phone line and modem)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.



**9** Confirm that “FOMA P900iV” is displayed in the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select a modem for connection to Internet)” field. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

If “FOMA P900iV” is not selected in that field, select it. The screen shown on the right may not appear depending on the operating environment of your personal computer. In this case, go to step 10.

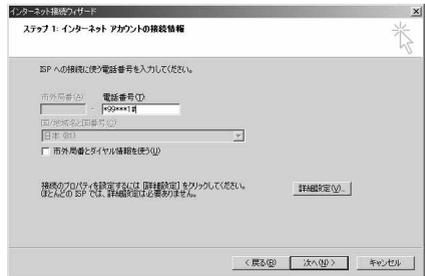


**10** Enter “\*99\* \* \* 1#” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field.

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)”.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for access points other than “mopera”.



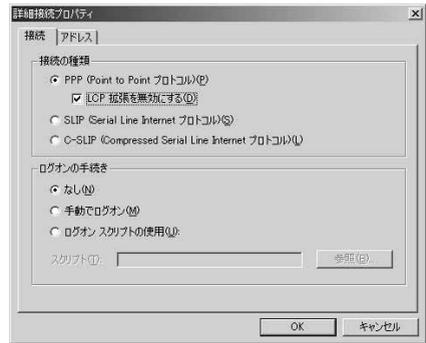
**11** Click “詳細設定 (Detailed setting)”.

## 12 Specify the items in the “接続 (Connection)” tab.

Enter “接続の種類 (Connection type)” and “ログオンの手続き (Logon procedure)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

Confirm the contents you entered, then click the “アドレス (Address)” tab.

**Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on setting of “接続 (Connection)” tab.**

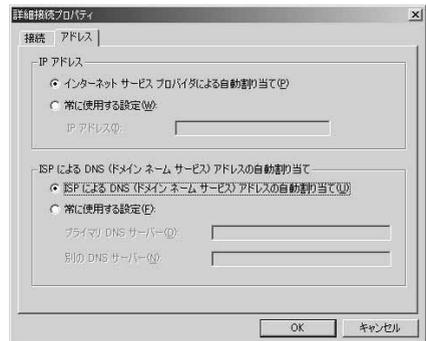


## 13 Specify IP address and DNS (domain name service) address.

Enter “IPアドレス (IP address)” and “ISPによるDNS(ドメイン名サービス)アドレスの自動割り当て (Automatically allocate a DNS (domain name service) address by ISP)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

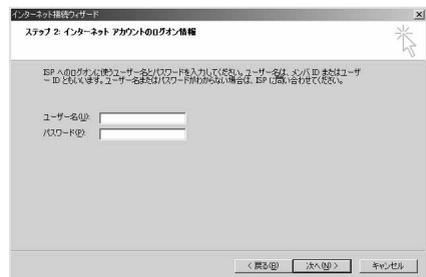
After you finish entering all the items, click “OK”. The screen in step 10 returns; then click “次へ (Next)”.

**Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the contents of the settings of IP address and DNS address.**



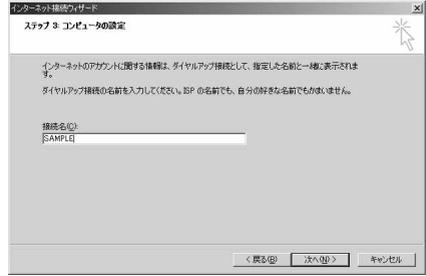
## 14 Enter the user name and password, which are supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator, in the “ユーザー名 (User name)” and “パスワード (Password)” fields. Then click “次へ (Next)”.

When connecting to “mopera”, you need not enter the user name and password. In this case, two screens “ユーザー名を空白のままにしておきますか? (Do you want to make the user name blank?)” and “パスワードを空白のままにしておきますか? (Do you want to make the password blank?)” appear. Click “はい (Yes)” on the each screen. Then go to step 15.



## 15 Enter any name in the “接続名 (Connection name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

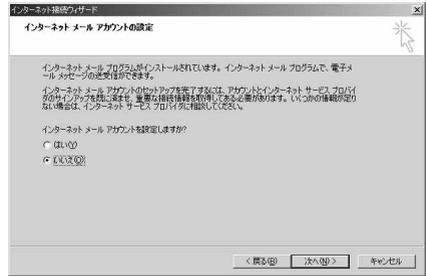
Here, "SAMPLE" is entered as an example.



## 16 Select “いいえ (No)”, then click “次へ (Next)”.

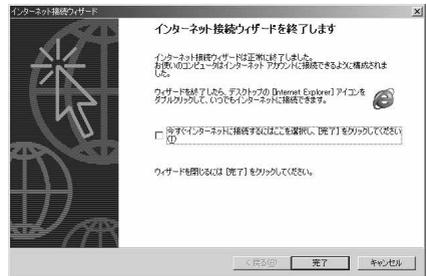
When setting the Internet mail, select “はい (Yes)”.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on setting.



## 17 After this, carry out the “TCP/IP” setting.

If the display on the right appears, uncheck “今すぐインターネットを接続するには、ここを選び「完了」をクリックしてください (To connect to Internet just now, select here, then click “Finish”)”. Then click “完了 (Finish)”.



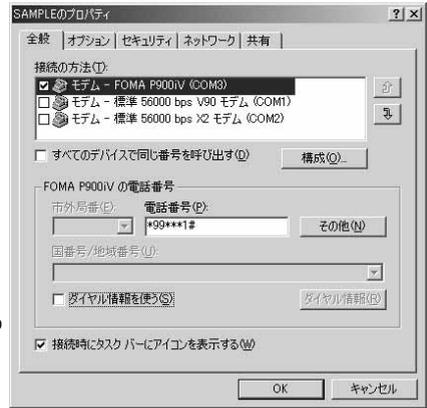
## 18 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connection)”.

## 19 While selecting the icon of the access point name you entered in step 15, “ファイル (File)” menu ▶ Select “プロパティ (Properties)”



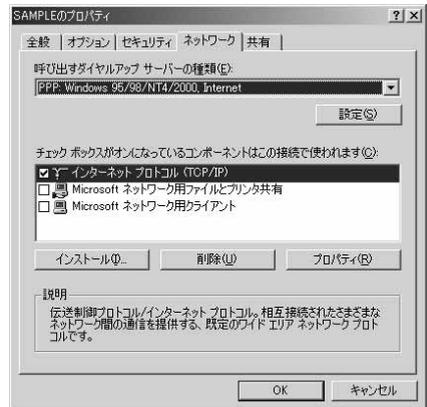
## 20 Select the “全般 (General)” tab to confirm the setting contents.

When two or more modems are connected your personal computer, confirm that “モデム (Modem) - FOMA P900iV” is checked in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field. If it is not checked, check it. Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)” is unchecked. If that item is checked, uncheck it. The COM port allocated to “FOMA P900iV” varies depending on the personal computer you use. This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for access points other than “mopera”.



## 21 Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out various settings.

In the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of calling dial-up server)” field, select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet”. For the component, check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))”. Then click “設定 (Setting)”.



## 22 Uncheck all the items, then click “OK”.



## 23 Return to the screen in step 21, then click “OK”.

### Information

Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use. Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on contents of the connection settings. For Specifying “\*99\*\*\*1#” as a phone number, you can connect to “mopera”. See page 474 for access points other than “mopera”.

The procedure below explains using the screen of Windows® Me as an example.

**1** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)”  
▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

**2** When the “ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dial-up network)” screen appears, click “次へ (Next)”.

This screen appears only when you first start the dial-up network. Click “次へ (Next)”, then go to step 4.

At the second time or after, the “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)” screen appears on step 3.



**3** Double-click “新しい接続 (New connection)” in “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”.



**4** Enter any access point name in the “接続名 (Access point name)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Here, “SAMPLE” is entered as an example.

If “FOMA P900iV” is not specified in the “モデムの選択 (Select a modem)” field, select “FOMA P900iV”.



**5** Enter “\*99\*\* \*1#” in the “電話番号 (Phone number)” field, then click “次へ (Next)”.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field.

In the “国/地域番号 (Country/area code)” field, select “日本(81) (Japan(81))”.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



## 6 Confirm any access point name, then click “完了 (Finish)”.

After this, carry out the “TCP/IP” setting.



## 7 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

## 8 While selecting the icon of the access point name you entered in step 4, then select “ファイル (File)” menu ▶ “プロパティ (Properties)”



## 9 Enter “電話番号 (Phone number)” in the “全般 (General)” tab, then confirm “接続方法 (Connection method)”.

Enter no phone number in the “市外局番 (Area code)” field.

Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use the area code and dial properties)”.

If “FOMA P900iV” is not specified in the “接続方法 (Connection method)” field, select it.

This example shows the phone number for connecting to “mopera”. Enter the phone number of the access point actually you use. See page 474 for access point numbers other than “mopera”.



# 10

<For Windows® 98>

## Click the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

Enter “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server)”, “詳細オプション (Detailed options)”, and “使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Available network protocol)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The display position of the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab varies depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents in the “サーバーの種類 (Server type)” tab.

Then go to step 12.



<For Windows® Me>

## Click the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab, then carry out respective settings.

Enter “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server)”, “詳細オプション (Detailed options)”, and “使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Available network protocol)” according to the information supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

The display position of the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab varies depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents in the “ネットワーク (Network)” tab.



## 11 Click the “セキュリティ (Security)” tab, then enter the “ユーザー名 (user name)” and “パスワード (password)” supplied from your Internet service provider or network administrator.

If you check “自動的に接続する (Automatically connect)” in advance, the screen for confirming the user name and password does not appear at connection; so, you can immediately connect to network.

If you have changed the password, re-enter the password on this screen.

When connecting to “mopera”, you need not enter the user name and password.



## 12 Click “OK”.

### Information

Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for the setting contents of this connection.

Specifying “\*99\* \* \* 1 #” as a phone number, you can connect to “mopera”. See page 474 for when using a provider other than “mopera”.

# Connecting Dial-up

The procedure below explains how to carry out dial-up connection using Windows® Me and Windows® XP as examples. Follow the procedure shown on page 428 to connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer.

To perform a connection via packet transmission, it is recommended that optimize the transmission performance by “W-TCP setup” (see page 463). Optimizing data, you can maximize the high-speed transmission capability in the FOMA network. To execute the optimization, install the “FOMA PC setup software” (see page 440) in the system.

For Windows® Me

**1** “スタート (Start)” ▶ “プログラム (Programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dial-up network)”

**2** Select the access point name you want to use.

While selecting the icon of the access point name (see page 485) you have specified in “Setting Dial-up Network”, “接続 (Connect)” menu “接続 (Connect)”.

Otherwise, double-click the icon of the access point name.



**3** Click “接続 (Connect)”.

Confirm the contents, then click “接続 (Connect)”.

If you check “自動的に接続する (Automatically connect)” in advance (see page 488), this screen does not appear. “自動的に接続する (Automatically connect)” is not displayed for Windows® 98.

The screen shown on the right displays an example of connecting to “mopera”. When connecting to “mopera”, you need not enter the user name and password.



**4** The screen appears to indicate the connecting state.

During this time, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.

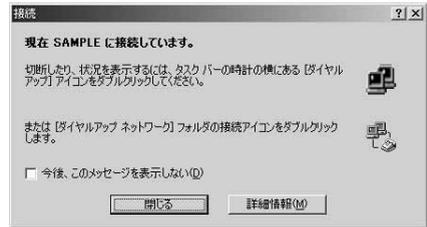


## 5 The connection has been completed.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.

If this screen does not appear, confirm the setting of the access point name.

(This screen may not appear depending on the setting contents.)



1 “スタート (Start)” ▶ “すべてのプログラム (All programs)” ▶ “アクセサリ (Accessories)” ▶ “通信 (Transmissions)” ▶ Open “ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)”.

2 Select the access point name you want to use.

Select the icon of the ISP name (see page 477) you specify in “Setting Dial-up Network”, then select “ネットワークタスク (Network task)” “この接続を開始する (Start this connection)”. Otherwise, double-click the icon of the access point name.



3 Click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

Confirm the contents, then click “ダイヤル (Dial)”.

The screen shown on the right displays an example of connecting to “mopera”. When connecting to “mopera”, you need not enter the user name and password.



4 The screen appears to indicate the connecting state.

During this time, the system performs logon processing to confirm the user name and password.

After the connection is completed, a pop-up message “(接続名)に接続しました (Connected to (access point name))” appears from the indicator of the task bar.



## 5 The connection has been completed.

After the connection is completed, the message shown on the right appears from the indicator of the task bar for a few seconds.

You can start the browser software to browse web pages, use e-mail and so on.

If this screen does not appear, confirm the setting of the access point name.



### Information

Use only the FOMA phone set with the dial-up setting for dial-up connection. To connect other FOMA phone, you may have to reinstall a transmission setting file.

The FOMA phone does not support Remote Wakeup.

The power consumption of the FOMA phone increases during transmission.

During packet transmission, the following icons appear according to the transmission state:



“→” (Transmitting, data sending)

“←” (Transmitting, data receiving)

“☎” (Transmitting, no data transfer)

“☎+” (Outgoing or disconnecting)

“☎+” (Incoming or disconnecting)

### Disconnecting

The procedure below explains how to carry out disconnection, giving Windows® Me as an example.

**1** Double-click the dial-up icon on the task tray.



Dial-up icon

**2** Click “切断 (Disconnect)”.

The connection by packet transmission is disconnected.



### Information

Screen displays may differ depending on the personal computer you use.

The transmission line may not be disconnected by only exiting the browser software. To surely disconnect the transmission line, follow this procedure.

The baud rate displayed on your personal computer may be different from the actual one.

## If You Fail to Connect to Network

If you fail to connect to network (if you fail a dial-up connection), confirm the following items:

If this error occurs	Take the action below
Your personal computer cannot recognize "FOMA P900iV"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Confirm whether your personal computer satisfies the operating environment (see page 420).</li><li>• Confirm whether the P900iV transmission setup file is installed in your personal computer.</li><li>• Confirm whether the FOMA phone is connected to your personal computer and powered on.</li><li>• Confirm whether the FOMA USB Cable (option) is securely connected to the FOMA phone and your personal computer.</li></ul>
You cannot connect to the access point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Confirm whether the ID (user name) and password are correct.</li><li>• When you need to notify the access point of your caller ID like "mopera", confirm whether "184" is prefixed to the phone number.</li><li>• Confirm that "フロー制御を使う (Use the flow control)" is checked in the modem properties.</li><li>• If you cannot connect to the access point even after confirming above, consult your Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.</li></ul>

## Setting 64K Data Transmission

The procedure below explains how to set the 64K data transmission without using the "FOMA PC setup software".

### Setting Dial-up Connection and TCP/IP

In the 64K data transmission, you can carry out the setting of dial-up connection and TCP/IP in the same way as of the packet transmission (see page 468).

Please take care of the following points:

In the 64K data transmission, you need not specify an access point name (APN). For the access point of the dial-up connection, enter the phone number of the access point specified by your Internet service provider or network administrator. (When connecting to "mopera", enter "\* \* 9601" in the phone number field.)

Specify "Specify caller ID notified/not notified" and "Other settings" as required. (When connecting to "mopera", you need to notify the access point of your caller ID.)

Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for details on the setting contents.

### How to Connect and Disconnect

You can connect and disconnect the 64K data transmission in the same way as of the packet transmission. Follow the procedures shown on pages 459, 489.



# Appendix

# FOMA P900iV Data Link Software

Using the data link software, you can connect the FOMA phone to your personal computer via the FOMA USB Cable (option) and transfer various data items in both the upload and download ways.

Importing the data link software in your personal computer, you can carry out data editing and backup. You can download the “FOMA P900iV data link software” from a web site. To install this software in your system, confirm the approval of use and the operating environment below.

## Operating Environment

Item	Description
PC main unit	PC/AT compatible model, which allows the use of the USB port (This software is not applicable to a personal computer that contains a multiprocessor.)
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional, Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition (Japanese version in each)
Memory requirements	Microsoft® Windows® 98, Windows® 98SE, Windows® Me, Windows® 2000 Professional : 64 Mbytes or more Windows® XP Professional/Home Edition : 128 Mbytes or more (Japanese version in each)
Hard disk space size	20 Mbytes or more
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (option)
Driver	P900iV transmission setup files

The memory requirements and hard disk space size may vary depending on system environment.

- Microsoft, MS and Windows are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Windows® Me is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operation system.
- Windows® 98 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

## Download URL

<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/p900iv/datalink/index.html>

For the “FOMA P900iV data link software”, contact

**Panasonic Software Support Desk**

Phone number:  0120-568-721

Business hour: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.

(Excluding Saturday, Sunday, holidays, and specified days)

## Information

On the FOMA P900iV, use “FOMA P900iV Data Link Software” downloaded from the URL described on the previous page. Note that you cannot use other Data Link Software.

### List of data items you can transfer using the FOMA P900iV data link software

Transfer conditions	One file	All files
Transferable data		
Phonebook		Up to 700 files <sup>1</sup>
Schedule		Up to 100 files
ToDo		Up to 100 files
Received mail		Up to 1000 files
Sent mail		Up to 400 files
Draft mail		Up to 10 files
Free memo		Up to 10 files
Original tone <sup>2</sup>		×
Still image file <sup>2, 3</sup>		×
Moving image file <sup>2, 4</sup>		×
Bookmark		Up to 100 files

<sup>1</sup> In the Phonebook, the total number of send/receive mail is 700, including phone numbers and addresses.

Moving or i-motion images stored in the Phonebook are not transferred.

<sup>2</sup> You cannot send or receive data prevented from being output outside the FOMA phone.

<sup>3</sup> When sending or receiving a JPEG file in excess of VGA size, the image may be shrunk to VGA size.

<sup>4</sup> You cannot transfer the ASF file.

## Liability

Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. shall not be liable for any defects or failures in the “FOMA P900iV data link software”. Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. shall not also guarantee the “FOMA P900iV data link software” and the related documents. User shall be liable for solving problems that may arise on the “FOMA P900iV data link software” and the related documents in the self-pay burden.

## Links with AV Equipment

You might play some moving images in ASF format on the FOMA phone, which is imported from other AV equipment to the miniSD memory card. You may play some moving images recorded with the FOMA phone on other AV equipment. For information about links with compatible AV equipment, see from the following URL:

<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/sd/index.html>

### Inquiry Center for Links with Compatible AV Equipment

#### Panasonic Mobile Communications Customer Service Center

Business hour: 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m.  
(Excluding Saturday, Sunday, holidays, and specified days)

From ordinary phones:  0120-15-8729  
From mobile phones or PHSs: 045-938-4023

# AT Command

AT commands are used to specify and modify the functions of the FOMA phone on the personal computer.

The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list:

[AT] : Commands which are available at the FOMA P900iV Command Port

[M] : Commands which are available in the FOMA P900iV (modem)

[&F] : Commands which are initialized with the AT&F command

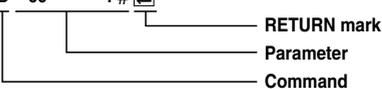
[&W] : Commands which are saved with the AT&W command; used to recall a set value with the ATZ command.

## Entry Format of AT Command

To enter an AT command, use the terminal mode display of the transmission software. Be sure to enter half-size alphanumeric characters.

Entry example

ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1 # 



RETURN mark  
Parameter  
Command

You have to enter an AT command on one line, including parameters (composed of digits and symbols) following the AT command. On the terminal mode screen of the transmission software, the range from the first character to the character just before RETURN  is assumed to be “one line.” You can enter up to 160 characters (including “AT”) on “one line.”

### Information

The terminal mode enables the system to operate a personal computer as one transmission terminal. Using this mode, you can send characters you have entered from the keyboard to a line connected to the transmission port.

## Switching between Online Data Mode and Online Command Mode

There are the following two methods of switching the FOMA phone between the online data mode and online command mode:

- Enter the “+++” command or enter the code specified in the “S2” register.
- Set the ER signal of the RS-232C off when “AT&D1” is set.

To switch the online command mode to the online data mode, enter “ATO 

The RS-232C signal line, which is emulated via the USB interface, is controlled by a transmission application.

### Saving the setting contents

Please be careful that the setting contents with AT commands are initialized when the FOMA phone is powered off and on, expect for the access point name (APN) setting with the AT+CGDCONT command, QoS setting with the AT+CGEQMIN or AT+CGEQREQ command, incoming call accepted/rejected setting with the AT \* DGAPL, AT \* DGARL, or AT \* DGANSM command, phone number notified/not notified setting (for packet transmission) with the AT \* DGPIR command. For commands with [&W], you can enter “AT&W 

AT Command

# AT Command List

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT%V [M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone	-	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&Cn [AT][M] [&F][&W]	Selects operating conditions of the circuit CD signal to the DTE	n=0: CD is always ON. n=1: CD varies depending on the carrier of the other party's modem. (Initial value)	AT&C1 OK
AT&Dn [AT][M] [&F][&W]	Selects an operation to be performed when the circuit ER signal received from the DTE transits between ON and OFF	n=0: Ignores the ER status. (Always assumed to be ON.) n=1: Sets the online command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF. n=2: Sets the offline command state when the ER changes from ON to OFF. (Initial value)	AT&D1 OK
AT&Fn [AT][M]	Returns all registers to the set values defined at shipment. Performs line disconnection processing if you enter this command during transmission.	n=0: only specifiable. (can be omitted)	-
AT&Sn [M] [&F][&W]	Specifies the control of the data set ready signal to be output to the DTE	n=0: DR is always ON. (Initial value) n=1: DR is set on at connection of the line (at establishment of a transmission call)	AT&S0 OK
AT&Wn [AT][M]	Stores the current set values	n=0 only specifiable. (can be omitted)	-
AT * DANTE [M]	Shows the number of antenna bars. (0 to 3)	-	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK
AT * DGANSM=n [M]	Sets rejected/accepted mode for the packet incoming call. The setting with this command is valid for incoming calls in packet transmission after you enter the setting command.	n=0: Invalidates the incoming call rejected/accepted setting. (Initial value) n=1: Validates the incoming call rejected setting (AT * DGARL). n=2: Validates the incoming call accepted setting (AT * DGAPL). AT * DGANSM?: Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL=n [.cid] [M]	Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be accepted. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in AT+CGDCONT.	n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call accepted list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call accepted list.  Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted.  AT * DGAPL?: Displays the incoming call accepted list.	AT * DGAPL=0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL=1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL=n [.cid] [M]	Sets the APN of which packet incoming call is to be rejected. To specify the APN, use the <cid> parameter defined in +CGDCONT.	n=0: Adds the APN defined by <cid> to the incoming call rejected list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from the incoming call rejected list.  Applied to all the cid contents if <cid> is omitted. AT * DGARL?: Displays the incoming call rejected list.	AT * DGARL=0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL=1 OK AT * DGARL? OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>  [M]	This command is valid at outgoing and incoming calls. In the dial-up network setting, you can add "186" (notified) or "184" (not notified) to the phone number of the access point. (See page 475)	<i>n</i> =0: Uses the APN as it is. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Adds "184" to the APN. (Always not notified.) <i>n</i> =2: Adds "186" to the APN. (Always notified.) AT * DGPIR?: Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR=0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW  [M]	Displays the output power index for receiving. (0: Minimum value to 75: Maximum value)	-	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK
+++  [M]	Changes to the online command state without disconnecting the line when the escape sequence is executed in the online mode.	-	-
AT+CEER  [M]	Displays the reason why the preceding call is disconnected.	<report> Disconnection reason list (See page 504)	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT  [M]	Sets the APN at packet transmission.	See page 502	See page 502
AT+CGEQMIN  [M]	Registers the reference value to decide whether the system permits QoS (Quality of Service) reported from the network at establishment of PPP packet transmission.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] See page 502 AT+CGEQMIN=? Lists the settable values. AT+CGEQMIN? Displays the current setting.	See page 502
AT+CGEQREQ  [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) to be requested to the network at issuance of the PPP packet transmission.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] See page 503 AT+CGEQREQ=? Lists the settable values. AT+CGEQREQ? Displays the current setting.	See page 503
AT+CGMR  [AT][M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone.	-	AT+CGMR 1234512345123456 OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i>  [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the network registration state is to be notified. Displays whether you are inside or outside the service area depending on the returned notification.	<i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area. (Inquiry) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside packet area 1: Inside packet area 4: Unknown 5: Inside packet area (during roaming)	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to "Notified") AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1,0 OK (Means the outside of the service area) (At moving from the outside to the inside of the service area) +CGREG: 1
AT+CGSN  [AT][M]	Displays the serial number of the FOMA phone.	-	AT+CGSN 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i>  [M] [&F]&W]	Enables to display the caller's ID on the personal computer during 64K data communications or video-phone calls.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not notify. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notifies. result: +CLIP( <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ) <i>m</i> =0: NW setting to not notify caller ID at calling <i>m</i> =1: NW setting to notify caller ID at calling <i>m</i> =2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP? +CLIP(0, 1) OK
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>  [M]	Sets whether to notify the caller ID to do 64K data transmission or to make video-phone calls.	<i>n</i> =0: Observes your contract with the Service. <i>n</i> =1: Does not notify. <i>n</i> =2: Notifies. (Initial value)	AT+CLIR=0 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT+CMEER= <i>n</i>  [M] [&F][&W]	Sets whether the FOMA phone has an error report.	<i>n</i> =0: Uses the ordinary ERROR result. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates a numeric value. <i>n</i> =2: +CME ERROR: Uses the <err> result code. <err> indicates an alphanumeric value. AT+CMEER?: Displays the current setting.	AT+CMEER=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEER=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR: 10 AT+CMEER=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR: SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM  [M]	Displays the own phone number of the FOMA phone.	number: Number type: 129 or 145 129: Does not include the international access code (+). 145: Includes the international access code (+).	AT+CNUM +CNUM: "+8190123 45678",145 OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i>  [M] [&F][&W]	Displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code appears at connection of the line.	<i>n</i> =0: Not displayed. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Displayed. <serv>: Displays only "GPRS" that means packet transmission. (Displays "SYNC", "AV32K", or "AV64K", depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: Displays the current setting.	AT+CR=1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1# +CR ; GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC= <i>n</i>  [M] [&F][&W]	Sets whether the extended result code is to be used at incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not use +CRING. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Uses +CRING.<type>. AT+CRC?: Displays the current setting. The +CRING format is as follows: +CRING : <type> During PPP packet dialing and ringing +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,,<APN>	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK
AT+CREG= <i>n</i>  [AT] [&F][&W]	Sets whether the result is to be displayed about the inside and outside of the service area. (May not be set depending on OS.)	<i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Notified at switching between the inside and outside of the service area. (Inquiry) AT+CREG? +CREG: < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area (during roaming)	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to "Notified") AT+CREG? +CREG : 1,0 OK (Means the outside of the service area) (At moving from the outside to the inside) +CREG : 1
AT+GMI  [M]	Displays the manufacturer name (Panasonic).	—	AT+GMI Panasonic OK
AT+GMM  [M]	Displays the product name (FOMA P900iV) of the FOMA phone.	—	AT+GMM FOMA P900iV OK
AT+GMR  [M]	Displays the version of the FOMA phone.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i>  [AT][M] [&F][&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control Initial value: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> = 2,2 AT+IFC?: Inquires the set value.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Selects the wireless transmission network of the FOMA phone.	<i>n</i> =22: W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) only specifiable. (Initial value)	AT+WS46=22 OK
ATA [M]	Processes an incoming call in the mode in which the FOMA phone received the incoming call.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
A/ [AT][M]	Re-executes the last executed command. No carriage return required.	—	A/ OK
ATD [M]	Executes the automatic outgoing processing for the FOMA phone according to the contents specified in the parameter and dial parameter.	<cid>: 1 to 10 Displays the APN defined by +CGDCONT. When calling cid1, you can omit the phone number like "ATD *99 * * *#."	ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether echo-back is issued to the DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0: Issues no echo-back. <i>n</i> =1: Issues echo-back. (Initial value)	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i> [M]	Places the FOMA phone into the on-hook state.	<i>n</i> =0: Disconnects the line. (Can be omitted)	(During packet transmission) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI <i>n</i> [AT][M]	Displays the ID code.	<i>n</i> =0: Displays "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> =1: Displays the product name. (same as +GMM) <i>n</i> =2: Displays the version of the PPP packet function. (same as +GMR)	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMA P900iV OK
ATO <i>n</i> [M]	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during transmission.	<i>n</i> =0: Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode. (Can be omitted.)	ATO CONNECT
ATQ <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]&W]	Sets whether the result code is to be displayed for the DTE.	<i>n</i> =0: Displays the result code. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Does not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 ("OK" is not returned at this time.)
ATS0= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]&W]	Sets the number of rings required until the FOMA phone automatically receives an incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not automatically receive an incoming call. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1 to 255: Automatically receives an incoming call with the specified number of rings. (When <i>n</i> 10, does not automatically receive for a packet (PPP) incoming call, then the line is disconnected 30 seconds after.) ATS0?: Inquires the set value.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2= <i>n</i> [M] [&F]	Sets the escape character.	<i>n</i> =43: Initial value <i>n</i> =127: Makes escape processing invalid. ATS2?: Inquires the set value.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3= <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	<i>n</i> =13: Initial value ( <i>n</i> =13 only specifiable.) ATS3?: Inquires the set value.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4= <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F]	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	<i>n</i> =10: Initial value ( <i>n</i> =10 only specifiable.) ATS4?: Inquires the set value.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/Explanation	Command execution example
ATS5= <i>n</i>  [AT][M] [&F]	Sets a back space (BS) character.	<i>n</i> =8: Initial value ( <i>n</i> =8 only specifiable.)  ATS5?: Inquires the set value.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS7= <i>n</i>  [M] [&F][&W]	Sets standby duration until connection is complete. Disconnects the line if an outgoing call is not connected within the specified time.	<i>n</i> =1 to 120 (Initial value = 60) (Unit: Second) 121 to 255 are assumed to be 120 if specified.  ATS7?: Inquires the set value.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS30= <i>n</i>  [M][&F]	Sets the inactive timer. When no user data is sent or received, the connection is cut in more than set time. This command is for only 64K data transmission. When 0 is set, the inactive timer turns to OFF.	<i>n</i> =0 to 255 (Initial value = 0) (Unit: Minute)	ATS30=0 OK
ATS103= <i>n</i>  [M][&F]	Selects characters to pause for incoming subaddress.	<i>n</i> =0: * (Asterisk) <i>n</i> =1: / (Slash) (Initial value) <i>n</i> =2: ¥ or back slash	ATS103=0 OK
ATS104= <i>n</i>  [M][&F]	Selects characters to pause for outgoing subaddress.	<i>n</i> =0: # (Sharp) <i>n</i> =1: % (Percentage) (Initial value) <i>n</i> =2: & (And)	ATS104=0 OK
ATV <i>n</i> [AT][M] [&F][&W]	Sets all the result codes in the numeric or alphabetical notation.	<i>n</i> =0: Returns the result code with a numeric value. <i>n</i> =1: Returns the result code in alphabetical characters. (Initial value)	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i>      [AT][M] [&F][&W]	Sets whether the speed is to be indicated in CONNECT at connection. Detects busy tone and dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed not displayed. <i>n</i> =1: Dial tone not detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =2: Dial tone detected; busy tone not detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =3: Dial tone not detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed. <i>n</i> =4: Dial tone detected; busy tone detected; speed displayed. (Initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ    [AT][M]	Resets the setting to the contents of the nonvolatile memory. If this command is entered during transmission, the line is disconnected.	-	(In online) ATZ NO CARRIER (In offline) ATZ OK
AT¥S      [M]	Displays the contents of the each command and S register currently set.	-	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=000 S104=000 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [M] [&F][&W]	Selects the response code specifications at connection.	<i>n</i> =0: Does not use the extended result code. (Initial value) <i>n</i> =1: Uses the extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK

- The following commands do not result in an error even if specified; however, they do not function as commands.
- AT (AT only entered.)
  - ATM
  - ATP (Pulse setting)
  - ATS8 (Setting the pause time by comma dialing)
  - ATL
  - ATT (Tone setting)
  - ATS6 (Setting the pause time taken for dialing)
  - ATS10 (Setting the automatic disconnection delay time)

## Supplementary Explanation of AT Commands

Command name: +CGDCONT [M]

- Outline

This command sets an access point name (APN) at packet transmission.

- Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]

- Explanation of parameters

You set the connecting end (APN) for packet transmission. See the example below for command instructions.

<cid> : 1 to 10

<APN> : Arbitrary

<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register cid1 to cid10 in the FOMA phone. <cid>=1 contains "mopera.ne.jp" as the default. If necessary, you can rewrite the contents of cid1.

<APN> indicates any character string for each access point name.

- Operation at omission of parameters

+CGDCONT= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Lists the specifiable values.

+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

- Command execution example

```
AT+CGDCONT=3,"PPP","abc"
```

```
OK
```

The command used to register an APN name, abc (at cid=3)

<cid>=1 contains the initial value; if required, you can rewrite it. This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [&W], and also is not reset by [&F] and [Z].

Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter] [M]

- Outline

This command registers the reference value to decide whether you accept QoS (Quality of Service) reported from the network at establishment of the PPP packet transmission.

You can specify four setting patterns described in the command execution example below.

- Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- Explanation of parameters

<cid> : 1 to 10

<Maximum bitrate UL> : None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL> : None (initial value) or 384

<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register cid1 to cid10 in the FOMA phone.

<Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> are used to specify the minimum baud rates (kbps) for upload and download between the FOMA phone and base station. None (initial value) accepts all baud rates; however, 64 and 384 do not permit a baud rate other than 64 kbps and 384 kbps. If you specify 64 and 384, you may not establish packet transmission.

- Operation at omission of parameters

+CGEQMIN= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.

+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

• Command execution example

You can specify only the following four setting patterns:

(The setting described in item (1) is defined in each cid as the initial value.)

- (1) Command that allows all the baud rates for both upload and download (cid=2)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=2
```

```
OK
```

- (2) Command that allows 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384
```

```
OK
```

- (3) Command that allows 64 kbps for upload and all baud rates for download (cid=4)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64
```

```
OK
```

- (4) Command that allows all baud rates for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=5)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384
```

```
OK
```

This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [W], and also is not reset by [F] and [Z]

Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter] [M]

• Outline

This command sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at issuance of the PPP packet transmission.

You can specify only one setting pattern described in the command execution example below, which is set as the initial value.

• Format

```
+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
```

• Explanation of parameter

<cid> : 1 to 10

<cid> is a number used to manage an access point name (APN) for packet transmission, which is registered in the FOMA phone. You can register cid1 to cid10 in the FOMA phone.

• Operation at omission of parameter

+CGEQREQ= : Sets all the <cid> contents to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=<cid>: Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

• Command execution example

You can specify only the following one pattern.

(This setting is defined in each cid as the initial value.)

- (1) Command that requests a connection at 64 kbps for upload and 384 kbps for download (cid=3)

```
AT+CGEQREQ=3
```

```
OK
```

This command, which is a setting command, is not stored in the nonvolatile memory written by [W], and also is not reset by [F] and [Z].

Command name: +CLIP

• Outline

The result for "AT+CLIP=1" is displayed in the following format:

```
+CLIP : <number><type>
```

• Command execution example

```
AT+CLIP=1
```

```
OK
```

```
RING
```

```
+CLIP : "09012345678",49
```

## Disconnection Reason List

### 64K Data Transmission

Value	Reason
1	The specified phone number does not exist.
16	Disconnected normally.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party is communicating.
18	Dialed but no response has come in within the specified duration.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is dialing.
21	Other party rejected to receive the call.
63	Network service and option are not valid.
65	Specified transmission performance not provided.
88	Dialed to or received the call from the phone with different property.

### Packet Transmission

Value	Reason
27	No APN was found; or an invalid APN was specified.
30	The line was disconnected from the network.
33	You do not apply the service option you requested.
36	The line was normally disconnected.

## Result Codes

### Result Code List

Numeric notation	Character notation	Meaning
0	OK	Processing has been executed normally
1	CONNECT	The line has been connected to the other party
2	RING	An incoming call has arrived
3	NO CARRIER	The line has been disconnected
4	ERROR	The system can receive no command
5	NO DIALTONE	The system can detect no dial tone
6	BUSY	The system is detecting the busy tone
7	NO ANSWER	Connection completed; timeout
100	RESTRICTION	The network is restricted
101	DELAYED	Within restricted redialing time

### Extended Result Code List

Numeric notation	Character notation	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 1200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 2400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 4800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 7200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 9600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 14400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 19200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 38400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 57600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 115200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 230400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA phone - PC was connected at 460800 bps.

## Information

Result codes are displayed in the Character notation (initial value) when the ATVn command (see page 501) is set to n=1 and displayed in the numeric notation when it is set to n=0.

The baud rate is displayed to keep the compatibility with a modem connected via the conventional RS-232C. The FOMA phone and personal computer are however connected via the FOMA USB Cable (option); so, the baud rate is different from the actual transmission speed.

"RESTRICTION" (numeric code: 100) means that the transmission network is congested. If this result code appears, wait for a while, then connect the line again.

## Transmission Protocol Result Code List

Numeric notation	Character notation	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by 64K data transmission
2	AV32K	Connected by 32K Video-phone
3	AV64K	Connected by 64K Video-phone
5	PACKET	Connected by packet transmission

## Result Code Display Examples

When ATX0 is set:

CONNECT only appears at completion of the connection, regardless of the contents specified in the AT $\neq$ V command (see page 501).

Example in character notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT

Example in numeric notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1

When ATX1 is set:

- If ATX1 and AT $\neq$ V0 are set (initial value):

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection: "CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC>"

Example in character notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT 460800

Example in numeric notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1 21

- If ATX1 and AT $\neq$ V1 are set :

A result code appears in the following format at completion of the connection:

"CONNECT<baud rate between the FOMA phone and PC> PACKET <access point name(APN)> / <maximum baud rate for upload (the FOMA phone wireless base station) > / <maximum baud rate for download (the FOMA phone wireless base station)>"

Example in character notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384  
(Indicates that maximum 64 kbps for upstream and maximum 384 kbps for downstream are connected to mopera.ne.jp.)

Example in numeric notation: ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 1#  
1215

If you specify ATX1 and AT $\neq$ V1 at the same time, you may not normally carry out the dial-up connection. In this case, you should use only AT $\neq$ V0.

## Numerics

3gp	418
64K data transmission	422

## A

α-blend finish editing display	376
α-blend List	377
About finder display	270
Animation	34, 40, 354
asf	418
AT command	496
AT command list	497
Automatic start info display	103
Auto-sort menu display	245
Auto-sort setting	245
Address sort	246, 247
All sort	248
Edit address/subject	248
List setting	248
Release	249
Reply impossible	248
Subject sort	247
Auto-sort setting display	245
AV OUT	384

## B

Bar code reader	304
Accessing URL	308
Add bookmark	309
Add desktop icon	311
Adding to phonebook	308
Copy	307
Delete	311
Making voice call/video-phone call	307
Save contents	309, 310
Save result	306
Saving images	309
Saving melodies	310
Scan	305
Sending mail	307
Starting i-appli	309
Bar code reader list	306, 310
Bar code reader selection display	305
Bookmark	58
Add desktop icon	43
Add folder	60
Compose message	44
Copy URL	62

Delete	61, 63
Delete folder	61
Display	59
Edit folder name	60
Edit title	62
Move this	62
Number of bookmarks	61, 63
Register	58
Set as home URL	56
Bookmark folder list	59
Bookmark list	59

## C

CA center selection	86
CA center selection display	86
Cache	36, 37
Camera	266
An estimate for recording time	283
An estimate for the number of snapshots	278
Auto timer	297
Camera setting (Brightness)	289
Camera setting (Tone)	289
Camera setting (White balance)	289
Check with playing	280
Close-up	287
Compose message	279
Continuous mode	293
Continuous shooting size	290
File format	272, 273
File restriction	296
Frame	294
Front camera	268, 269
Front-Camera size (snap)	290
Front-Camera size (video)	291
Help	299
Image quality	292
Night mode	298
Photo light	287
Purpose (recording size)	295
Purpose (snap)	295
Recordable image	298
Recording type	297
Save reflection	280
SD image quality	292
Shutter sound	296
Side camera	269
Side camera size (snap)	290
Side camera size (video)	291

Snap image quality	291
Store in	293
Switching cameras	284
Zoom	285
Camera off setting	299
Camera shortcut menu	20
Category list	408
Change i-mode password	51
Change mail address	198
Character size	75, 250
Chara-den	108
Action list	111
Add desktop icon	116
Change action	111
Delete	117
Download chara-den	108
Edit title	115
File property	116
Memory information	116
Operation	110
Record chara-den	113
Recording quality	114
Recording size	114
Recording type	114
Reset title	117
Set image display	116
Substitute image	112
Switch chara-den	110
Video-phone	112
Chara-den display	109
Chara-den list	115
Chara-den player	109
Chara-den recording display	113
Check box	46
Check i-mode settings	76
Check mail settings	255
Client certification	81
Code scan stand-by display	305
Code scanned result display	306
Confirm mail address	200
Confirm rejection settings	209
Connection timeout	77
Continuous shooting	276
Copyrights	1, 267

## D

Data List	408
Data transfer (OBEX)	423

Data transmission	426
Deco mail (decoration mail)	158
Background color	164
Blink	164
Copy	169
Cut	170
Decorate area select	162
Edit decoration	171
Font color	163
Font size	166
Insert image	165
Insert line	169
Paste	170
Preview	157
Property	157
Reset settings	171
Swing	168
Ticker	168
Undo	166
Word alignment	167
Decoration palette	161
Delete i-motion	194
Display home	55, 56
Download completion display	70, 71, 108, 118
Download dictionary	71
Draft list	148, 177, 217

## E

Edit image	329
Brightness	340
Change size	335
Combine with image	334
Combine with text	333
Compose message	337
File restriction	341
Flip	339
Frame	332
Image quality	341
Mark	332
Mosaic	338
Rotate	339
Tone	340
Trim away	336
Edit i-motion	367
$\alpha$ -blend edit	375
Compose i-motion mail	378
Edit Ticker	372
File restriction	341

# Index

Record sound	371
Trim for image	370
Trim for mail	378
Trim i-motion	369
End i-mode	39
End stand-by info display	106
Enter URL	52

## F · H

File detailed display	409
Finder display	270, 274, 275, 276, 277, 281, 282, 300
FirstPass PC software	442
Flash function	40
FOMA card	25
FOMA P900iV data link software	494
FOMA PC setup software	427, 440
64K data transmission	454
APN setting	466
Install	442
Operating transmission	459
Packet transmission	448
Uninstall	461
W-TCP setup	463
Forwarding image	404
Header/Signature	254
Home URL	55
Host selection	78
Host selection display	78

## I

i-appli	32, 88
Add desktop icon	100
αDisplay light	107
Automatic start information	103
Automatic start setting	102
Automatic start time	102
αVibrator	107
Delete	101
Display software information	92
Download	90
End i-appli	95
End stand-by information	106
i-appli DX	32, 88
i-appli stand-by display	32, 89, 104
Ir remote-controller	93
Launch	94
Mail-linked i-appli	89
Set i-appli To	98
Software information	99

Software setting (Charge melody/image)	99
Software setting (Icon information)	98
Software setting (Network setting)	98
Software setting (See phonebook/history)	99
Software setting (Stand-by network)	105
Software setting (Stand-by setting)	104
Trace information	95
Upgrade	100
i-appli To function	74
"i-appli To" setting	253
Icons	21
Image display	75
Image Edit display	329
Image viewer	318
Add desktop icon	324
Add image to phonebook	327
AV OUT	386
Change size for mail	344
Clipping area	328
Compose message	323
Copy	346, 348
Create folder	350
Delete	352
Delete folder	350
DPOF setting	329, 347
Edit file name	345
Edit folder title	350
Edit title	344
Export	325
File restriction	345
Image information	322
Import	326
Ir exchange	402
Listing	349
Memory information	348
Move	346, 348
Multiple-choice	347, 348, 353
Positioning	327
Release animation	355
SD information	415
Select storage	351
Set as display	321
Set as original animation	354
Set image display	324
Slideshow	346
Sort	351
i-melody	34, 70
iMenu	30, 38, 42
iMenu in English	40

i-mode	28, 38	Preview	152, 157, 213
i-mode mail/Short Message (SMS)	136	Property	157
Add desktop icon	243	Protect on/off	235
Add folder	228	Read all	235
Add header	156	Receive option setting	179
Add receiver	155	Received mail	144, 184, 221
Add signature	156	Receiving	178, 218
Add to address	241	Reply	187
Add to phonebook	242	Reply with quote	187
Attach image	172	Save	177, 217
Attach i-motion	174	Save data	189, 190
Attach melody	173	Save image in message	189
Attached file	196	Security on/off	229
Attachments	172	Send i-mode mail	151
Change receiver type	155	Send SMS	212
Check new message	182	Sent mail	146, 175, 214
Check new SMS	220	SMS center selection	226
Compose i-mode mail	150	SMS report request	225
Compose SMS	212	SMS validity period	225
Copy	241	Sort	233
Delete	156, 238, 239, 240	UIM operation	227
Delete (i-mode mail)	156	Undo	157
Delete all SMS reports	224	Unprotect all	236
Delete attached file	174	i-mode menu	29
Delete folder	230	i-mode menu display	38
Delete receiver	155	i-mode password	35
Delete SMS	213	i-mode ringing time	244
Display all	233	i-motion	31, 118
Display image	189	Download	118
Display SMS report	216	Property	120
Draft mail	148, 177, 217	Save	119
Edit	176, 216	Ticker	120
Edit folder name	228	i-motion auto play	121, 195
Erase message	156	i-motion Edit display	367
External output	243	i-motion mail	142, 191
Filter	234	Compose i-motion mail	361
Forward	188	Display URL	195
i-mode checking	183	Download	191
List setting	234	Save data	193
Look-up address	153, 154	i-motion player	356
Mail information	236	Add desktop icon	324
Mail receive option	180	Add i-motion to phonebook	362
Memory information	237	Add to phonebook	366
Move	231	AV OUT	386
Move to trash	232	Compose i-motion mail	361
Number of messages	237	Copy	346, 348
Open folder	230	Create folder	350
Play melody	190	Delete	382
Play melody setting	197	Delete folder	350

# Index

Displaying moving/i-motion image list	380
Edit file name	345
Edit folder title	350
Edit title	344
Export	325
Fast	363
File property	366
File restriction	345
Import	326
Ir exchange	402
LCD AI	365
Listing	349
Marker function	357
Memory information	348
Move	346, 348
Movie ring tone	364
Multiple-choice	348, 383
Normal play	362
Play-info	365
Play while close	365
Position Memory	363
Position to play	363
Reset title	381
SD information	415
Select storage	351
Set as stand-by	364
Set image display	324
Slow	362
Sort	382
Stop	363
i-motion play-information	360
i-motion type	121
Inbox folder list	144, 184, 221
Inbox list	144, 184, 221
Internet access	35
Ir exchange	398
Receiving data items	400
Sending data items	402
Session number	399
Ir remote-controller	89, 93

## J · L

JAN code	304
Last URL	57
Link	36
Links with AV equipment	495

## M

Mail address list	262
Mail list display	251
Mail member	262
Compose message	263
Delete	264
Edit address	264
Edit member name	263
Look-up address	264
Reset member name	263
Mail member list	262
Mail settings	250
Mail size limit	203
Mail text entering display	150, 158
Mail To function	73
Marker selection display	357
Melody play display	388
Melody player	388
Add desktop icon	393
Compose message	393
Delete	395
Edit file name	393
Edit playlist	390
Edit title	392
Melody information	394
Memory information	394
Play melody	388
Playlist	389
Release playlist	390
Reset title	394
Set as ring tone	391
Melody player display	388
Message Composition display	150
Message display	251
Message R/F	35, 122
Add to phonebook	132
Auto melody play	124
Delete	130, 131, 134
Display	125
Display all	128
Filter	129
Message auto display	124
Number of messages	130
Pasted melody/message	124
Protect on/off	129
Receive	122
Reload image	134
Save image	133

Save melody	132
Sort	128
Unprotect all	129
Message R/F detailed display	125, 126
Message R/F list	125, 126
miniSD file display	408
miniSD memory card	405
Delete	412
Edit title	412
Export	325, 410
Import	326, 411
Inserting/Removing	406
SD check disk	414
SD format	413
SD information	415
SD-PIM	408
Using with a personal computer	416
miniSD memory card folder list	342, 380
Mobile phone information	41
Movie ring tone	31
Movie style	12, 14, 269
Moving image list	380
Moving image shot	281
Multiaccess	22
Multitask	22
My menu	50

## N · O · P · Q

Navigation displays	18
Normal style	12, 14, 268
Number of protectable items	24
Number of savable items	24
Number of storable items	24
Original animation	354
Release animation	355
Set as original animation	354
Outbox folder list	146, 175, 214
Outbox list	146, 175, 214
Packet transmission	421
Pasted i-motion	253
Pasted melody	253
Phone To function	72
Photo auto display	252
Photo-sending	300
Check new message	302
Display photo	301
Select/send photo	301
Shoot/send photo	300
Snap size	303

Playback end display	120
Post view display	274, 275, 276, 277, 281, 282
Private Window	19
Pull down menu	47
QR code	304

## R

Radio button	46
Reactivate mail functions	211
Rec. file restriction	116
Receive mail from selected domains	207
Receive/reject only i-mode mail	204
Receive/reject selected address	206
Received address	260
Add desktop icon	257
Compose message	257
Compose SMS	257
Delete	258
Dialing	259
Received calls	261
Received address detailed display	260
Received address list	260
Received mail detailed display	144, 184, 221
Receiving display	252
Register a secret code	200
Registered trademarks	1
Reset i-mode settings	76
Reset last URL	57
Reset mail address	202
Reset mail settings	255
Rights of portrait	1, 267

## S

Save image	69
Screen memo	64
Add to phonebook	43
Certificate	45
Delete	67, 68
Display	65
Edit title	66
Number of memos	66
Protect on/off	66
Retry	45
Save	64
Save image	69
Sound effect setting	75
URL	45
Screen memo detailed display	65
Screen memo list	65

# Index

Scroll	74, 250
Scroll function	38
Security	252
Selection box	48
Sent address	256
Add desktop icon	257
Compose message	257
Compose SMS	257
Delete	258
Dialed calls	258
Dialing	259
Redial calls	258
Sent address detailed display	256
Sent address list	256
Sent mail detailed display	146, 175, 214
Set as home URL	56
Setting dial-up network	468
Connecting dial-up	489
Setting 64K data transmission	492
Setting for Windows® 2000 Professional	480
Setting for Windows® 98 and Windows® Me	485
Setting for Windows® XP	476
Setting packet transmission	468
Short Message (SMS) Compositon display	212
Site (program) access	30
Add desktop icon	43
Add to phonebook	43
Certificate	45
Change character code	44
Compose message	44
Enter URL	42
iMenu	42
Reload	42
Retry	45
Sound effect setting	75
Title	44
URL	45
Site display of FirstPass center	83
Software list	97
Sound effect setting	75
SSL certificate	36, 80
SSL transmission	34
Stand-by display	20
Still image list	342
Still image shot	274
Style	12
Suspend mail functions	210

## T

Text box	46
Text Edit display	316
Text reader	312
Accessing URL	315
Add bookmark	315
Add desktop icon	317
Add to phonebook	314
Concatenate	316
Copy	317
Delete	317
Edit	316
Making voice call/video-phone call	314
Save	313
Scan	312
Sending mail	314
Text reader list	313, 316
Text reader selection display	312
Text scan stand-by display	312
Text scanned result display	313
Ticker list	373
Trademarks	1
Transmission setup files	427, 438
Confirming installed driver	437
Installing into Windows® 2000 Professional	431
Installing into Windows® 98	435
Installing into Windows® Me	433
Installing into Windows® XP	430
Uninstalling	439

## U · V · W

UIM	25
UIM operation	227
UIM restriction	25
URL history	53
Add desktop icon	43
Compose message	44
Delete	54
Set as home URL	56
URL history list	53
User certification	81
Accessing FirstPass center	83
Download	84
Requesting issue	84
Requesting revocation	85
Viewer style	13, 14, 269
Web To function	73
Work with style	15

## Don't forget your FOMA phone ... or your manners!

When using your FOMA phone, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration to the people around you.

### In the following cases, be certain to turn the power off.

#### Where use is prohibited

Some places prohibit the use of mobile phones. Be sure to turn off the power to your FOMA phone in any of the following places:

- In airplanes · In hospitals

Electronic medical equipment is used in places other than the actual wards. Make sure you have the power switched off even if you are in a lobby or waiting room.

#### While driving

Using the FOMA phone while driving can cause accidents.

If you do not want to switch the power off for driving, set the Drive Mode.

When in crowded places such as packed trains, where you could be near a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillators.

The implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillators operation can be affected by radio emissions from the FOMA phone.

When in theaters, theater lobbies, museums, and similar venues

If you use your FOMA phone where you are supposed to be quiet, you will disturb those around you.

### Adjust the volume of your voice and ring tone according to where you are.

If you use the FOMA phone in quiet places such as restaurants and hotel lobbies, keep the volume of your voice and the ring tone down.

Do not block thoroughfares when using the FOMA phone.

### These functions help you keep your manner in public.

Handy functions are available such as for setting the response to incoming calls and setting all the tones to silent.

**Manner Mode/Super Silent/Original Manner (Page 148 of "Basics" manual)**

In Manner Mode or Super Silent, the keypad sound, ring tone and all other sounds generated by the FOMA phone are silenced.

In Original Manner, you can set whether or not to activate the Record Message function, and can change the settings for the vibrator and ring tone. The Shutter Sound cannot be silenced.

**Drive Mode (Page 111 of "Basics" manual)**

In this mode, the FOMA phone responds to incoming calls with a message that you are driving and cannot answer the phone. Then the call is disconnected. The incoming call tone does not sound, so you are able to drive safely without any disturbance.

**Vibrator (Page 153 of "Basics" manual)**

When the vibrator is set, it vibrates for incoming calls.

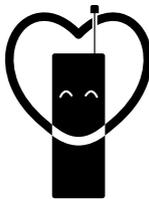
**Record Message function (Page 113 of "Basics" manual)**

Callers can record a message or image when you cannot come to the phone.

Optional services are also available, such as the Voice Mail Service (Page 284 of "Basics" manual) and Call Forwarding Service (Page 294 of "Basics" manual).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.



Don't forget your cellular phone  
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy  
and consideration for others around you.

**Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group**

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.	

---

Manufacturer: Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.



**Li-ion**

For the environmental protection,  
bring the exhausted battery to  
the nearest NTT DoCoMo, dealers,  
or the recycle shop.



This manual is printed on the 100%  
recycled paper.



Trademark of American Soybean Association  
This manual is printed with  
soy based ink.

May '04 (Ver.1.0)



3TR002527AAA  
F0504F0 - (A)